

DOMESTICAL DUTIES

William Gouge
(1622)

Part 2 *Treatises 4-8*

Contents

The Fourth Treatise: Of Husbands' Particular Duties	2
The Fifth Treatise: Duties of Children.....	39
The Sixth Treatise: Duties of Parents	74
The Seventh Treatise: Duties of Servants.....	121
The Eighth Treatise: Duties of Masters.....	148

The Fourth Treatise

Of Husbands' Particular Duties

1. *Of the general heads of this Treatise.*

Ephesians 5:25. *Husbands love your own wives, even as Christ also loved the Church, &c.*

As the wife is to know *her* duty, so the husband much more *his*, because he is to be a guide, and good example to his wife, he is to dwell with her *according to knowledge* (1 Peter 3:7), the more eminent his place is, the more knowledge he ought to have now to walk worthy thereof. Neglect of duty in him is more dishonourable unto God, because by virtue of his place he is *the image and glory of God* (1 Cor 11:7), and more pernicious not to his wife only, but also to the whole family, because of that power and authority he hath, which he may abuse to the maintenance of his wickedness, having in the house no superior power to restrain his fury: whereas the wife, though never so wicked, may by the power of her husband be kept under, and restrained from outrage.

Wherefore to go on in order, in laying down the husband's duties [as we have the wife's] we are to consider,

1. The *duties* themselves.
2. The *reasons* to enforce them.

In setting down the duties we must note

1. The *matter* wherein they consist.
2. The *manner* how they are to be performed.

The Apostle compriseth the whole *matter* of them all under *Love*, which is the *sum* and *head* of all.

This we will first handle: and then proceed to other particulars.

2. *Of that love which husbands owe their wives.* (See Treatise 3, Section 2.)

This head of all the rest, *Love*, is expressly set down, and alone mentioned in this, and in many other places of Scripture, whereby it is evident, that all other duties are comprised under it.

To omit other places, where this duty is urged, in this place, *Love* is four times by name expressed, beside that it is intimated under many other terms and phrases (Eph 5:25,28,33).

Whosoever therefore taketh a wife, must, in this respect that she is his wife, love her: as it is noted of *Isaac* [the best pattern of husbands noted in the Scripture] *he took Rebekah, she was his wife and he loved her* (Gen 24:67).

Many good reasons hereof may be rendered.

1. Because no duty on the husband's part can be rightly performed except it be seasoned with love. The Apostle exhorteth all Christians to *do all their things in love* (1 Cor 16:14): much more ought husbands: though in place they be above their wives, yet love may not be forgotten.
2. Because of all persons on earth a wife is the most proper object of love: nor friend, nor child, nor parent ought so to be

loved as a wife: she is termed, *the wife of his bosom* (Deut 13:6), to shew that she ought to be as his heart in his bosom.

3. Because his place of eminency, and power of authority may soon puff him up, and make him insult over his wife, and trample her under his feet, if an entire *love* of her be not planted in his heart. To keep him from abusing his authority is *love* so much pressed upon him.

4. Because wives through the weakness of their sex [for they are the weaker vessels] are much prone to provoke their husbands. So as if there be not love predominant in the husband, there is like to be but little peace betwixt man and wife. *Love covereth a multitude of imperfections.*

5. Because as Christ by his love first manifested provoketh the Church to love him, so an husband by loving his wife should provoke her to love him again: shewing himself like the sun which is the fountain of light, and from which the moon receiveth what light she hath: so he should be the fountain of love to his wife.

Object. *Love* was before laid down as a common duty appertaining both to man and wife: how is it then here required as a particular and peculiar duty of an husband?

Ans. In regard of the general extent of love it is indeed a common duty belonging to the one as well as to the other, yea belonging to all Christians, to all men: for it is the very nature of love, and an especial property thereof, *to seek not her own things* (1 Cor 13:5), but the good of others, which all are bound to do by virtue of the bond of nature; more than others, Christians by virtue of the bond of the spirit: among Christians, especially wives and husbands by virtue of the matrimonial bond: of married couples, most of all husbands by virtue of their place and charge. Their place is a place of *authority*, which without love will soon turn into *tyranny*. Their charge is especially and above all, to seek the good of their wives: as wives are the chiefest, and greatest charge of husbands, so their chiefest and greatest care must be for them: the parents and friends of wives as they give over all their authority to their husbands, so they cast all care upon them; wherefore that husbands may take the more care of their wives, and the better seek their good, they ought after a peculiar manner to love them. Husbands are most of all bound to love: and bound to love their wives most of all. Thus this affection of *love* is a distinct duty in itself, peculiarly appertaining to an husband: and also a common condition which must be annexed to every other duty of an husband, to season and sweeten the same. His look, his speech, his carriage, and all his actions, wherein he hath to do with his wife, must be seasoned with love: love must shew itself in his commandments, in his reproofs, in his instructions, in his admonitions, in his authority, in his familiarity, when they are alone together, when they are in company before others, in civil affairs, in religious matters, at all times, in all things: as salt must be first and last upon the table, and eaten with every bit of meat, so must love be first in an husband's heart, and last out of it, and mixed with every thing wherein he hath to do with his wife.

3. Of an husband's hatred and want of love.

Contrary hereunto is hatred of heart: which vice as it is very odious and detestable in itself, so much more when the wife is made the object thereof. As love provoketh an husband to do his wife what good he can, so hatred, to do her what mischief he can. *Moses* noteth a man's hatred of his wife to be a cause of much mischief (Deut 22:13): for the nearer, and dearer any persons be, the more violent will that hatred be which is fastened on them.

Hence was it that a divorce was suffered to be made betwixt a man and his wife, in case he hated her (Deut 24:3): which law questionless was made for relief of the wife, lest the hatred which her husband conceived against her should work her some mischief, if he were forced to keep her as his wife: which Christ seemeth to imply in theses words, *Moses, because of the hardness of your hearts, suffered you to put away your wives* (Matt 19:8). This therefore being so pestilent a poison, let husbands take heed how they suffer it to soak into them.

Neither is it sufficient for an husband not to hate his wife, for even the *want of love*, though it be only a privation, yet is it a great vice, and contrary also to the forenamed duty of love. Where this *want of love* is, there can be no duty well performed, even as when the great wheel of a clock, the first mover of all the rest, is out of frame, never a wheel can be in good order. They that think lightly hereof, plainly discover that there is little or no love of God in them at all: for if the Apostle's inference be good, taken from a man's neighbour or brother whom he hath seen, it will much more be good having relation to a wife (1 John 4:20): for *how can he who loveth not his wife*, [whom God hath given to him as a token of his favour, and as an help meet for him, to be in his bosom, and ever in his sight, yea to be no more two, but one flesh] *love God whom he hath not seen? If any man saith, he loveth God, and hate his wife, he is a liar.* Let husbands therefore by loving their wives give

evidence that they love God.

4. Of an husband's wife maintaining his authority. (See Treatise 3, Section 9.)

All the branches which grow out of this root of *love*, as they have respect to husbands' duties, may be drawn to two heads:

1. *A wife maintaining of his authority.*

2. *A right managing of the same.*

That these two are branches of an husband's *love*, is evident by the place wherein God hath set him, which is a *place of authority*; for the best good that any can do, and so the best fruits of love which he can shew forth to any, are such as are done in his own proper place, and by virtue thereof. If then an husband relinquish his authority, he disableth himself from doing that good, and shewing those fruits of love which otherwise he might. If he abuse his authority, he turneth the edge and point of his sword amiss: instead of holding it over his wife for her protection, he turneth it into her bowels to her destruction, and so manifesteth thereby more hatred than love.

Now then to handle these two severally, and distinctly:

1. That an husband ought wisely to *maintain* his authority, is implied under this Apostolical precept, *Husbands dwell with your wives according to knowledge* (1 Peter 3:7), that is, as such as are well able to maintain the honour of that place wherein God hath set you: not as sots and fools without understanding. The same is also implied under the titles of preeminence which the Scripture attributeth to husbands, *as Lord, Master, head, guide, image and glory of God, &c.* (See Treatise 3, Section 3.)

The honour and authority of God, and of his Son Christ Jesus, is maintained in and by the honour and authority of an husband, as the King's authority is maintained by the authority of his Privy Counsel and other Magistrates under him; yea, as an husband's authority is in the family maintained by the authority of his wife: [for as *the man is the glory of God, so the woman is the glory of the man* (1 Cor 11:7)].

The good of the wife herself is thus also much promoted, even as the good of the body is helped forward by the head's abiding in his place; should the head be put under any of the parts of the body, the body and all the parts thereof could not but receive much damage thereby: even so the wife and whole family would feel the damage of the husband's loss of his authority.

1. *Quest.* Is it in the power of the husband to maintain his own authority?

Answ. Yea, in his more than in any others: for note the counsel of the Apostle to *Timothy*, [though in another case, yet very pertinent to this purpose] *Let no man despise thy youth* (1 Tim 4:12). It was therefore in *Timothy's* power to maintain his honour, and not to suffer it to be despised; and so is it in an husband's power.

2. *Quest.* How may an husband best maintain his authority?

Answ. That direction which the Apostle given to *Timothy* to maintain his authority, may firstly be applied for this purpose unto an husband; *Be an ensample in conversation, in love, in spirit, in faith, and in pureness*: as if he had said, If thou walk before them worthy of thy place and calling, and worthy of that honour and respect which is due thereunto, shewing for the fruits of love, faith, and other like graces, assuredly they will reverence thy youth; but if otherwise thou carry thyself basely, and not beseeeming a minister, thou givest them just occasion to despise thee. Even thus may husbands best maintain their authority by being an ensample in love, gravity, piety, honesty, &c. The fruits of these and other like graces shewed forth by husbands before their wives and family, cannot but work a reverend and dutiful respect in their wives and whole house towards them: for by this means they shall more clearly discern the image of God shine forth in their faces.

Object. Very goodness and grace itself is hated of wicked and ungodly wives: it was an act of piety that made *Michal* despise *David*.

Answ. 1. Grant it to be so: yet this may be a good direction for such husbands as have not such wicked wives.

2. This doth not always so fall out, no, nor yet for the most part in those that are wicked; true virtue and integrity doth oft cause admiration in such as love it not.

3. Though some be of so crooked and perverse a disposition as to take occasion of contempt, where none is given, yet shall that husband justify himself before God and man, that carrieth himself worthy of his place.

5. Of husbands losing their authority.

Contrary is their practice who by their profaneness, riotousness, drunkenness, lewdness, lightness, unthriftiness, and other like base carriage, make themselves contemptible, and so lose their authority: though a wife ought not to take these occasions to despise her husband, yet is it a just judgment on him to be despised, seeing he maketh himself contemptible.

Contrary also to the forenamed directions is the stern, rough, and cruel carriage of husbands, who by violence and tyranny go about to maintain their authority. Force may indeed cause fear, but a slavish fear, such a fear as breedeth more hatred than love, more inward contempt, than outward respect.

And contrary is their servile disposition, who against their own judgment yield to the bent of their wife's mind in such things as are unlawful: they will lose their authority rather than give discontent to their wife: which is a fault expressly forbidden by the law (Deut 13:6,7): and yet a fault whereinto not only wicked *Ahab* (1 Kings 21:7,9), but also wise *Solomon* fell (1 Kings 11:4): how heinous a fault, and how grievous a fall this was in *Solomon*, the fearful issue thereof sheweth. Like to him not in wisdom, but in its point of egregious folly, are such as upon their wife's instigation, suffer Priests and Jesuits, to lurk and celebrate Masses in their houses, and yield to be present thereat themselves. Like to *Ahab* are such Magistrates as suffer their wives to oversway them in course of Justice: hence it cometh to pass that more petitions and suits are made to the wives of Magistrates in the cases of Justice than to the Magistrates themselves: and the favour of their wives is more esteemed than their own: so as the power of governing, and the main stroke in determining matters, is from their wives; they are but the mouths and instruments of their wives, in so much as among the common people the title of their places and offices is given to their wives. Some husbands suffer this by reason of their fearful, and foolish disposition, wanting courage and wisdom to maintain the honour of their places against the insolency of their wives: others upon a subtle, covetous, wicked mind, that by the means of their wives there may be more freedom for receiving bribes. Among these I may reckon those who against their own mind, to satisfy their wives' mind, suffer both wives and children to follow the fashion, to attire themselves unbeseeming their places, to frequent light company, with the like; and also those who upon their wife's importunity are moved [as *Samson* was] to reveal such secrets as are not meet to be known. Husbands may hearken to their wives' moving good things, but they may not obey them in evil things: if they do, their fault is double: 1. in doing evil: 2. in losing their authority.

Let husbands therefore be very watchful against their wives' evil instigations. Satan laboured to supplant *Job* by his wife: and by this doth he subvert many in these days.

6. Of husbands' high account of wives. (See Treatise 3, Section 3.)

As authority must be well *maintained*, so must it be well *managed*: for which purpose two things are needful:

1. That an husband tenderly respect his wife.

2. That providently he care for her.

An husband's tender respect of his wife is *Inward*, *Outward*.

Inward in regard of his *Opinion* of her, *Affection* to her.

Outward in regard of his *carriage* towards her.

For an husband's *opinion* of his wife, two things are to be weighed. 1. Her *place*. 2. Her *person*.

1. Her *place* is indeed a place of inferiority, and subjection, yet the nearest to equality that may be: a place of common equity in many respects, wherein man and wife are after a sort even fellows, and partners: Hence then it followeth that

The husband must account his wife a yoke-fellow and companion (1 Peter 3:7). This is one point of *giving honour* to the wife: and it is implied under that phrase whereby the *end* of making a wife is noted (Gen 2:18), which in our English is translated, *meet for him*, word for word *as before him*, that is, like himself, one in whom he might see himself, or even [to use our Apostle's word] *himself* (Eph 5:28). These phrases imply a kind of fellowship: as also the many prerogatives that are common to both, which have been noted before (see Treatise 3, Section 4).

As a wife's acknowledgement of her husband's superiority is the ground-work of all her duties, so an husband's acknowledgement of that fellowship which is betwixt him and his wife, will make him carry himself much more amiably, familiarly, lovingly, and every way as beseemeth a good husband towards her.

7. Of that fellowship which is betwixt man and wife, notwithstanding a wife's inferiority.

Object. Fellowship betwixt man and wife cannot stand with a wife's *inferiority* and *subjection*.

Ans. They are of very mean capacity that cannot see how these may stand together. Is there not a fellowship betwixt superiour and inferiour Magistrates in relation to their subjects? yea the Scripture mentioneth a fellowship betwixt Christ the head and other Saints in relation to the glory whereof all are made partakers [for it termeth us *joint heirs with Christ* (Rom 8:17)] and in relation to God's people a fellowship betwixt God and his ministers [for it termeth them *labourers together with God* (1 Cor 3:9)] yet none can deny the Saints, and Ministers to be inferiour and in subjection to Christ, and God. But distinctly to answer the objection.

1. There may not only be a fellowship, but also an equality in some things betwixt those that in other things are one of them inferiours and subject: as betwixt man and wife in the power of one another's bodies: for *the wife* [as well as the husband] is therein *both a servant, and a mistress, a servant to yield her body, a mistress to have the power of his*.

2. There may be *fellowship* in the very same things wherein is *inferiority*: for *fellowship* hath respect to the thing itself, *inferiority* to the measure, and manner: as in *giving light* the sun and moon have a fellowship, but in the measure and manner the moon is inferiour: the moon hath not so much light as the sun, and that which it hath it hath from the sun: and as in *governing*, the King and other Magistrates have a fellowship, but in the measure, and manner of government they are inferiour to him: Even so is it betwixt man and wife, in many things wherein there is a fellowship, the wife is notwithstanding inferiour: so as inferiority may stand with fellowship.

3. There are no unequals betwixt which there is so near a parity as betwixt man and wife: if therefore there may be a fellowship betwixt any that are superiour, and inferiour one to another, then much more betwixt man and wife.

As the soul therefore ruleth over the body, by a mutual and loving consent and agreement, so must a man over his wife.

8. Of husbands' too mean account of wives.

Contrary is the conceit of many who think there is no difference betwixt a wife and servant but in familiarity: and that wives were made to be servants to their husbands, because subjection, fear and obedience are required of them: whence it cometh to pass that wives are oft used little better than servants. A conceit and practice savouring too much of heathenish, and sottish arrogance. Did God at first take the wife out of man's side, that man should tread her under his feet? or rather than he should set her at his side next to him above all children, servants, or any other in the family, how near, or dear unto him soever? for none can be nearer than a wife, and none ought to be dearer.

9. Of husbands' good esteem of their own wives. (See Treatise 3, Section 5.)

2. For the *person* of a wife, *An husband ought to esteem that particular person to whom by God's providence his is joined in marriage, to be the fittest, and best for him*. This is implied under that particle of restraint [*OWN*] noted by the Apostle where he saith *husbands love your OWN wives* (Eph 5:25), and again presseth it under a comparison of the body [*as your OWN bodies* (Eph 5:28)]. Every one thinketh his own body best and fittest for him. A man might happily wish some defects or enormities in his own body to be amended, and desire that his were like an others, more strait, strong, and comely than his own, yet would he not have his head to be upon that other man's body: the same opinion ought a man [that would love his wife] to have of her.

Good reason there is for him so to do: for true is the proverb, if it be rightly taken, *marriages are first made in heaven*, that is, God hath an over-ruling hand in ordering them: which *Solomon* implieth by that opposition which he maketh betwixt wealth and a wife (Prov 19:14): *that* is from our fathers, *this* from the Lord: in which respect he saith, *he which findeth a wife receiveth favour of the Lord* (Prov 18:22). If therefore thou art loved of God, and lovest him, he will make thy wife prove a good thing to thee.

Object. A wife may be a very lewd and wicked woman: how then can she be accounted the best wife?

Answ. 1. It may be she was good enough when first she was brought to thee, but thou by thine evil example, or negligent government, or hard usage, hast made her so bad as she is. Which if it be so, then is she to be considered not as thou hast married her, but as thou didst marry her.

2. Though she be not in relation to other wives the best in condition, yet in relation to thee she may be the best in event: if not for thine ease and quiet, yet for trial of thy wisdom and patience: and so as a school of virtue she may be unto thee. As a skillful pilot's sufficiency is tried and known by tempestuous seas, so a man's wisdom by a troublesome wife. Yea she may be given thee as a punishment of some former sins, as seeking after a beautiful, honourable, rich, proper wife, rather than a religious and honest one: or seeking her without any direction or help first sought of God, or otherwise than thou hast warrant from God, as by stealth, and without parents' consent; or some other sin in another kind, to bring thee to repentance: or as a means to restrain and wean thee from some future sins whereunto thou are subject, and so prove a blessed cross to keep thee from a fearful curse.

10. Of husbands' preposterous opinion of their own wives.

Contrary is a corrupt and perverse opinion which many have of their *own* wives, thinking them of all other the worst and unfittest; yea though they be such as every way both in gifts and qualities of mind, and also in grace and comeliness of body deserve all good respect and esteem. Whereas *others* [which look with a single eye] commend their good parts, *they* misinterpret and misjudge all: if their wives be religious, they think them *hypocrites*: if grave, sober and modest, *melancholy*: if they take occasion [though never so just] of going abroad, *gadders*, and *lightfooted*. This bad opinion of their wives is a cause that their hearts are clean removed from their own, and set upon strange flesh: whereby the devil gaineth what he desireth, that is, to put asunder such as God hath joined together, and to join those whom God hath put asunder.

11. Of husbands' entire affection to their wives. (See Treatise 3, Section 7.)

An husband's *affection* to his wife must be answerable to his *opinion* of her: he ought therefore *to delight in his wife entirely*, that is, so *to delight in her as wholly and only delighting in her*. In this respect the Prophet's wife is called the *desire* or delight, or pleasure *of his eyes* (Eze 24:16): that wherein he most of all delighted, and therefore by a propriety so called.

Such delight did *Isaac* take in his wife as it drove out a contrary strong passion, namely the *grief* which he took for the departure of his mother: for it is noted that *he loved her, and was comforted after his mother's death* (Gen 24:67).

This kind of affection the *wise-man* doth elegantly set forth in these words, *Rejoice with the wife of thy youth: Let her be as the loving hinds, and pleasant roe, and be thou ravished always with her love* (Prov 5:18,19). Here note both the *metaphors*, and also the *hyperbole* which are used to set forth an husband's *delight* in his wife. In the *metaphors* again note both the *creatures* whereunto a wife is resembled, and also the attributes given to them. The creatures are two, an *hind* and a *roe*, which are the females of an *hart* and a *roe-buck*: now it is noted of the *hart* and *roe-buck*, that of all other beasts they are most enamored [as I may so speak] with their mates, and even mad again in their heat and desire after them.

These metaphors hath *Solomon* used to set forth that unfeigned and earnest, entire and ardent affection which an husband ought to bear unto his wife: which being taken in a good sense, and rightly applied, so as they exceed not the bonds of Christian modesty and decency, are very fit, and pertinent to the purpose: if we stretch them beyond modesty, we wrong the penman of them, or rather the Holy Ghost that directed him, and propound a pernicious pattern unto husbands.

The attributes given to the forenamed creatures much amplify the point: the former is termed a *loving hind*, the latter a *pleasant roe*, word for word an hind *of loves*, a roe *of favour*, that is, exceedingly loved and favoured: [for to set forth the extent of God's love unto his Son, Christ is called *the son of his love*].

These comparisons applied to a wife, do lively set forth that delight which an husband ought to take in her, and yet is it much further amplified by the *hyperbole* used in this phrase, *be thou ravished with her love*, word for word *err thou in her love*, by which no sinful error, or dotage is meant, but a lawful earnest affection: implying two things especially: First so far to exceed, as to make a man oversee some such blemishes in his wife, as others would soon espy and mislike: or else to count them no blemishes, delighting in her never a whit the less for them. For example, if a man have a wife, not very beautiful, or proper, but having some deformity in her body, some imperfection in her speech, sight, gesture, or any part of her body, yet so to affect her, and delight in her, as if she were the fairest, and every way most complete woman in the world. Secondly, so highly to esteem, so ardently to affect, so tenderly to respect her, as others may think him even to dote on her. An husband's affection to his wife cannot be too great if it is kept within the bonds of honesty, sobriety and comeliness. The wife's affection ought to be as great to her husband, yet because of the husband's place of authority, he must especially take all occasions to manifest this his inward affection. Read the Song of Songs, and in it you shall observe such affection manifested by Christ to his Spouse, as would make one think he did [with reverence in an holy manner to use the phrase] even err in his love and dote on her. A good pattern and precedent for husbands. For nothing is more lovely than a good wife.

12. Of the Stoical disposition of husbands to their wives.

Contrary is the disposition of such husbands as have no heat, or heart of affection in them: but Stoic-like delight no more in their own wives than in any other women, nor account them any dearer than others. A disposition no way warranted by the word. The faithful Saints of God before mentioned, as also many other like to them, were no Stoics, without all affection: nor did they think it a matter unbeseeming them after a peculiar manner to delight in their wives [witness *Isaac's sporting with his wife* (Gen 26:8)] for this is a privilege which appertaineth to the estate of marriage. But that I be not mistaken herein, let it be noted that the affection whereof I speak is not a carnal, sensual, beastly affection, but such an one as may stand with Christian gravity and sobriety: having relation to the soul of a man's wife as well as to her body, grounded both on the near conjunction of marriage, and also on the inward qualities of his wife.

Thus far of an husband's inward respect of his wife. It followeth to speak of his outward carriage towards her.

13. Of an husband's kind acceptance of such things as his wife doth. (See Treatise 3, Section 10.)

S. Peter giveth a general rule for an husband's outward carriage to his wife, which is, that he dwell with her *according to knowledge*, that is, as a man able to order his carriage wisely to his own honour and his wife's good, that so she may have just cause to bless God that ever she was joined to such an husband.

Out of this general these two branches sprout forth.

1. That an husband give no just offence to his wife.
2. That wisely he order that offence which is given by her.

To avoid giving of offence he must have respect,

1. To that which she doth as duty to him.
2. To that which he doth as duty to her.

In regard of the former two things are requisite:

1. That he kindly accept what she is willing and able to do.
2. That he wisely commend and reward what she doth well.

Thus having for orders' sake laid down these heads, I will distinctly handle the several points.

The first particular wherein an husband sheweth himself to be a man of knowledge in walking before his wife, is by *a kind and respective acceptance of every good duty which his wife performeth*. *Abraham* in testimony of his good acceptance of

Sarah's pains in nursing her child, made a great feast when the child was weaned (Gen 21:8): and *Elkanah* on a like respect gave liberty to his wife *to do what seemed her best* (1 Sam 1:23).

A great encouragement must this needs be unto wives to be subject unto their husbands in all things, when they observe no part of their subjection to be carelessly neglected, but rather graciously accepted: it quickens the spirit of a wife to think that her care and pains in pleasing her husband shall not be in vain.

14. *Of husbands slighting and rejecting their wives' goodness.*

Contrary is their practice who thinking all which a wife doth to be but her duty, take little or no notice thereof; or if they cannot but take notice of it, yet lightly regard it, and slightly pass it over. This oftentimes maketh a wife even repent the good she hath done, as *David* repented the service which he had done for *Nabal* (1 Sam 25:21). The truth is that wives ought rather to look unto God for his acceptation than unto their husbands: and though their husbands will take no notice, or not regard what good thing they do, yet for conscience sake, and for the Lord's sake to do their duty: But yet notwithstanding considering our weakness and backwardness unto every duty, it cannot be denied but that an husband's slight regarding of his wife's goodness is an occasion to make her weary thereof: and that he doth as much as in him lieth to make her repent thereof.

But what may we say of such as scornfully reject their wife's duty, yea like them the worse for making conscience thereof, and so [clean contrary to the rule of Christianity] *overcome goodness with evil?* (Rom 12:21) Surely they shew a very diabolical spirit to be in them: and cannot but minister much grief, and offence to their wives, and make that which they do to be very irksome and tedious. Fathers ought not to provoke their children, much less husbands their wives (Eph 6:4).

15. *Of husbands' courteous accepting their wives' reverend carriage.* (See Treatise 3, Sections 11 and 55.)

For the better conceiving of this so needful a point I will somewhat more particularly and distinctly apply the same to the several duties of a wife: which were drawn to two heads - *Reverence, Obedience.*

For the first, if a wife manifest her dutiful respect of her husband by any reverend behaviour, gesture, or speech, he ought to meet her [as we say] in the midst of the way, and manifest his gracious acceptance thereof by some like courteous behaviour, gesture, and speech, being seemly, not foolish.

Object. Thus shall an husband abase himself, and disgrace his place.

Answ. The courtesy which I speak of as it cometh from a superiour, being a mere voluntary matter and a token of kindness and favour, is no abasement of himself, but an advancement of his inferiour: a great grace to her, no disgrace to him. *Abram* was counted of the Hittites *a Prince of God*, yet in communing with them *he bowed* unto them (Gen 23:6,7). It is noted as a commendable thing in *Esau*, that though at that time he was his brother's superior [at least he took himself so to be] yet observing how *Jacob* revered him, bowing seven times to the ground, *he ran to meet him, and embraced him, and fell on his neck* (Gen 33:3,4). Most pertinent to the point is the example of King *Ahasuerus*, who beholding *Esther's* reverend standing before him, held out his scepter unto her, which in a King is a great courtesy (Esth 5:2).

But to put the matter out of all question, let the example of Christ noted in *Solomon's Song* be observed, and we shall find his courtesy every way answering the reverence of his Spouse.

16. *Of husbands' too great loftiness.*

Contrary is a lofty carriage of husbands to their wives, who overlook all reverence shewed by wives, no more respecting their wives in this case, than children or servants: or than King's do respect the reverence of their subjects. Oft have I noted that there is a great difference betwixt a wife and all other inferiours, in which respect all evidences of reverence should much better be respected; yet we know that Kings and Queens will put out their hands to be kissed by their subjects when they kneel before them, which is a token of courtesy: how much more ought husbands to shew courtesy? Unworthy they are to be revered of their wives, who too lord-like overlook them.

17. *Of husbands' ready yielding to their wives' humble suits.* (See Treatise 3, Section 15.)

Again, it being a token of reverence in a wife humbly to make known her desire to her husband, he ought to shew so much courtesy as readily to grant her desire: this courtesy the forenamed *Ahasuerus* afforded to *Esther* (Esth 5:3): *David* to *Bathsheba* (1 Kings 1:28): *Isaac* to *Rebekah* (Gen 28:1): *Abraham* to *Sarah* (Gen 16:6), and many other husbands to their wives. *Abraham* shewed herein such respect to his wife, that though the thing which she desired were grievous to him, yet he yielded to his wife (Gen 21:10,11).

Object. God first commanded him so to do.

Ans. This addeth the more force unto the argument, shewing that it is God's express will, that an husband should shew this kind of courtesy to his wife. Much more ought a man to do at his wife's request than at any other's, whether friend, child, or parent: yea much more free, forward and cheerful ought he to shew himself in granting his wife's request than any other's: provided notwithstanding that her desire be of that which may lawfully be granted: to yield in things unlawful is to lose his authority, as was shewed before (see Section 5).

18. Of husbands' harshness to their wives.

Contrary is the harshness of their disposition who yield to their wives' request as an hard-milch-cow letteth down her milk, not without much ado: whereby the grace of all their yielding is taken away. There can be no courtesy in yielding, when it is against their mind and will forced from them: their wives must ask, and entreat again and again, yea be forced to use the mediation of others to persuade their husbands to yield to their request before they will yield, if at all they yield. What is this but to proclaim to all the world that there is no affection in them to their wives? If a wife's breath be strange to her husband, assuredly his heart is first strange to her: which is the ready way to make him set his heart on strange women.

19. Of husbands forbearing to exact all that they may. (See Treatise 3, Sections 38, 39, 43, 44.)

As a wife's *reverence* so also her *obedience* must be answered with her husband's courtesy. In testimony whereof, *An husband must be ready to accept that wherein his wife sheweth herself willing to obey him.* He ought to be sparing in exacting too much of her: in this case he ought so to frame his carriage towards her, as the obedience which she performeth, may rather come from her own voluntary disposition, from a free conscience to God-wards, even because God hath placed her in a place of subjection, and from a wife-like love, than from any exaction on her husband's part, and as it were by force.

Husbands ought not to exact of their wives, whatsoever wives ought to yield unto if it be exacted. They must observe what is lawful, needful, convenient, expedient, fit for their wives to do, yea and what they are most willing to do before they be too peremptory in exacting it. For example,

1. Though the wife ought to go with her husband, and dwell where he thinks meet, yet ought not he [unless by virtue of some urgent calling he be forced thereto] remove her from place to place, and carry her from that place where she is well settled without her good liking. *Jacob* consulted with his wives, and made trial of their willingness, before he carried them from their father's house (Gen 31:4).

2. Though she ought cheerfully to entertain what guests he bringeth into the house, yet ought not he to be grievous and burdensome therein unto her: the greatest care and pains for entertaining guests lieth on the wife: she ought therefore to be tendered therein.

If he observe her conscionable and wise, well able to manage and order matters about house, yet loath to do any thing without his consent, he ought to be ready and free in yielding his consent, and satisfying her desire, as *Elkanah* (1 Sam 1:23): and if she be bashful and backward in asking consent, he ought voluntarily of himself to offer it: yea and to give her a general consent to order and dispose matters as in her wisdom she seeth meet, as the said *Elkanah* did: [*Do* (saith he to his wife) *what seemeth thee good* (Prov 31:11)] and the husband of that good housewife which *Solomon* describeth.

A general consent is especially requisite for ordering of household affairs: for it is a charge laid upon wives to *guide the house* (1 Tim 5:14): whereby it appeareth that the businesses of the house appertain, and are most proper to the wife: in which respect she is called the *housewife*: so as therein husbands ought to refer matters to their ordering, and not restrain them in every particular matter from doing any thing without a special licence and direction. To exemplify this in some particulars, it appertaineth in peculiar to a wife,

1. To order the decking and trimming of the house (Prov 31:21,22).
2. To dispose the ordinary provision for the family (Prov 31:15).
3. To rule and govern maid servants (Gen 16:6).
4. To bring up children while they are young, with the like (1 Tim 5:10; Titus 2:4). These therefore ought he with a general consent to refer to her discretion (2 Kings 4:19): with limitation only of these two cautions.
 1. That she have in some measure sufficient discretion, wit, and wisdom, and be not too ignorant, foolish, simple, lavish, &c.
 2. That he have a general oversight in all, and so interpose his authority as he suffer nothing that is unlawful or unseemly to be done by his wife about house, children, servants, or other things: for
 1. The general charge of all lieth principally upon him.
 2. He shall give an account unto God for all things that are amiss in his house.
 3. The blame of all will also before men lie upon him.

But those two cautions provided, he ought together with his general consent *put trust* in his wife (Prov 31:11) [as *Potiphar* did in *Joseph* (Gen 39:6)] making herein a difference betwixt a wife, and all others whether children of years, friends, or servants whom he employeth in his affairs. Them in every particular he may direct for matter and manner, and take a strait account of them for expenses laid out, or other things done: because what they do is wholly and only for another. To his wife [who is a joint parent of his children, and governour of his house, to whose good the husband's wealth redoundeth, and in that respect doth for herself that which she doth for her husband] greater liberty, and licence must be given.

20. *Of husbands' too much strictness towards their wives.*

Contrary is the rigour and austerity of many husbands, who stand upon the uttermost step of their authority, and yield no more to a wife than to any other inferiour. Such are they

1. Who are never contented or satisfied with any duty the wife performeth, but ever are exacting more and more.
2. Who care not how *grievous* and *burdensome* they are to their wives: *grievous* by bringing such guests into the house as they know cannot be welcome to them: *burdensome* by *too frequent*, and *unseasonable* inviting of guests, or imposing other like extraordinary businesses, over and above the ordinary affairs of the house. *Too frequent* imposing of such things, cannot but breed much wearisomeness. *Unseasonable* [as when the wife is weak by sickness, child-bearing, giving suck or other like means, and so not able to give that contentment which otherwise she would] cannot but much disquiet her, and give her great offence.
3. Who hold their wives under as if they were children or servants, restraining them from doing any thing without their knowledge and particular express consent.
4. Who are over busy in prying into every business of the house, and will have their hand in all. Besides that such husbands afford no opportunity to their wives of giving proof of the understanding, wit, wisdom, care, and other gifts which God hath endowed them withal, they take away that main end for which a wife was given a man, namely, *to be an help* (Gen 2:18). Such husbands cannot but neglect other more weighty matters, which more properly belong unto them. For observe it and you shall find, that such husbands as are most busy about the private affairs of the house appertaining to their wives, are most negligent of such affairs as appertain unto themselves: they think they *walk in integrity*, but yet are they not *just nor wise* therein: for *the just man walketh in HIS integrity* (Prov 20:7), and *the wisdom of the prudent is to understand HIS way* (Prov 14:8): that integrity which appertaineth to his own peculiar place; and his own way: but *every fool will be meddling* (Prov 20:3), namely, with things not belonging to his place.
5. Who are over suspicious of their wives, and thereupon over strict in taking account of them. *S. Paul* calleth surmizes *evil* (1 Tim 6:4), and that not without just cause: for evil they are in their *nature*, and evil in their *effects*, being occasions of

many mischiefs: but in none so evil as in husbands over their wives. If a wife's fidelity [to whose good the welfare of the family, and increase of the stock redoundeth as well as to the husband's] be without just cause suspected, who shall be trusted? It is the overthrow of many families, that servants are trusted, and not wives.

Thus far of an husband's kind acceptance of that which his wife is willing and able to do.

21. *Of husbands encouraging their wives in good things.*

The *love* which an husband oweth to his wife, further requireth that he wisely *commend* and *reward* what she hath *well done*. That which the Apostle saith of the Magistrate's authority, may fitly be applied to an husband's in relation to his wife, *Do that which is good, and thou shalt have praise of the same* (Rom 13:3). It is expressly noted in the description of a good husband, that *he praiseth his wife* (Prov 31:28,29): and in that he saith, *Give her of the fruit of her hands* (Prov 31:31), it is implied also that he rewardeth her.

This is an undoubted evidence of his good acceptance of her duty, and a further encouragement to stir her up to go on and continue in well doing. Yea this is also an evidence of his joy and delight both in her person, and also in her well doing. If there be no delight in one's person, well doing will rather stir up envy than joy: and they that envy a man's well doing, will never commend, or reward him for it.

In an husband's commending of his wife this caveat must be put: that he so order his commendation as it favour not of flattery, or dotage: nor yet stir up lust or envy in others.

22. *Of husbands ungrateful discouraging their wives.*

Contrary is an ungrateful, if not envious disposition of such husbands, as passing by many good things ordinarily and usually every day done by their wives without any approbation, commendation or remuneration, are ready to dispraise the least slip, or neglect in them; and that in such general terms as if they never did any thing well, so as their wives may well complain and say as it is in the proverb,

*Oft did I well, and that hear I never:
Once did I ill, and that hear I ever.*

Yet such will be ready to praise other men's wives, and upbraid their own wives with the examples of those other, when their own do far excel them in all kind of goodness. What doth this shew but that either they take no notice of their own wife's goodness, or else by reason of the commonness thereof little regard it? If their wives have not the more grace in them, this disposition is enough not only to discourage them from doing any good duty, but also to breed jealousy in them, and to alienate their hearts from them.

23. *Of an husband's mildness.* (See Treatise 3, Section 10.)

Hitherto of that respect which an husband is to have of that duty which his wife performeth to him.

For avoiding just offence, an husband must further have *good respect to that which as duty he doth to his wife*. As *kindly* he must accept duty at his wife's hands, so *mildly* he must perform that duty which he oweth to her.

This mildness is an especial fruit, and evidence of love, and a notable means to take away all offence that otherwise might be taken from many things which he doth. Sugar and honey are not more pleasant to the tongue, than mildness to the heart; it causeth such things as otherwise are irksome and grievous to the soul, to be well taken and applied, even as bitter pills dipped in sweet syrup, or rolled up in the soft pap of an apple, are soon swallowed down and well digested. If an husband desire to be accounted a servant of the Lord he must learn this lesson: For *the servant of the Lord must be gentle to all men* (2 Tim 2:24). If any other servant of the Lord, much more husbands: if to *all men*, most of all to their wives: and that in many respects.

1. Because of the near union betwixt man and wife.

2. Because of the joint authority she hath with him over others: that herein he may be a precedent and example to her.

3. Because of her weakness: glasses are tenderly handled: a small knock soon breaks them.

24. Of husbands' bitterness.

Contrary is *bitterness*, a vice expressly forbidden, and that in particular to husbands. A vice that cannot stand with an husband-like love: whereupon the Apostle commanding the one forbiddeth the other, *Love* [saith he] *and be not bitter* (Col 3:19). Nothing more turneth the edge of his authority, perverteth the use of his government, provoketh the stomach of his wife, maketh his words and deeds less regarded, than *bitterness*. It is as gall and wormwood mixed with sweet and wholesome meats, which causeth that they cannot be well digested, but with violence are spit out again so soon as ever they be tasted. Men in authority are much prone hereunto: and therefore O husbands be so much the more watchful against it, *love your wives and be not bitter unto them*.

25. Of the titles which an husband giveth to his wife. (See Treatise 3, Section 13 and 14.)

The forenamed *mildness* of an husband must be manifested in his - *Speech, Carriage*.

For so far as *reverence* extends itself in the duties of wives, must *mildness* be extended in the duties of husbands.

Whether an husband's speech be *to his* wife before her face, or *of her* behind her back, it must be sweetened with mildness (see Treatise 2, Part 2, Section 36).

1. For his speech to her, 1. the *titles* wherewith he calleth her, 2. the *instructions* which he giveth her, 3. the *commandments* which he layeth upon her, 4. the *reproofs* wherewith he checketh her, must all be mixed with *mildness*.

Among other *titles*, the most ordinary and usual title [*wife*] is a mild and kind title, and least offensive of all other: if an husband give any other *title* to his wife, it must be such an one as manifesteth kindness, familiarity, love, and delight. Such are all the titles which Christ giveth to the Church, as *Spouse, Love, Dove*, with the like. I do not deny but that in the Song of *Solomon*, and in other places of Scripture many titles are given and speeches used by Christ to the Church which are not meet to be used by husbands to their wives, because they are metaphorical, and hyperbolical: but yet in them all we may observe tokens of amiableness, kindness, and mildness, which is the end for which I have alleged his example.

But contrary are such titles as on the one side set the wife in too high a place over her husband, as *Lady, Mistress, Dame, Mother*, &c. And on the other side set her in too mean a rank, as woman, wench, &c. And their Christian names contracted, as *Sal, Mal, Bess, Nan*, &c. and names of kindred, as *Sister*, and *Cousin*: and, opprobrious names, as *slut, drab, queen*; and names more befitting beasts than wives, as *Cole, Brown, Muggle*, &c.

Object. These are titles of mildness, kindness, and much familiarity: for husbands call their wives by these names, not when they are angry with them and displeased, but ordinarily, and usually, even when they are best pleased.

Answ. The mildness and familiarity which is required of an husband must be such as may stand with his authority and place of eminency [as some of those names do not,] and with that near conjunction which is betwixt man and wife above all others [as other do not], and with Christian gravity and discretion [as other do not]. Christians therefore must take heed that by their practice they justify not corrupt customs.

26. Of an husband's manner of instructing his wife.

2. To *instruction* the Apostle expressly annexeth *meekness*. *Instruct* [saith he] *with meekness, those that oppose themselves*. If Ministers must use *meekness* when they instruct their people, much more husbands when they instruct their wives: if in case of *opposition* meekness must not be laid aside, then in no case, at no time.

In this case to manifest meekness, let these rules be observed.

1. Note the understanding and capacity of thy wife, and accordingly fit thine instructions: if she be of mean capacity, give *precept upon precept, line upon line, here a little and there a little*: a little at once oft given [namely every day something] will arise in time to a great measure, and so arise, as, together with *knowledge* of the thing taught, *love* of the person that

teacheth will increase.

2. Instruct her in private betwixt thyself and her, that so her ignorance may not be blazed forth: private actions passing betwixt man and wife are tokens of much kindness and familiarity.

3. In the family so instruct children and servants when she is present, as she may learn knowledge thereby: there can be no more meek and gentle manner of instructing, than by one to instruct another.

4. Together with thy precepts mix sweet and pithy persuasions, which are testimonies of great love.

Contrary is an harsh and rough manner of instructing, when husbands go about to thrust into their wives' heads, as it were by violence, deep mysteries which they are not able to conceive, and yet if they conceive not, they will be angry with them, and in anger give them evil language, and proclaim their ignorance before children, servants, and strangers. This harshness is ordinarily so fruitless, and withal so exasperateth a woman's spirit, as I think he were better clean omit the duty than do it after such a manner.

27. Of an husband's manner of commanding his wife any thing. (See Treatise 3, Sections 43, 51, 52, 63, 64.)

3. The commandments which an husband giveth to his wife, whether they be *affirmative* [bidding her to do something] or *negative* [forbidding her to do this or that] must all be seasoned with *mildness*. For which end respect must be had to the *matter* and *manner* of his commandments.

In regard of the *matter* the things which he commandeth his wife to do, must be

1. Such as are indeed lawful and honest.
2. Such as she is persuaded to be so.
3. Such as beseem her place.
4. Such as are of weight and moment.

And on the contrary, the things which he forbiddeth must be

1. Such as are indeed unlawful to be done.
2. Such as he can evidently prove unto her to be unlawful.
3. Such as are unbeseeming her place.
4. Such as will have some evil and mischievous effect if they be done.

1. To command a thing unlawful, or forbid a thing which ought to be done, is to bring his own authority into opposition with God's: in which case he bringeth his wife into this strait, either to reject God's commandment or his. How then can she think that her husband loveth her, when he bringeth her into such snares and straits, that she must needs fall into the gulf of God's displeasure, or knock against the rock of her husband's offence? Mildness is far from such commandments.

2. The like may be said of such things as to a wife's conscience seem to be sinful, if they be enjoined to her; or her bounden duty, if they be forbidden: especially if she have any ground for her conscience out of God's word. The conscience is subject to God alone: if it be forced it would be a fearful horror, and a very hell in that party whose conscience is forced: *She that doubteth is condemned* if she do that whereof she maketh doubt.

1. *Object.* In doubtful matters the commanding power of a governour is sufficient warrant and ground to resolve the conscience of them that are under authority.

Answ. 1. In things merely doubtful concerning which the party in subjection hath not warrant out of God's Word one way or

other, it may be so. But when the conscience doth not doubt and hang in suspence, but is out of some ground taken from God's Word persuaded that that which is commanded is unlawful, or that which is forbidden is a bounden duty, than to do this, or to leave that undone, is to the party so persuaded a sin: and this is the *doubting* [whereof the Apostle speaketh] that condemneth a man. In this case to urge a wife to do this, or not to do that, is to urge her to sin: which a mild spirit and loving heart will not do.

2. Though the husband's command be sufficient warrant to the wife, and if he peremptorily press her to this or that, she ought to yield, yet the love and mildness required of an husband should make him so to tender her as to remit something of his power, and when he seeth her conscience troubled about his command, to relieve her conscience by forbearing to press that which seemeth so burdensome to her. A husband may sin in pressing that too much upon his wife, which she upon his press may without sin yield unto.

28. *Of an husband's wise carriage when his wife is erroneously scrupulous.* (See Treatise 4, Section 66.)

2. *Object.* What if an husband upon his knowledge observe his wife to be erroneously scrupulous, and to misinterpret and misapply the word of God which she maketh the ground of her scruple?

Ans. He must first labour to resolve her conscience by a plain discovery of her error; which is a true and a great token of love: if notwithstanding all that he can do in that kind she cannot be brought to yield to that which he would have, then he must carefully observe these two things.

1. Whether her refusing to yield, be an obstinacy, or weakness.

2. Whether it be above a slight or weighty matter.

By the reasons which she rendereth, and her manner of pressing them, he may discern whether weakness, or obstinacy make her stand out against him: if the reason which she resteth on taken from God's word be doubtful, and to one that hath not a good sound judgment, and a sharp discerning wit, it may appear to make something for her, it is to be presupposed that there is more weakness than stoutness in her. But if she can render no good reason, but only take every shew that any way seemeth to incline to her-wards, and peremptorily holdeth the conclusion, and stiffly standeth on her own resolution, though the vanity of her pretences be evidently discovered to her, so as she hath not any thing further to object; or if she render no reason at all but her own thought, conceit and will, and yet refuseth to yield, surely obstinacy possesseth her heart. In case of obstinacy it is very expedient that an husband stand upon his power to maintain his authority, and by the best wisdom he can [using only such means as are lawful] bring her to yield from her stoutness to that which he requireth: especially if the matter be weighty: as in case a religious man have been married to a popish wife, and she by no reason will be moved to forbear going to Mass, or yield to go to the preaching of the Gospel. But if through *weakness* she cannot be persuaded of the lawfulness of that her husband requireth, and the matter required be of no great consequence, nor the weakness of her conscience cause any great error, an husband ought so far to manifest his mildness as to forbear to press her conscience.

29. *Of an husband's forbearing to press things unbecoming a wife's place.* (See Treatise 3, Section 43 and 44.)

3. Things unbecoming the place of a wife are dishonourable unto her: for an husband to urge his wife by strict charge to do them, implieth more rigourousness than mildness. Had the spirit of that stout Monarch *Ahasuerus* been more mild towards his wife, he would not have so far pressed his wife unto so unseemly a thing as he did, namely, to come before all his Princes and people to make shew of her beauty. It is true indeed [as we shewed before (see Treatise 3, Section 28)] that she offended in refusing to yield thereunto, he peremptorily requiring it; but that offence on her part doth not justify his fact, and free him from all blame: it is noted, that *he was merry with wine* when he gave that commandment (Esth 1:10), whereby is intimated, that his practice was more becoming a drunken, than a sober man: such is their practice who exact of their wives to do such businesses as besem amid servants rather than wives, or strumpets rather than honest women; as to go to taverns, ale-houses, play-houses, and such places where light companions be.

30. *Of an husband's pressing his authority in weighty matters.*

4. To use a man's authority about weighty matters, matters of moment maketh it to have such weight in it, as it will much better be regarded: for thus a wife will either be brought to yield unto that which is commanded, or to condemn herself for

not yielding: yea thus a wife may see, that it is not his own will so much which maketh him to use his authority in commanding, as the necessity of the thing itself, which redoundeth especially to her good that doth it: for the performance of a duty is for the most part most advantageable to the party that performeth it, so as hereby an husband sheweth love to his wife in pressing that which he presseth.

This token of love that it may the better appear, it is behoveful that an husband add to his commandment just and weighty reasons, that thereby his wife may the better discern the meetness, lawfulness, expediency, and necessity of the things commanded. We know that all the things which God commandeth are weighty and necessary: yea his *Will* [being the very rule, and ground of all goodness] maketh things absolutely necessary, yet unto his commandments he useth to add weighty reasons; shewing on the one side the benefit and blessedness that will come to such as obey his commandments; and on the other side, the mischief and misery that will fall on their pates who refuse to obey; whereby he sheweth the great good respect which he beareth to us, and the earnest desire he hath of our good. Thus may an husband even in his commandments shew much love and kindness.

31. *Of husbands' too great pride in commanding.*

Contrary is the peremptory pride of husbands, when they will have their own will done: it booteth not whether the thing commanded be lawful or unlawful, whether their wives' consciences can yield unto it or no, whether it stand with the honour of their places or no, and whether it be weighty or light; their will it is it should be done, and done it shall be, there is all the reason they will give. Some think it a glory to command what they list; and think that there is no proof of their authority, and of their wives' subjection, but in such things as upon their own will without any further ground or reason, they command. If such husbands meet with confronts; if though they command much, they find not answerable performance; they may thank themselves, who run the ready course to have their authority contemned and even trodden under foot.

32. *Of husbands rare and mild using their commanding power.*

Respect must be had by husbands to the *manner* of using their authority in commanding as well as to the *matter*.

In regard of the *manner* his commandments must be

1. *Rare*, not too frequent.
2. By way of *entreating*, not too peremptory.

Authority is like a sword, which with over much using will be blunted, and so fail to do that service which otherwise it might when there is most need. A wise, grave, peaceable man, may always have his sword in readiness, and that also very bright, keen, and sharp: but he will not be very ready to pluck it out of his scabbard; he rather keepeth it for a time of need, when it should stand him in most stead. Such husbands therefore as are too frequent in their commands, shew themselves not grave, nor wise, nor lovers of peace.

As the use of an husband's authority in commanding must be rare, so when there is occasion to use it, it must be with such mildness and moderation tempered, as an husband [according to *S. Paul's* example] though he have power to command that which is convenient, yet *for love's sake must rather entreat it*. Note how mildly *Abram* frameth his speech to his wife, *Say I pray thee* [saith he] *thou art my sister* (Gen 12:13). Though the thing he required favoured of too much weakness, yet his manner of requiring it was well beseeeming a kind husband.

33. *Of husbands' insolency and peremptoriness.*

Contrary is the insolency of many, who cannot speak to their wives, but in commanding-wise. Their authority is like a swaggerers sword, which cannot long rest in the sheath, but upon every small occasion is drawn forth. This frequent use of commanding, maketh their commandments nought regarded. The like may be said of them who are too peremptory in commanding: there must be no saying of nay, to that which they say: upon command they will have their mind done, and no other way: no persuasion, no entreaty shall be used: they will rather not at all have their will done, than not upon absolute command: nay they will not suffer others, in case of any refusal, to entreat, or persuade, but will try what absolutely they can do by authority. Thus as by trying to bend steel how far it will go, it oft breaketh; so by putting their authority to the uttermost trial, they oft lose all their authority: in which case *the mends* [as we speak] *is in their hands*.

34. Of an husband reproving his wife. (See Treatise 3, Section 47.)

4. The authority and charge which God hath given to an husband over his wife, do require that as good and just occasion is offered, he should reprove her: for this is an especial means to draw her from those sins, wherein otherwise she might live and lie, yea and die also; and so live, lie, and die under God's wrath: out of which misery and wretchedness to free a wife, is as great a token of love, as to pull her out of the water when she is in danger of drowning, or out of the fire when she is in danger of burning. *Solomon* thus styleth reproofs, *reproofs of life* (Prov 15:31), and expressly noteth *reproofs* to be *the way of life*, a means to breed and preserve spiritual life, and to bring one unto eternal life, and so to escape death and damnation (Prov 6:23). In theses respects rebukes are called *a precious balm* or *excellent oil* which may heal a wound, but make none: it *breaketh not the head*, as the Psalmist speaketh (Psa 141:5). Upon this ground, no doubt, it is noted of many good husbands, who were without all question, loving, kind, meek, and mild husbands, that they reprov'd their wives: as *Jacob* (Gen 30:2), *Job* (Job 2:10), *David* (2 Sam 6:21,22), and others.

35. Of neglecting reproof.

Contrary is a servile and timorous mind of many husbands, who are loath to offend, and [as they think] to provoke their wives; and thereupon choose rather to let them continue in sin, than tell them of it. Wherein they both dishonour their place, and the image of God, which by virtue of their place they carry, and also in effect and in truth hate their wives; which the Law implieth, where it saith, *Thou shalt not hate thy brother in thine heart, but shalt plainly rebuke thy neighbour, and not suffer sin upon him* (Lev 19:17).

36. Of well ordering reproof in the matter thereof. (See Treatise 3, Section 47.)

That an husband may evidently demonstrate that his reproving his wife is indeed a fruit of his love, he must have an especial care to sweeten it, especially with mildness: for it is the bitterest pill that by an husband can be given to a wife. It is a verbal correction, and in that respect a middle means [as I may so speak] betwixt admonition and correction; partaking somewhat of both: it goeth no further than words, and so is an admonition: the words of a reproof are sharp, and so it is a correction: though it be but a mild correction, yet it is a sharp admonition; and all the correction which by himself an husband can give his wife: for we shall after shew that he may not proceed to blows, and strokes (see Section 44).

To sweeten *reproof with mildness*, expect must be had [as before was noted of *commanding*] both to the *matter*, and also to the *manner* thereof.

The *matter* of reproof must be 1. *Just*, 2. *Weighty*.

Justice requireth that it be *a truth*, and *a known truth*, even a thing whereof he is assured, for which he reproveth his wife. Christ in giving direction for reproving aright, layeth down this as a ground, *If thy brother shall trespass* (Matt 18:15), &c. a trespass therefore must go before reproof: where no trespass is, there reproof is unjust.

Again, the Apostle adviseth that an accusation should not be received *but under two, or three witnesses* (1 Tim 5:19); whereby he implieth that a light report must not be received, but where blame is laid, there must be two or three witnesses to confirm it, so as he that censureth may have good and sure ground for that which he doth: indeed that advice was in particular given about an elder, but from the less to the greater it will follow to be a good advice concerning wives: for no kind of person must be more wary in laying blame upon another and reproving for the same, than an husband on his wife.

Equity further requireth that the *matter* for which an husband reproveth his wife be *weighty*; namely for some fault that is dangerous to her soul, hurtful to their estate, contagious by reason of ill example to children, and others in the family, but most of all for sin against God which provoketh his wrath, and pulleth down his heavy curse upon him, her, and the whole family.

When that for which a wife is reprov'd is a truth, a known truth, and a weighty truth, the husband in performing this duty justifieth his deed, sheweth that there was need thereof, and so giveth evidence of his love, maketh his reproof to pierce the more deeply, and so maketh her the more ashamed of her fault; whence it will follow, that either she will amend her fault or at least will have her mouth stopped, so as she shall have nothing to except against it. The reproof of the three Saints before mentioned, *Jacob* (Gen 30:2), *Job* (Job 2:10), and *David* (2 Sam 6:21,22), were answerable to these points of Justice and wis-

dom: and the effects thereof answerable to those which we have noted in this reason, as the silence of the three wives implieth: for none of them replied again.

37. Of undue reproof.

Contrary to the forenamed Justice and equity are overlit *credulity* and undue *suspicion*. *Credulity* is when credence is given to every light report, and thereupon blame laid upon the wife before any just proof be made of that for which she is blamed: whereby it oft cometh to pass, that she is wrongfully and unjustly blamed: which if she be, what good fruit can proceed from such reproofs? yea what evil fruits are not like to proceed from thence, as secret discontent [if not malice and hatred] and open contentions and brawlings?

The like may be said of light and causeless *suspicion*, which is the mother of jealousy, and the very bane of marriage, from whence the devil taketh great advantage against them both, seeking thereby to unloose that knot which God hath so firmly knit betwixt them. *Suspicion* to the mind is as a coloured glass to the eye, which representeth things to the sight not as indeed they are in their own true colour, but as the colour of the glass is. *Suspicion* will make a man pervert every thing that his wife doth, and blame her many times for such things as are praise-worthy: in which case what can be thought, but that an husband seeketh advantage against his wife, rather than any good unto her?

If to those two forenamed vices [*credulity* and *suspicion*] he add *rashness* and hastiness in reproving, and make every small and light matter which any way he disliketh, matter of reproof, doth he not proclaim to all that shall know it, that he loves chiding more than he loves his wife? Yea is not this the ready way to make all his reproof [if not scorned] lightly regarded? What then will be the profit of them?

38. Whether an husband may reprove his wife for such things as he is guilty of.

To the *matter* of reproof some add, that an husband ought not to reprove his wife for that fault whereof he himself is guilty: but I make doubt of this direction. I deny not but that he ought to have an especial care that he be not guilty of that crime for which he blameth his wife; otherwise, 1. he blunteth the edge of his reproof, so as readily it cannot pierce into her heart. 2. He causeth it to rebound back again upon himself with these reproaches, *Physician heal thyself* (Luke 4:23): *Hypocrite first cast the beam out of thine own eye* (Matt 7:5). *Thou that teachest another teachest thou not thyself?* (Rom 2:21) 3. He is an heavy witness against himself; for *in that he judgeth another he condemneth himself* (Rom 2:1). But thereupon to infer, that because he is guilty of such vices as are in his wife, he ought not to reprove her though she be worthy to be reprov'd, is scarce sound and good divinity: for thus he maketh himself guilty of a doubt fault, *one* of committing the sin himself, *the other* of suffering his wife to lie therein: whereas if he reprov'd his wife, he might thereby reclaim both her and himself: for I doubt not but his reproving of his wife would strike deeper into his own conscience than if a third should reprove them both. How were *Judah* and *David* stricken to the heart after they had given sentence against such crimes as they themselves were guilty of? (Gen 38:26; 2 Sam 12:13) It is a good advice that no man be guilty of that which he reproveth in his wife, but it is no good rule to say, no man ought to reprove his wife of that whereof he is guilty.

39. Of well ordering reproof in the manner thereof.

Like directions to those which were given for the manner of commanding must be observed in the *manner* of reproving.

Reproofs therefore must be *Rare*, *Meek*.

When reproofs are *seldom* used, not but upon urgent and necessary occasion, 1. It sheweth that an husband taketh no delight in rebuking his wife, but is even forced thereto. 2. It maketh his wife much more regard it. 3. It is like to work a more perfect cure, for seldom and rare reproofs do commonly pierce most deeply.

Contrary is continual chiding, and finding fault with a wife for every thing amiss: if not only the wife herself, but a child, or servant, or any else in the house do amiss, the wife shall be blamed for it. This is too common a fault in husbands: whereby they much provoke their wives; yea and many times make them no more regard a reproof than any other word. For as birds which always abide in belfries where much ringing is, are not a whit afrighted with their loud sound; so wives who have their ears from time to time filled with their husband's rebuke, by use are brought, nothing at all to be moved therewith.

2. That a reproof must be given in *meekness* is clear by the Apostle's general precept of restoring one *in the spirit of meek-*

ness (Gal 6:1): for a right manner of reproof is thereby particularly intended. Now of all with whom we have to do, no fitter object for meekness than a wife, who in a more peculiar manner than any other is *thine own flesh*.

Meekness hath respect both to *secrecy* of place, and to *softness* of words.

When an husband is alone with his wife, then is the fittest season for reproof: thus will reproof be answerable to Christ's direction: *tell him his fault between thee and him alone* (Matt 18:15) [saith Christ of a brother]: but no brother must be tendered more than a wife. Thus will it also soak better into her soul, when no conceit of dishonour and discredit shall arise up to hinder the work of it: which conceits will be ready to arise when a reproof is given in public before others. Thus likewise will occasion be taken away from children and servants of despising her: which otherwise they would quickly take, if before them she should be rebuked; gathering from thence, that she is kept under as much as they: now because she is with him a joint governour of them, he ought by all means to maintain her reputation before them.

1. *Quest.* What if she regard not a rebuke in secret?

Ans. He may follow Christ's direction, *Take one or two more*, namely wise, grave, faithful friends, if it may be, of her kindred, as her parents [if she have any living] or such as are in course of nature next to parents [if they be not partial on her side] and before them rebuke her (Matt 18:15): but by no means before any of the house under her government.

2. *Quest.* What if her fault be public, such an one as may be an ill example to them of the house, it being committed in their sight, or brought some other way to their knowledge?

Ans. Wisely he must so manifest his dislike of her fault, as he no way impair her honour: he may therefore declare that such a thing was not well done, and fore-warn his household of committing the like; yea roundly threaten them that if any of them do the like they shall dearly repent it; and if such as are under correction offend therein, the more surely and severely correct them, even because they have taken example. Thus shall he testify a great good respect of his wife, and also a thorough dislike and hatred of her sin.

2. *A soft tongue* [as *Solomon* noteth] *breaketh the bones*, that is, softeneth an hard heart, and beateth down a stout stomach (Prov 25:15). How will it then work upon a soft heart, and gentle disposition? If therefore an husband look to do good by reproofing his wife, his reproof must be so ordered, as it may seem to be rather a gentle admonition, than a sharp rebuke. He may and ought plainly to declare her fault unto her, but in mild and meek terms, without reviling, opprobrious and ignominious words.

Quest. What if her fault be an heinous notorious sin?

Ans. In an extraordinary case some sharpness may be used: as the reproofs of *Jacob* (Gen 30:2), *Job* (Job 2:10), and *David* (2 Sam 6:21,22) do shew, for they were every one of them sharp: but yet this sharpness must not be made bitter by any evil language. A woman's wickedness may not move an husband to be forward, and outrageous; but rather to be the more watchful over himself, that he contain himself within the bounds of discretion and moderation. For which end it is meet that husbands lay it down for a rule, never to rebuke their wives when they are in passion. Passion raiseth a dark mist before the eyes of reason; which, while it remaineth, keepeth reason from giving any good direction. Yea passion is as a fire, and it so incenseth a man, and distempereth him, that in his disorder he can keep no mean or measure. Howsoever a man be not able to rule himself when passion is stirred up, yet, if before hand while *his eye is single, and his whole body light* (Matt 6:22), while he is *in tune* [as we speak] and well tempered, he resolvedly determine with himself not to do such or such a thing in his passion; that fore-going resolution will be an especial means to make him forbear doing that in passion, which if he should do, he could not in passion well order and moderate. For if once he begin to do a thing in passion, the least provocation that can be, will be as bellows to blow up that fire into a flame.

In regard of the violence of passion [wherein women by reason of the weakness of their judgment are for the most part most violent] it is also the part of a wise man to forbear this duty of reproofing his wife even when she is in passion. For as it is needful that he should be in case well to give a reproof, so as needful it is that she should be in case well to take a rebuke. Passion both filleth and festereth ones heart. The heart then being full of passion, what room is left for good advice? will a man pour wine into a vessel full of water, or stay, till all the water be drained out?

The heart also being so festered as it savoureth of nothing but passion, what good can then good advice do?

It is therefore an especial point of wisdom, and sheweth a good respect that a man beareth to his wife, yea it savoureth of much meekness and moderation for an husband, well to weigh both his own and his wife's temper when he reproveth her, and to forbear doing it while either he or she be in passion.

40. Of indiscreet reprovng a wife.

Contrary is the indiscretion of husbands who regard not place, nor persons, nor time, nor temper of themselves or their wives, nor any other circumstance in reprovng, but like *Saul* [who at a table where a great feast was, in presence of his Nobles and Captains, when he was enraged with anger, with most virulent and bitter speeches not rebuked only but reproached also his son, and that with such words as he spared not his own wife; for in his passion he called his son, *son of the perverse rebellious woman* (1 Sam 20:3)]: like this foolish and furious *Saul*, I say, they take the most open place of the family before children, servants, and whole house, to reprove their wives; and that with such bitter and disgraceful terms, as either they provoke their wives to answer again for maintaining [as they think] their own credit and reputation, [thus *Jonathan* was provoked to answer his father again (1 Sam 20:32)]: or else give them of the house that behold her thus trampled under foot, occasion to set their feet also upon her.

Most husbands are forward enough to reprove, but few do it in meekness, and moderation. They cannot do it but in company, nor without bitter words. Many in rebuking their wives, stick not to use all the evil terms that they can think of, even such as tend not only to their wife's dishonour, but also to their own and their children's infamy. The reason whereof is, because they never rebuke but when they are in passion, and so scarce know what they do: whereby also they stir up passion in their wives, and yet for all that refrain not any whit the more, but rather grow more violent: as when the heat of two first meet together, the flame must needs be the greater. This being the preposterous practice of many husbands, is it any marvel that ordinarily so little good, and so much hurt is done by reprovng? Nay, would it not be a wonder, if any good, and no hurt should be done thereby? This therefore though it be a duty, yet a duty rarely and with great moderation to be used.

Thus far of an husband's mildness in his speeches to his wife.

41. Of an husband's amiable countenance towards his wife. (See Treatise 3, Section 10).

An husband's carriage towards his wife must be answerable to his speech, or else all the mildness thereof will seem but complementary.

A man's carriage compriseth under it, his *Countenance, Gesture, Actions*: in all which must mildness be seated.

1. His countenance in his wife's presence, and towards his wife, must be composed to an amiable pleasantness. His authority over her, and eminency above her, may not make him forget the near conjunction and union betwixt them.

Under the face and countenance I comprise head, brow, eyes, lips and such other parts which are, according as they are framed, signs of amiableness, or discontentedness. Now among, and above other parts of the body, the outward composition of the countenance doth soonest and best declare the inward disposition of the heart. By *Esau's* pleasant countenance *Jacob* perceived that he was pacified in his heart towards him, and thereupon said, *I have seen thy face as though I had seen the face of God*, that is, an amiable, gracious countenance (Gen 33:10). On this ground *David* desired God, *to lift up the light of his countenance upon him*, that thereby he might know the favour and love of God towards him (Psa 4:6). On the other side by a frowning and lowering face, by hanging down the head, putting out the lips, with the like, anger, malice, grief, with other like affections of heart, are manifested: by *Cain's* casting down of his countenance God discerned anger and envy to be in his heart (Gen 4:6): by *Laban's* countenance *Jacob* observed that his affection was turned from him (Gen 31:2). A wife then beholding mildness and amiableness in her husband's face, beholds it as the face of God, and therein as in a looking glass beholds the kindness and love of his heart, and so hath her heart thereby the more firmly knit unto him, and is moved the more to respect him.

42. Of husbands' too great austerity.

Contrary is 1. A lofty proud countenance, as of an imperious Lord over his vassals.

2. A grim stern countenance, as of a judge over poor prisoners.

3. A lowering frowning countenance, as of a discontented creditor over a desperate debtor.

4. A fierce fiery countenance, as of an angry King over a subject that hath displeased him.

These and such like countenances as they manifest a proud, stout, furious discontented disposition of heart, so they cannot but give great discontent to a wife, yea and much affright her being but a weaker vessel, and alienate her heart and affection from him.

43. Of an husband's familiar gesture with his wife.

II. An husband's gesture ought to be so familiar, and amiable towards his wife, as others may discern him to be her husband, and his wife may be provoked to be familiar with him. They which this way are ready to shew themselves kind and mild husbands, are prone to exceed and so to fall into an extreme on the right hand: for some are never well but when they have their wives in their laps, ever coddling, kissing, and dallying with them, they care not in what company; thus they shew more lightness, fondness, and dotage, than true kindness and love, which forgetteth not an husband-like gravity, sobriety, modesty and decency.

Some stick not to allege *Isaac's sporting with Rebekah* (Gen 26:8), to countenance their lasciviousness.

But they forget that what *Isaac* did, was when he and his wife were alone: he was seen through a window. Much greater liberty is granted to man and wife when they are alone, than in company. Besides there are many other ways to shew kindness and familiarity, than by lightness and wantonness.

44. Of an husband's strangeness to his wife.

Contrary to the familiarity I speak of, is [as we speak] *strangeness* when an husband so carrieth himself towards his wife as if she were a stranger to him: if he come in company where his wife is, of all other women he will not turn to her, nor take notice of her. This fault is so much the greater if such a man be of a free pleasant carriage, and use to be merry and familiar with other women. Though his mirth and familiarity be such as is not unbeseeming a Christian, yet his carriage being of another temper towards his wife, it may be a means to breed jealousy in her. Many think outward kind gesture towards a wife to be fondness, but if they knew what a means it is to stir up, increase, and preserve love in a wife's heart to her husband, they would be otherwise minded.

45. Of an husband's giving favours to his wife.

III. Actions are of all other the most real demonstrations of true kindness, wherein an husband must not fail, as he would have his kind speech, countenance, and gesture to be taken in the better part. Kindness and mildness in action consisteth in giving *favours* [as we speak] unto his wife. This is expressly noted in *Elkanah*, who every year gave *favours* to his wives (1 Sam 1:4,5). Thus an husband as he testifieth his love to his wife, so he will much provoke her to do all duty to him. A small gift, as an action of kindness freely given, not upon any debt, but in testimony of love, doth more work on the heart of her to whom it is given, than much more given upon contract, or for a work done, whereby it may seem to be deserved.

In giving favours to a wife, an husband ought to be more bountiful and liberal, than to others, that so she may see thereby he loves her above all; as it is noted that *Elkanah* gave *Hannah* a *worthy portion, because he loved her* (1 Sam 1:4). And in giving favours it is best to bestow them with his own hands, unless he be absent from her.

46. Of husbands beating their wives.

Contrary are the furious, and spiteful actions of many unkind husbands [*head too head*] whose favours are buffets, blows, strokes and stripes: wherein they are worse than the venomous viper. For the viper for his mate's sake casteth out his poison: and wilt not thou, O husband, in respect of that near union which is betwixt thee and thy wife, lay aside thy fierceness and cruelty? Many wives by reason of their husband's fury, are in worse case than servants: for

1. Such as will not give a blow to a servant, care not what load they lay upon their wives.

2. Where servants have but a time and term to be under the tyranny of such furious men, poor wives are tied to them all their life long.
3. Wives can not have so good remedy by the help of law against cruel husbands, as servants may have against cruel masters.
4. Masters have not such opportunity to exercise their cruelty over servants as husbands over wives, who are to be continually at board and bed with their husbands.
5. The nearer wives are, and the dearer they ought to be to their husbands, the more grievous must strokes needs be when they are given by an husband's hand, than by a master's.
6. The less power and authority that an husband hath to strike his wife, than a master to strike a servant, the more heavy do his strokes seem to be, and the worse doth the case of a wife seem to be in that respect, than of a servant. Not unfitly therefore is such a man [if he may be thought a man rather than a beast] said to be like a father-queller and mother-queller.

Quest. May not then an husband beat his wife?

Answ. With submission to better judgments, I think he may not: my reasons are these,

1. There is no warrant throughout the whole Scripture by precept, or example for it: which argument though it be negative, yet for the point in hand is a forceable argument in two respects. 1. Because the Scripture hath so plentifully and particularly declared the several duties of husbands and wives: and yet hath delivered nothing concerning an husband's striking and beating his wife. 2. Because it hath also plentifully and particularly spoken of all such as are to correct, and of their manner of correcting, and of their bearing correction who are to be corrected, and of the use they are to make thereof; and yet not any thing at all concerning an husband's punishing, or a wife's bearing in this kind. The Scripture being so silent in this point, we may well infer that God hath not ranked wives among those in the family who are to be corrected.
2. That small disparity which [as I have before shewed (see Section 4)] is betwixt man and wife, permitteth not so high a power in an husband, and so low a servitude in a wife, as for him to beat her. Can it be thought reasonable that she is the man's perpetual bed-fellow, who hath power over his body, who is a joint parent of the children, a joint governour of the family, should be beaten by his hands? What if children or servants should know of it? [as they must needs: for how can such a thing be done in the house and they of the house know it not?] can they respect her as a mother, or a mistress who is under correction as well as they?
3. The near conjunction, and very union that is betwixt man and wife suffereth not such dealing to pass betwixt them. The wife is as a man's self, *They two are one flesh* (Eph 5:31). No man but a frantic, furious, desperate wretch will beat himself. Two sort of men are in Scripture noted to cut and lance their own flesh, *idolaters* as the Baalites (1 Kings 18:28), and *demoniacs*, as he that was possessed with a legion of devils (Matt 5:5). Such are they who beat their wives, either blinded in their understanding, or possessed with a devil.

Object. He that is best in his wits will suffer his body to be pinched, pricked, lanced, and otherwise pained, if it be needful and behoveful.

Answ. 1. A man's heart will not suffer him to do any of these himself: there are surgeons whose office it is to do such things; if the surgeon himself have need of any such remedy for his own body, he will use the help of another surgeon. If the case so stand as a wife must needs be beaten, it is fitter for an husband to refer the matter to a public Magistrate [who is as an approved and licenced surgeon] and not to do it with his own hands.

2. Though some parts of the body may be so dealt withal, yet every part may not, as the *heart*, which the wife is to the man.

3. The comparison holdeth not. For the forenamed pinching, lancing, &c., is no punishment for any fault, as the beating of a wife in question is, there is no question but a man that hath skill may if need be open a vein, lance a boil, splinter a broken bone, or disjointed joint in his wife's body, which may be more painful than correction: and herein the comparison holdeth, but not in the other.

2. *Object.* There is as near a conjunction betwixt Christ and his Church, as betwixt man and wife: yet Christ forbeareth not to

correct and punish his Church.

Answ. There is a double relation betwixt Christ and the Church: he is an husband unto it, having made it *of his flesh, and of his bones* (Eph 5:30): and a supreme Lord over it, having *all power in heaven and earth committed unto him* (Matt 28:18). In this latter respect he punisheth, not in the former. An husband is not such a supreme lord over his wife: therefore Christ's example, is no warrant to him.

4. There is no hope of any good to proceed from an husband's beating of his wife: for where the party corrected is persuaded that the party which correcteth hath an authority or right so to do, it will not be brought patiently to take it: but will resist, and strive if it be possible to get the mastery. Let a stranger strike such a child of years or a servant as will patiently bear many strokes at a parent's or master's hand, they will turn again at that stranger, and endeavour to give as good as he brings: now a wife having no ground to be persuaded that her husband hath authority to beat her, what hope is there that she will patiently bear it, and be bettered by it? Or rather is it not likely that she will, if she can, rise against him, over-master him [as many do] and never do any duty aright? A fault in a wife is not taken away but increased by blows.

Object. Smart and pain may make her dread her husband, stand in awe of him, and do her duty the better.

Answ. Such dread and awe beseems neither the place of an husband to exact it, nor the place of a wife to yield it. Though perforce she may be brought to yield some outward subjection, yet inward hatred to her husband's person may be joined therewith, which is as bad, if not worse than outward disobedience.

Object. She may be of so outrageous a disposition, as, but by force, she will not be kept in any compass.

1. *Answ.* It hath been of old time answered, that *no fault should be so great, as to compel an husband to beat his wife.*

2. *Answ.* Other forceable means may be used besides beating by her husband's hands: she may be restrained of liberty, denied such things as she most affecteth, be kept up, as it were, in hold; and, if no other means will serve the turn, be put over to the Magistrate's hands, that if she be of so servile a disposition, as by no other means she will be kept under than by fear and force, by smart and pain, she may fear the Magistrate, and feel his hand, rather than her husband's.

Object. If a wife wax so mannish, or rather mad, as to offer to strike and beat her husband, may he not in that case beat her to make her cease her outrage?

Answ. I doubt not but that that good provision which is made in law to preserve a man's life, may be applied to this purpose. The law simply condemns all murder; yet if a man be so assaulted, as there is no way to preserve his own life, but by taking away his life that assaults him, it condemneth not him as a murderer, because he did it *in defence of himself.* So if an husband be set upon by his wife, it is lawful and expedient that he defend himself, and if he can do it no other ways but by striking her, that is not to be reckoned an unlawful beating her.

47. Of an husband's bearing with his wife's infirmities.

Hitherto of the husband's avoiding of offence, a word concerning his bearing with offence.

A general duty it is, common to all of all sorts, to *bear one another's burden* (Gal 6:2): in which extent even a wife is to bear her husband's burden, because he, as everyone else, is subject to slip and fall, and so hath need to be supported. Yet after a more special and peculiar manner doth this duty belong to an husband, and that in two respects.

1. Of the two, he is more bound than his wife, because in relation to his wife he is the *stronger*: for she is *the weaker vessel* (1 Peter 3:7). But the *strong* are most bound to *bear with the infirmities of the weak* (Rom 15:1).

2. He is bound to bear with his wife more than with any other, because of that near conjunction which is betwixt them: he that cannot bear with his wife, *his flesh*, can bear with no body. The reason alleged by the Apostle to move a man to dwell with his wife according to knowledge, and to give honour to her, intimated in this phrase, *as to the weaker vessel*, sheweth that this is a peculiar duty belonging to an husband, wherein, and whereby he may both manifest his knowledge and wisdom, and also do honour to his wife. For why is he put in mind of her weakness, but to shew he should bear with her?

As that phrase intimateth the duty, so also it intimateth a good reason to enforce it. For precious things, whereof we make high account, the weaker they be, the more tenderly, and charily are they handled, as Cheney dishes, and crystal glasses: and of all parts of the body, the eye is most tenderly handled. Now what things, what persons are more dear and precious than a wife? yet withal she is a weak vessel: therefore she is much to be born withal.

For an husband's better direction herein, difference must be made betwixt infirmities: for some are *natural imperfections*, other are *actual transgressions*. Natural imperfections are *inward*, [as slowness in conceit, dullness in apprehension, shortness of memory, hastiness in passion, &c.] or *outward* [as lameness, blindness, deafness, or any other defect, and deformity of body]. These infirmities should breed pity, compassion, commiseration, yea and greater tenderness and respect, but no offence. Note *Abraham's* example in this case: his wife was barren, yet he despised her not for it, nor upbraided her with any such thing.

Actual transgressions are breaches of God's law: whereof such are here meant, as are most directly tending to his own disquiet, and disadvantage, as shrewishness, waywardness, niceness, stubbornness, &c. In the bearing of these must an husband especially shew his wisdom, and that sundry ways.

1. By using the best and mildest means he can to redress them, as meek admonition, seasonable advice, gentle entreaty, and compassionate affection. *Elkanah* supposing that his wife offended in her passion, thus dealt with her and supported her.

2. By removing the stone whereat she stumbleth, by taking away the occasion [so far as conveniently he can] which maketh her offend. Thus *Abram*, and that by God's advice, put *Hagar* and her son out of the house, because they were an offence to *Sarah*. 3. By turning his eyes away [if the matter be not great, but such as may be tolerated] and taking no notice of the offence, but rather passing by it, as if he perceived it not. *Solomon* saith, that *it is a man's glory to pass over a transgression* (Prov 19:11): and he exhorteth a man *not to give his heart to all the words that men speak* (Eccl 7:23).

4. By forgiving and forgetting it [if notice be taken thereof] *Jacob* took notice of *Rachel's* wrath, and froward demand, for he rebuked her for it (Gen 30:1,2): yet in that he readily yielded to that which afterwards she moved him unto, it appeareth that he forgave the offence, if not forgot it.

The best trial of a man's affection to his wife, and of his wisdom in ordering the same, is in this point of bearing with offences. Not to be offended with a wife that giveth no offence is not praise-worthy: heathen men may go so far. Note what Christ saith of this case, *If ye love them which love you, and do good to them that do good to you, what thanks and reward have ye? for publicans, and sinners do the same* (Matt 5:46; Luke 6:32,33): but gently to forbear, and wisely to pass over offences when they are given, not to be provoked when there is cause of provocation ministered, is a true Christian virtue, a virtue beseeming husbands better than any other kind of men.

48. Of husbands' testiness.

Contrary is testiness, and peevishness, when husbands are moved with the least provocation, like tinder catching fire at the least spark that falleth upon it: yea many are like gunpowder, which not only taketh fire, but also breaketh out into a violent flame, upon the least touch of fire: as gunpowder is dangerous to be kept in an house, so such husbands to be joined so nearly to wives as marriage joineth them. If it be said, that as gunpowder doth no hurt, if fire come not at it; so they are good and kind, if they be not provoked and displeased. I answer, that we have a proverb that saith, *The devil is good while he is pleased*, yet it is not safe to have the devil too near. It is as impossible [considering man's weakness] that he should live and converse with any, and not give offence, as for flint stones long to beat and dash against one another, and no spark of fire to come from them. How then may it be thought possible for a wife, who is so continually conversant with her husband, and the weaker vessel, to live without giving him offence? It is no very kind speech, which husband's use, especially if they be told of their unkindness, *Let my wife deserve favour, and she shall have it*. How little favour would such husbands have of Christ their husband, if he should be of that mind towards them?

Thus far hath been handled the first part of an husband's well managing his authority, by a tender respect of his wife.

The second is a provident care for her.

49. Of an husband's provident care for his wife.

An husband that tenderly respecteth his wife, but providently careth not for her, sheweth more affection than discretion: he may have a kind heart, but he wants a wise head. How then can he be a good head unto his wife? Some present contentment she may have by him: but small profit and benefit can she reap from him. Those duties therefore which have been delivered must be done, but these that follow must by no means be left undone.

An husband's provident care is noted in that office of Christ, wherein an husband resembleth him, namely, to be a *Saviour of the body* (Eph 5:23), as hath been before declared (see Treatise 1, Section 15 and Treatise 3, Section 73). It consisteth

1. In providing things needful for his wife.
2. In protecting her from things hurtful.

1. A careful *providing of things needful* is a principal part of that *honour*, which husbands are to give unto their wives. For where the Apostle saith, that *Elders are worthy of double honour* (1 Peter 3:7; 1 Tim 5:17), he meaneth *maintenance* as well as *reverence*. The Apostle counteth him *worse than an infidel, that provideth not for his own, and specially for those of his own house* (1 Tim 5:8). Who are of an husband's house, if not his wife? in his house, who more properly *his own* than his wife? If then an husband provide not for his wife, what is he to be accounted?

Great reason he should provide for her, because he hath taken her from her parents and friends, and hath received that portion which they allotted her, and hath authority committed unto him over her, and she is put in subjection under him: her friends having given away her portion, and their power over her, and committed all to him, will take no further care for her: she being in subjection under him cannot without him provide for herself. Who then shall provide for her if he do not, whose wholly and only she is?

Contrary is their mind, who take a wife only for their own content, or delight, or gain, and never think of that charge which together with a wife they take upon them. According to their mind is their practice: of when they have a wife they neglect her in everything but what may stand with their own ends. Much have they to answer for: and so much the more, because a wife is an especial pledge of God's favour (Prov 18:22).

50. *Of an husband's providing means of spiritual edification for his wife.*

In this provident care which an husband ought to have of his wife, we will consider the *Extent* and *Continuance* thereof.

It ought to extend both to *herself*, and to *others*.

In regard of herself, to her Soul and Body.

For her *Soul*, means of spiritual edification must be provided, and those both private and public. Private means, are holy and religious exercises in the house, as reading the word, prayer, catechizing, and such like; which being the spiritual food of the soul are to be every day, as our bodily food, provided and used. An husband as a master of a family must provide these for the good of his whole house; but as an husband, in special for the good of his wife: for to his wife, as well as to the whole house he is a King, a Priest, and a Prophet.

By himself therefore, for his wife's good, ought he to perform these things, or to provide that they may be done by some other. *Cornelius* himself performed those exercises (Acts 10:2,30). *Micah* hired a Levite [though his idolatry were evil, yet his care to have a Levite in his house was commendable] (Judg 17:10). The Shunammite's husband provided a chamber for the Prophet, and that especially for his wife's sake, for it was at her request (2 Kings 4:11).

Public means are the holy ordinances of God publicly performed by God's Minister. The care of an husband for his wife in this respect is, so to order his habitation, and provide other needful things, as his wife may be made partaker thereof. It is expressly noted of *Elkanah* that he so provided for his wives, that they went with him every year to the house of God (1 Sam 1:7; 2:19): the like is intimated of *Joseph* the husband of the virgin *Mary* (Luke 2:41). In those days there was a public place and house of God, whither all God's people [how far soever they dwelt from it] were to resort every year: the places where *Elkanah* and *Joseph* dwelt, were far remote from the house of God, yet they so provided, as not only themselves, but their wives also went to the public worship of God. Now there are many houses of God, places for the public worship of God, but yet through the corruption of our times, the ministry of the word [the most principal means of spiritual edification] is not

everywhere to be enjoyed: therefore such ought an husband's care for his wife in this respect to be, as to dwell where she may have the benefit of preaching the word, or else so to provide for her, as she may weekly go where it may be had.

If men of wisdom and ability make a purchase, or build an house for their habitation, they will be sure it shall be where sweet rivers and waters are, and good pasture ground, and where all needful provision may be had. God's word preached is a spring of water of life; the place where it is preached a pleasant, profitable pasture; all needful provision for the soul may there be had. Let this therefore be most of all inquired after: and no habitation settled but where this may be had.

51. *Of neglecting their wives' edification.*

Contrary is their practice, who having their calling in places where the word is plentiful, yet upon outward respects of pleasure, delight, ease, and profit, remove their families into remote places where preaching is scarce, if at all; and there leave their wives to govern the family, not regarding their want of the word, for as much as they themselves oft coming to London or other like places by reason of their calling, enjoy the word themselves. Many citizens, lawyers, and others are guilty of great neglect of their wives in this respect.

So also are they, who abandon all religious exercise out of their houses, making their houses rather stews of the devil, than Churches of God. If for want of means, either public or private, a wife live and die in ignorance, profaneness, infidelity, and impenitency, which cause eternal damnation, assuredly her blood shall be required at his hands: for an husband is God's watchman to his wife (Eze 3:18).

52. *Of an husband's providing things needful for his wife's body.*

To the body also must an husband's provident care of his wife extend: and that both in health and sickness. In health by providing such things as are needful to preserve health, as competent food, raiment, and the like necessaries. Where the Prophet to aggravate the misery of the people saith, *Seven women shall take hold of one man*, saying, *We will eat our own bread, and wear our own apparel, only let us be called by thy name* (Isa 4:1), intimateth, that it was an husband's duty to provide bread and apparel, that is, all necessaries for his wife. Which the law also implieth, where it enjoineth him that taketh one wife upon another, not to diminish the food and raiment of the former (Exo 21:10). In sickness such things are to be provided as are needful either to recover her health, or to comfort, cherish and refresh her in her sickness.

This was before noted among common mutual duties (see Treatise 2, Part 2, Section 29); for by virtue of the matrimonial bond it belongeth both to man and wife: but to the man it appertaineth by virtue of that power and charge which he hath over his wife: and therefore it was needful here to be touched.

53. *Of an husband's provident care for his wife about her child-bearing.* (See Treatise 3, Section 49.)

Most proper to this place is that provident care which husbands ought to have of their wives both before and in the time of their travail and child-bed: and that in two things especially.

1. In procuring for their wives to the uttermost of their power and ability, such things as may save their longing, in case they do long [as in all ages women in the time of breeding and bearing child, have been subject thereunto]. For it is well known, that it is very dangerous both for mother and child to want her longing: the death sometimes of the one, sometimes of the other, sometimes of both hath followed thereupon.

2. In providing such things as are needful for their travail and lying in child-bed. This time is especially to be provided for, in many respects.

1. Because it is a time of weakness, wherein the woman cannot well provide for herself.

2. Because her weakness is joined with much pain: the pain of a woman in travail is the greatest pain that ordinarily is endured by any for the time: none know it so well as they that feel it: and many husbands because they are not subject thereto, think but lightly of it: but if we duly weigh that the Holy Ghost when he would set forth the extremity of any pains and pangs, resembleth them to the pains of a woman in travail, we may well gather, that of all they are the greatest (Psa 48:6; Isa 13:8; 21:3; Jer 4:31; 30:6; Micah 4:9): which is further manifested by the shrieks and outcries which not only weak, and faint-hearted women utter in the time of their travail, but also are forced from the strongest, and stoutest women that be, and that

though before hand they resolve to the contrary. Neither may we wonder thereat; for their body is as it were set on a rack [if at least the travail be sharp] and all their parts so stretched, as a wonder it is they should ever recover their health and strength again: or that they should hold out the brunt, and not die with their travail, as *Rachel* (Gen 35:16), and the wife of *Phinehas* (1 Sam 4:19,20), and many in all ages have done. Surely among ordinary deliverances I know none so near a miracle, none wherein the Almighty doth so evidently manifest his great power and good providence, as in the safe delivery of women. Besides the great pang of travail, women are also after their delivery subject to many *after-throws* which are very painful. From all these pains and great weakness which befalleth women in child-bed, especially if they nurse their children, men by reason of their sex are freed: Now then to apply this point, seeing women are brought to such pains and weakness in bringing forth those children which are the man's as well as hers, and he freed from all; is it not very just and meet that he should provide all things needful for her welfare, ease, and recovery of strength?

3. Because the want of things needful is at that time very dangerous: dangerous to the health and life of the woman and child also.

54. Of neglecting wives in their weakness.

Contrary to an husband's provident care in general are those vices which were taxed in the treatise of common duties, as *grudging at the charges bestowed on a wife: Covetousness, Prodigality, and Idleness* (see Treatise 2, Part 2, Section 30 and 39).

But contrary in particular to an husband's care for his wife in child-bed, is the inhumane and more than barbarous unkindness of many husbands, who no whit consider the weakness of their wives in this case, to help, ease, and comfort them, but rather make their burden much more heavy. For, 1. Some through covetousness refuse before hand to afford means to their wife to provide such things as are needful for herself and child: and when the time cometh, if their wife be desirous of a midwife that requireth somewhat more charges than she that is next, she shall have none if she will not have the next. And as for a nurse to tend her, they think their maid will serve the turn well enough: they need not be at the charges to bring a nurse into the house. In regard of convenient lodging some will not stick to say, Cannot my wife be brought to bed in a room without a chimney as well as the virgin *Mary*? Why should my wife need more things than she did? Yea further there be many that when the time that their wife should be delivered approacheth near, carry her from all her friends into a place where she is not known, lest her friends should by importunity draw him to expend and lay out more upon his wife than he is willing. In the time while their wife is weak in child-bed, many are loath to allow them any other diet than is for themselves and children provided in the house, not considering that her stomach cannot be like theirs.

Many other such bitter fruits of unkind husbands arising from covetousness might be reckoned up, whereby husbands plainly shew that they love their wealth better than their wives: they had rather lose *them* than part with *that*.

2. Others through jealous suspicion forbear not even in the time of their wives' pain and weakness, to upbraid them with lightness, and to say that the child is none of theirs. To lay this to a wife's charge unjustly, is at any time a most shameful and odious reproach: but in the time of childbirth whether just or unjust, a thing too too spiteful and revengeful. Some wives are so far overcome thereby, [especially in the time of their weakness] as they are not able to bear it, but even faint and die under the reproach: others more stout vow never to know their husbands again. Many like mischiefs follow on such unkindness.

55. Of an husband's providing for his wife according to his estate and ability. (See Treatise 3, Section 38.)

In an husband's providing for the body of his wife respect must be had to the *measure*, and to the *manner*.

The *measure* must extend to his ability: for an husband ought to maintain his wife in as good an estate and fashion as himself; by marriage she is advanced to as high an estate, and dignity in relation to others as he is: and for her own use she is made a partner of all his goods, and accordingly ought to partake thereof.

For the *manner*, he must suffer her [if at least he observe her to have any competent discretion] to order such things as are needful for herself according to her best liking: as *Elkanah* in another case said to his wife, *Do what seemeth thee best* (1 Sam 1:23).

Both in the *measure* and in the *manner* of providing, there must be a difference put betwixt a wife, and servants or children.

These may have their portions of meat, apparel, and like necessaries, proportioned out and stinted unto them, which is unmeet to be done to a wife. Neither is it needful that so plentiful a provision be made for them as for her.

56. *Of an husband's niggardliness to his wife.*

Contrary is an husband's niggardly dealing with his wife: when the allowance she hath is both far under his estate, and also so given her by little and little, as if she were a child. Many husbands make their wives drudge at home, fare hardly, and go meanly; who are themselves brave in apparel, frolic in their feasting abroad, and so exceed their wives as they are ashamed to be seen in company with them. They who marry their maids, or others of meaner rank than themselves, oft so deal with them: esteeming them but as servants and mean persons though they be their wives. But it hath been before shewed (see Section 6), that wives by marriage are advanced to their husband's dignity, how mean soever they were before.

57. *Of husbands allowing their wives to bestow on others, as they see good occasion.* (See Treatise 3, Sections 23, 29, 33.)

So far ought the provident care of an husband for his wife to extend, as she may have [beside things needful to herself] to bestow on such as it is requisite for her to give unto: as namely, on children and servants in the house, and others also out of the house. For so much is noted in *Solomon's* description of a good wife; *She giveth meat to her household, and a portion to her maidens* (Prov 31:15): *all her household is clothed with scarlet* [namely, by her ordering and disposing the matter] (Prov 31:21). *Her children rise up and call her blessed* (Prov 31:28), as for her general carriage in the family, so for her particular favours bestowed on themselves. As for others out of the house, it is also noted, that *she stretcheth out her hand to the poor, and reacheth forth her hands to the needy* (Prov 31:20). These things she did by virtue of that power and liberty which her husband gave her: as appeareth by two points there noted:

1. In that before any mention is made of those things which she did, it is said, *The heart of her husband doth safely trust in her* (Prov 31:11).

2. In that, after all her good deeds are reckoned up, it is said, *Her husband praiseth her* (Prov 31:28).

After this pattern it is meet that other husbands [whose wives are wise and faithful] should deal with their wives: that in the house they might have the more honour of children and servants: and that out of the house they might give the better trial of their charity.

For considering the many excellent promises that are made to works of mercy and charity, and the many terrible threatenings that are denounced not only against such as exercise cruelty, but also against such as shew no mercy: considering also that wives together with their husbands, are *heirs of the grace of life* (1 Peter 3:7), it is very needful yea even necessary, that they should manifest their faith by some work of mercy and charity. Now unless her husband do give unto her something at her own discretion to bestow on others, true and through trial of her merciful and charitable mind cannot be made. If she give of that which her husband hath reserved to himself, as her giving is unlawful, so she may be thought liberal, not because she is merciful, but because notwithstanding her liberality she parteth with nothing of her own: yea though she have a general consent to give as she seeth cause of the common goods of the family, yet is not that so sure and sound a trial of her charity, and mercifulness, as if she had something of her own which she might retain or give away as pleaseth herself; and what she gives not away, lay up as her own stock proper to herself. For there is naturally such a self-love in man, and a desire to keep that which is proper to one's self, that he is very loath to part with any of it, unless conscience and grace alter this corruption of nature, and so move him readily to lay out something on charitable uses. But otherwise of that which in whole or in part belongeth to another [be that other, husband, parent, master, friend, or any else] he is easily moved to be liberal and bountiful: a man will willingly cut a large thong [as we speak] out of another's leather.

It is known that many children and servants, who, when they come to be possessors of their own, are very niggards and misers, have been liberal of their parents' and masters' goods unto the poor. Yea partners in a stock will be much more forward in giving away that which is common with another, than that which is proper to each of them. The truest trial of a merciful and charitable heart lieth in the distribution of that which is proper to one's self.

It is therefore meet upon this very ground, that an husband should according to his ability let his wife have some stock, and portion of her own, free to herself to dispose as she seeth good: intimating unto her that the principal end why he provideth so plentifully for her, is, that she may shew forth the fruits of her faith by some works of charity: and exhorting her so to do. Many religious, wise, kind husbands thus do: some giving quarterly allowance in money to their wives, others giving their

wives power to receive a certain portion of rent out of certain lands or houses; others making their wives an absolute estate of some inheritance, and suffering them to receive the profits and revenues thereof; others giving them certain fees of their offices, or of their trade; others, that are poor, suffering them to work for themselves, and dispose their earnings as they see cause: some one way, some another: every one in his place best knoweth the means how to gratify his wife in this kind: it shall be sufficient for me to have laid down the general rule.

58. *Of husbands' too great straitness over their wives.*

Contrary is their strait-handedness to their wives, who allow them no more than may be for their own private use. They think it a great matter and as much as an husband is bound to do, to let her have apparel, meat and drink, and such necessaries as are befitting her rank, but all other over-plus they think needless. Thus their wives are not only deprived of means to gain respect of their children and servants at home, and to gratify such as are obedient and ready to do service to them, but also to perform such works of mercy as both opportunity requireth, and also their conscience moveth them to do. Yea many wives of rich husbands are brought to great shame hereby, in that being in places where there is just occasion of contributing to some charitable use, and by reason of their rich and costly apparel it is expected they should be bountiful, they have not any thing at all to bestow. The fault of some husbands in this respect is great many ways. As 1. in that they bring shame and grief to their wives, whom they ought with all tenderness to respect. 2. In that they dishonour their own places: for they who take notice of this straitness to their wives, will be ready to judge them both covetous, and unkind. 3. The omitting of that work of mercy which their wives should have done shall be laid to their charge: they shall hear that dreadful doom: *Go ye cursed unto everlasting fire, for I was an hungered and ye fed me not &c.* and if they answer, *When saw we thee an hungered &c.* it shall be replied, *In that ye suffered not your wives to do it, you did it not.*

Thus much of the *extent* of an husband's provident care for the good of his wife. It followeth to speak of the continuance thereof.

59. *Of an husband's care to provide for his wife so long as she shall live.*

The *continuance* of an husband's provident care for his wife must be so long as she liveth, yea though she out-live him: not that he can actually when he is dead provide for her, but that he may before his death so provide for her, as she may have wherewithal to maintain herself, and to live according to that place whereunto by him she is advanced: at least that he leave her not only so much as he had with her, but something more also in testimony of his love to her, and care for her. Husbands have the example of Christ to press this duty upon them: for when he went away from his Church here on earth, he left his Spirit, which furnished it with gifts as plentifully, as if Christ had still remained with her, if not more abundantly (Eph 4:8).

For the better performance of this duty, husbands which die before the wives, must observe among other things two especially.

1. That plain and expressly they declare their mind and will before they die, lest their wives should be circumvented and defrauded of that which they intended them. Thus did *David* upon the motion of *Bathsheba*, he settled his estate, and caused *Bathsheba's* son to be actually crowned before he himself gave up the Ghost: which he did, as for other weighty reasons, so in particular for his wife's good, as may be gathered from that reason she alleged to the King in these words; *Else when my Lord the King shall sleep with his fathers, I shall be reputed vile* (1 Kings 1:21).

2. That he request some faithful friend in is stead to be an helper unto her; [as Christ commended his mother unto his disciple *John* (John 19:16,27)] which will be needful in regard of her weakness, by reason of her sex, and want of experience to manage such affairs especially as are out of the house.

At the time of a man's departure out of this world from his wife, will the truest trial of his affection to his wife be given: for many that bear their wife's fare in hand while they live with them, at their death shew that there was no soundness of affection in their heart towards them: all was but a mere shew for some by-respects.

60. *Of husbands' neglect of their wives future estate.*

Contrary are divers practices of unkind husbands. For

1. Some through improvidence, unthriftiness and prodigality, disable themselves from doing good to their wives after their death; and so leave their wives nothing, or [that which is worse than nothing] in debt, and with a great charge of children. That care which husbands ought to have of their wives should make them think before hand of the time to come, and even for their wives' sake be somewhat the more diligent, thrifty, and provident, and cut off many unnecessary expences, else their sin is doubled. 1. By a needful wasting their estate. 2. By neglecting their wives.

2. Others by fawning, or forcing means draw their wives to yield up that interest they have in money, goods, house or land by jointer, inheritance, or any other way, and yet make them no sufficient recompence in another kind: but at their death leave their wives in a far worse estate than they were in before marriage, beside a greater charge than they had before. As this is a great part of unkindness, so also a main point of injustice.

3. Others grudging against the laws under which they live for providing for a wife by *thirds* or otherwise, use all the fraudulent means they can to deprive her of that which otherwise the law would lay upon her. The civil politic laws of the place where we live ought to be the rule of our civil actions [so far as they are not repugnant to God's word] and we ought for *conscience sake* to be subject unto them (Rom 13:5). Besides an husband ought [though the law forced him not] to leave at least the *thirds* to his wife, as a testimony of his love to her, and care for her: so as this also is a double fault. 1. A transgression of the law. 2. A note of unkindness.

4. Others having aged and sickly wives, or otherwise thinking that their wives may, or rather hoping that their wives will die before themselves, put off the making of their wills of purpose that they might not put in their wives' *thirds*, but dispose them some other way. Besides that these husbands shew no good affection towards their wives, they provoke God to disappoint them of their hopes: and so he doth often-times: for he taketh them away before their wives, and so taketh them away, as having not time to make their will, not only their wives enjoy their *thirds* [which they so much desired to avoid] but also some other [whom of all in their lifetime they misliked] seize upon the other two parts.

61. Of an husband's protecting his wife from danger.

Having shewed how an husband is to provide things needful for his wife: It remaineth to shew how he is to protect her from things hurtful. In regard of that *protection* which an husband oweth his wife, he is called *the veil of her eyes* (Gen 20:16): which phrase as it implieth *Subjection* on the wife's part, so also *Protection* on the husband's: to protect one, is as it were, to *cover* them, namely, from danger; to be negligent and careless of them, is, as it were, to lay them open to danger. The same duty is implied under another like phrase of *spreading his wing* over his wife (Ruth 3:9). The metaphor is taken from winged fowls, which to keep their young ones from hurt, use to spread their wings over them: this phrase and metaphor is also attributed to God, to set forth his protection (Ruth 2:12).

But most pertinent to this purpose is the title, *Saviour*, given to an husband in relation to his wife (see Treatise 1, Section 15 and Treatise 3, Section 73).

For this end the Lord who subjected a woman unto her husband, gave to his sex greater strength, courage and boldness than to hers, that he might protect her which is the *weaker vessel*. In this duty of *protection* Christ sheweth himself an excellent pattern and precedent unto husbands.

The better to perform this duty, an husband must be careful,

1. To prevent, as much as he may, such dangers as his wife is like to fall into.
2. To recover her out of such as she is fallen into.

For this purpose did *David* carry his wives into *Gath* lest, if they were left in Israel, *Saul* should work them some mischief (1 Sam 27:3): and again, when they were taken by the *Amalekites*, he recovered them (1 Sam 30:18).

According to that danger whereunto wives are subject, must an husband's care of protecting his wife be manifested.

1. If she be in danger to be seduced and enticed, as *Eve* was, by any evil instruments of the devil, as Jesuits, Priests, Friars, profane, blasphemous, lascivious, or riotous persons; his care must be either to keep them away that they come not at her, or to put them away from her so soon as he can: he may not suffer them to harbour in his house.

2. If by any sleight she be drawn from his house, he must seek her, and fetch her again, as the *Levite* did his wife (Judg 19:2): or cause her [if he can] to be brought home again, as *David* caused *Michal* to be brought (2 Sam 3:13,14): especially if they be taken away by force, as *Ahinoam*, and *Abigail*, *David's* wives, were (1 Sam 30:18).

3. If she be unjustly slandered, he is to maintain her credit and reputation as much as his own: as Christ accounteth himself despised, when his Church is, so must he (Luke 10:16). This care must he have of his wife's credit, even after her death, as well as while she liveth (see Treatise 2, Part 2, Section 31). 4. What other mischief soever is intended or practiced against her, he must be a tower of defence to protect her, [as *Ahasuerus* was to *Esther* against *Haman* (Esth 7:7,8)] and that not only against strangers without the house, but also against children and servants in the house. Children grown to years, that are stout and stubborn, will be ready to rise up against their mother, especially if she be a mother in law, because she is the weaker sex: the countenance of a father for the most part keepeth most in awe. Wherefore the husband must be an help to his wife, and maintain her honour against them: yea though they be children of a former wife.

62. Of an husband's maintaining his wife against children of a former venture, and servants.

Object. Mothers in law often prove unkind, and unjust step-mothers, and deal unmercifully with their husband's children: must an husband in such cases assist his wife against his children?

Ans. The protection, I speak of, is in case a wife be wronged, then her husband is to do what he can to right her [as we speak]. But if she be the wrong-doer, he may by no means bolster her up against his children, and so make their wrong the greater. Yet so far ought he to respect his wife, as by all the fair means he can, to labour to pacify her mind, and turn her heart towards them: and if he observe her heart to be clean alienated from them, then to put them forth to be brought up in some other place, and so to take away from her the object of her displeasure, that he and she may live more quietly together. For *if a man must forsake father and mother*, he must also forsake children, and *cleave to his wife*. Peace and unity betwixt man and wife must of all other be kept inviolable. *Though thou cast away all, nothing can happen more troublesome to thee than not to have a quiet wife at home. Thou canst find no sin more grievous than to have contention with a wife.*

If a wife must be maintained against the stubbornness of children, much more against the insolency of servants: for which purpose the example of *Abraham* is recorded, whose servant might have privilege above other, because he had made her his bed-fellow; yet when she waxed insolent against her mistress, first he put her into her mistress's hand to do to her as it pleased her; and afterwards he cast her out of his house.

63. Of neglecting to maintain their wives.

Contrary is a dissolute carelessness of husbands, who care no more to help and succour their wives than any other.

1. Some more fear to offend their wives than they care to do them good, and in that respect they let any sort of people come to their wives that are welcome to them. If Magistrates in a Commonwealth shall answer for suffering seducers to come into their dominions to deceive their people, much more shall husbands answer for suffering them to come and deceive their wives.

1. Because they have a greater charge over their wives than Magistrates over their people.

2. Because wives ought to be dearer to husbands than people to Magistrates.

3. Because they may sooner espy them in their house, than Magistrates in the Commonwealth.

4. Because they may be much more easily kept out of an house, than out of a Commonwealth, or a city.

2. Others care not whither their wives wander: and if they do go out of their house, they shall never be sought after by their husbands: though this may be a just punishment on wandering wives, yet is it not just for husbands so to deal with them. If Christ our husband should so deal with us, we should soon be lost: for we oft go astray like wandering sheep, but he is that good shepherd, who seeketh after the lost sheep until he find it (Luke 15:4).

3. No marvel then that many husbands are no more affected with the ill reports and rumours raised against their wives,

when they so little regard who come to them, or whither they go. Assuredly the discredit of a wife will turn to the man's dishonour: for as *a virtuous wife is a crown to her husband*, so by the rule of contraries, an infamous wife is a shame to her husband (Prov 12:4). If therefore not for his wife's sake, yet for his own sake a man ought not to carelessly pass over the ill reports which are raised against his wife.

4. There be such unkind husbands as are moved with no ill usage done unto their wives, nor will hear any complaint that they make unto them: yea if they see them misused, they will either not seem to see it, or but smile at it, and so go their way, and suffer their wives to right themselves as well as they can. As this beseemeth not any Christian to suffer his neighbour to be wronged, [for it is noted as a commendable matter in *Moses*, that when he saw two Hebrews striving together, he took his part that had wrong done to him, and reprov'd the other (Exo 2:13)] so much less an husband, to whose safe-guard his wife is committed. Nature teacheth us that the head is as much affected with a wrong done to the body, as to itself: so ought an husband.

5. As the wrong which is done by those who are in subjection in the house under the wife, is greater than that which is done by strangers: so is the husband's fault the greater in suffering it: for he hath more power over them in his house, than over others. What then may we think of such, as either by their connivance, or by taking part against their wives, suffer both children and servants to insult over them? Assuredly those husbands themselves will find some smack of the bitter and evil fruit thereof: and that not only by that great discontent which their wives must needs take thereat; but also by that contempt which will follow on their own persons, both by their wives [who cannot think them meet heads to govern others] but also by their children and servants, who thereby will take occasion to wax proud, and presumptuous against him. By despising the weaker, men grow by little and little to despise the stronger. This men of wisdom and experience well know: whereupon in Commonwealths and policies governed by wise men, the authority of inferiour Magistrates is upheld and maintained: superiour Magistrates will not suffer them who are in authority under them to be despised: for it is well known, that it tends not to the honour and ease only, but to the safety also of the supreme Magistrate, to have the power and authority of inferiour Magistrates respected, and not trampled under feet. It argueth therefore both want of affection, and of discretion and understanding in husbands, to suffer child, servant, or any other in the house to insult over their wives, who are joint governours with them over the house.

64. *Of an husband's first beginning to love his wife.*

The general *matter* together with the particular *kinds* of husbands' duties being thus far handled, The *manner* also of performing them is to be delivered.

To instruct an husband in the *manner* of performing his duties to his wife, the Apostle layeth down two patterns, 1. *Christ*, 2. *Ourselves*.

As Christ loveth his Church, and as we love ourselves, so must men love their wives.

That we may the better follow these patterns, we must distinctly note how Christ loveth his Church, and how we love ourselves.

The love of Christ to his Church is commended unto us in six several points: which are 1. The *order*, 2. The *truth*, 3. The *cause*, 4. The *quality*, 5. The *quantity*, 6. The *continuance* thereof.

I. For the *Order*, Christ began to love his Church: he manifested his love to her before she loved him: as the air heated by the sun is hot, and a wall on which the sun-beams smite, giveth a reflection of heat back again: so the Church, as it were heated and warmed at heart by the sense of Christ's love, loved him, as the Apostle expressly noteth, [*We love him because he loved us first* (1 John 4:19)]: and the Church herself acknowledgeth saying, *Because of the savour of thy good ointments* [where-with we are revived, and cheered] *the virgins love thee* (Cant 1:2).

There is in us by nature no spark of love at all: if Christ by his loving of us first, did not instill love into us, we could no more love him than a living bird rise out of a cold egg, if it were not kept warm by the dams sitting upon it.

Thus must an husband first begin to love his wife. His place of eminency, and authority requireth, that he should be to his wife, *a guide*, which title is expressly given to him by the Holy Ghost, to teach him to go before her, and by his example to instruct, and incite her to do her duty. What a shame would it be for a man who is *the image and glory of God, the head of*

his wife, in the same place to her that Christ is to his Church, to be provoked by his wife's wife-like carriage [she being the weaker vessel, under him, to learn of him] to love her? (See Treatise 1, Section 10.) Reasons there be to stir up a wife to endeavour to prevent her husband in doing her duty, which if she do, it is the greater glory to her; but this pattern of Christ should stir him much more to strive to go before her.

65. Of husbands repaying unkindness for love.

Contrary, is their disposition, who having loving and dutiful wives, are notwithstanding nothing moved to love them again: but are as unkind and churlish as if they had the most peevish, and perverse wives that could be. But what shall we say of such as love their wives the less, yea and hate them for their forwardness to love, and [in testimony of true love] to perform all good duty? What, but that they are very devils incarnate? For it is the devil's property to overcome good with evil. These make the doctrine of a wife's subjection to seem harsh, and a careful performance thereof, an heavy burden. Never shall they partake of Christ's love, that in their place shew themselves so unlike to Christ.

66. Of the truth of husbands' love. (See Treatise 3, Section 57.)

II. The *truth* of Christ's love was manifested by the fruits thereof to his Church: *He gave himself for it*. It was therefore not in *word* only, no nor only in *heart*, but in *deed* also. Thus his love proved profitable, and beneficial to his church, which thereby was *cleansed, and made a glorious Church*. Had he only borne a tender compassion and pitiful affection towards it, or laboured only with comfortable and sweet words to uphold and succour it, it had still lain polluted with sin, in the power of the devil, and under God's wrath, and so received no profit and benefit at all.

So must husbands love their wives in *truth* and in *deed*. Such a love is required of a man to his brother (1 John 3:18): much more therefore to his wife, who is not only a *sister* [as the Apostle expressly styleth her (1 Cor 9:5)] but nearer than sister, mother, daughter, friend, or any other whatsoever. This therefore serveth to press the *practice* of all the forenamed duties appertaining to an husband.

67. Of husbands' dissimulation.

Contrary is their dissimulation and hypocrisy, who make great shew of much love, and pretence of earnest affection, using many outward complements, but fail when they come to the truest trial, the *deed*. Some like suitors or wooers, will promise *mountains*, but not perform *mole hills*: others will coddle and kiss their wives much, but trust them with nothing, nor provide for them things requisite: there be that will weep much when their wives are sick, yet not afford physic and such like things for their recovery: yea many will carry a fair face all their life long towards their wives, and at their death leave them nothing to live by.

Hence it is that many who by others are accounted to be very kind husbands, are by their wives found to be far otherwise. If trial be made of husbands' love by their practice and performance of the forenamed duties, it will be found that they for the most part come as far short in *love*, as wives in *subjection*.

68. Of the freeness of husbands' love.

III. The cause of Christ's love, was his love, as *Moses* noteth, *He set his love on you, because he loved you* (Deut 7:7,8). His love arose only, and wholly from himself, and was every way free: as there was nothing in the Church, before Christ loved her to move him to love her, so can there be nothing that he could hope for afterwards, but what himself bestowed. Indeed he delighteth in that righteousness wherewith, as with a glorious robe, she is clothed; and with those heavenly graces, wherewith as with precious jewels she is decked: but that righteousness, and those graces are his own, and of his free gift, *He presents it to himself a glorious Church* (Eph 5:27).

In imitation hereof husbands should love their wives, though there were nothing in wives to move them so to do, but only that they are their wives: yea though no future benefit could after be expected from them: true love hath respect to the *object* which is loved, and the good it may do thereunto, rather than to the *subject* which loveth, and the good that it may receive. For love *seeketh not her own* (1 Cor 13:5).

Christ's love in this branch thereof should further move husbands to do what lieth in their power, to make their wives worthy of love: thus will it be in truth said, that they *dwell with their wives according to knowledge* (1 Peter 3:7): and thus will

their love appear to be as Christ's love, *free*.

69. Of husbands loving for advantage.

Contrary is their love which is only for their own content and advantage. Many can love no further than they may have some bait to allure their affections, as beauty, wealth, honour, or the like by-respects; or at least hope of some inheritance or portion above that which they have, or of some favour that they expect from their wife's friends. This cannot be a true sound love: such a man may be thought to love his wife's beauty, inheritance, and friends rather than his wife. This love cannot last.

70. Of the purity of husbands' love.

IV. Christ's love for the *quality* is an holy, pure, chaste, love: as he himself is, so is his love, as is evident by the effect thereof: for it moved him to *sanctify and cleanse his Church, to make it a glorious Church without spot* (Eph 5:26,27), he did therefore no way pollute or defile his Spouse: and that his love might the better appear to be chaste love, cast only upon one Spouse and not many, he united all his Saints together by the bond of his Spirit, and made them all *one body* (1 Cor 12:12,13).

Hereby husbands must learn so to be affected towards their wives as may stand with holiness, and chastity: though much love be required, yet it may not overflow those banks. *Marriage is honourable and a bed undefiled* (Heb 13:4). It must therefore be used as an undefiled thing. This indeed appertaineth to the wife as well as to the husband. But because he is the head, and guide of his wife, and ought to be as a pattern and president before her, as Christ is before him, therefore is it more specially applied to him. The purity of an husband's love here spoken of, hath a double use,

1. It restraineth an husband's love to his own wife. There is a general Christian love whereby all occasions of doing good are taken, with which an husband may, and ought to love others: and a particular matrimonial love, whereby he is moved to prefer his wife before all, and to have his heart set and fixed on her, and so proper and peculiar to her.

2. It orders and moderates his love, so as it turneth not into sinful lust, whereby that estate, [which in itself by virtue of God's ordinance, is holy] is polluted.

71. Of husbands' lightness.

Contrary, is not only *adultery* whereof we have spoken before (see Treatise 2, Part 2, Section 5 and 8), but also wantonness, lightness, and uncleanness with his wife. For many intemperate and unchaste husbands, giving the reins to their headstrong lusts, manifest as much unseemliness and plain filthiness in their words, gestures, and actions [to say nothing of their thoughts which are not seen] to their wives, as others do to strumpets and harlots; which is a most shameless thing, and I am even ashamed to mention: but because it is mentioned, let such know, that they shall be accounted among such *whoremongers and adulterers as God will judge* (Heb 13:4).

72. Of husbands loving their wives more than themselves.

The *quantity* of Christ's love cannot be expressed: for the measure of it was above measure. *He gave himself* for his Church (Eph 5:25), and in that respect he calleth himself that *Good shepherd that gave his life for his sheep* (John 10:11). *Greater love than this hath no man* (John 15:13). What will not he do for his spouse, that gave his life for her?

This may seem to be too high a strain, and pitch of love for an husband to attain unto: a matter wherein he is to leave his pattern, and not to follow Christ: but yet *S. John* addeth even this extent to the love of our brethren: *We ought* [saith he] *to lay down our lives for the brethren* (1 John 3:16): therefore by just consequence for our wives. But that this extent be not stretched too far, and husbands cast into a pit of needless peril, two cautions must be noted,

1. That there be an absolute necessity, to bring us to this strait of parting with our life: which is, when the good we aim at in the behalf of our wives cannot any other way be effected, but by venturing our life. There was no other way to redeem the Church, but by the blood of Christ.

2. That the good we intend in this case to our wives be of greater value than our temporal life: as is the good of her soul, the

saving of it. Thus the Apostle saith, *I will most gladly be bestowed for your souls* (2 Cor 12:15). Which mind men must much more carry towards their wives. It was for our salvation that Christ gave himself.

73. Of husbands' unkindness.

Contrary is their unkindness that prefer every trifle of their own before the good of their wives: their profit, their pleasure, their promotion, clean draw away their hearts and affections from their wives. If any extraordinary charge must be laid out, or pains taken for their wives' good, little love will then appear: whereby it appears that there was no true and sound love settled in their hearts towards their wives. As gold and other like metals are tried by the fire, so love by afflictions and crosses.

74. Of combats in pretence of wives' honour.

Contrary in another extreme is the over-bold and over-heady pretended manhood of such husbands as upon every jealous surmise and slight report, are ready to make challenges of fight, and to enter into single combats and duels, on pretence of maintaining their wife's honour. This being no warrantable course of righting a wrong, no honour can redound to the wife thereby, but much dishonour and danger to the husband. If he prevail over his adversary and kill, he is made guilty of murder thereby, and so reproach and shame must needs come to himself, wife, and whole family: if he be overcome and slain, she may be reputed more guilty than she was before. And oft it falleth out that God in just judgment giveth over the challenger into his adversary's hand, because he hath undertaken so indirect a course.

75. Of husbands' constancy in love. (See Treatise 3, Section 6.)

VI. The continuance of Christ's love was without date: *Having loved his own, he loved them unto the end* (John 13:1). His love was constant [not by fits, now loving, then hating] and *everlasting* (Hosea 2:19) [never repenting thereof, never changing or altering his mind] no provocations, no transgressions could ever make him forget to love, and cease to do that good which he intended for his Church: note what he said to her even when she revolted from him, *Thou hast played the harlot with many lovers, yet return again to me* (Jer 3:1): and again, *My mercy shall not depart away* (2 Sam 7:15).

For his love resteth not on the desert of his Church, but on the unchangeableness of his own will. As this manifested Christ's love to be true sound love, so it made it profitable and beneficial to the Church, which, notwithstanding her many frailties, by virtue hereof is glorified.

This last branch must be added to all the former branches of an husband's love, or else they will be all in vain and to no purpose. This giveth the truest trial of sound love. Such was the love betwixt *David* and *Jonathan*: the soundest love that ever was, betwixt party and party. This bringeth the greatest glory to the party which loveth: and the greatest benefit to the party which is loved. That a man's love may thus remain firm and inviolable,

1. He must be sure to lay a good foundation; he must ground his love on God's ordinance: and love his wife in regard of the matrimonial bond which knitteth them together, and that near union which thence ariseth; and so it will last so long as that knot lasteth.

2. He must further support and strengthen it with an inviolable resolution to be changed and altered with no provocation, but rather to pass by all infirmities; endeavouring in love to redress them if possibly he can: if not, to bear with them.

76. Of husbands' variableness.

Contrary is their variableness, whose love is ready to turn as a weather cock with every blast of a contrary wind: now tender-hearted, then again hard-hearted, now smiling, then lowering: now giving this and that favour, then denying every thing, even such things as are needful.

Many whose love was as hot as fire while their wives were young, or their friends lived, or while they pleased them, when those occasions are taken away, prove in their love as cold as ice.

Again others by some continuance in doing good to their wives, think it a burden: and waxing weary clean leave off their former good course; which plainly sheweth that they never truly and entirely loved their wives.

By this pattern of Christ here propounded to husbands, we have on the one side a good direction to teach us how to love our wives, as hath been particularly declared; and on the other side, matter of humiliation, in that it sheweth us how far short we come of our bounden duty. Howsoever, wives may most complain of their burden, because it is a *Subjection* whereunto by nature we are all loath to yield: yet I am sure the heaviest burden is laid upon the husband's shoulders: and much more easy it is to perform the part of a good wife, than of a good husband (see Treatise 1, Section 10).

77. Of husbands loving their wives as themselves. (See Treatise 3, Section 59.)

To the example of Christ the Apostle annexeth the pattern of one's self, in these words: *So ought men to love their wives as their own bodies* (Eph 5:28).

Quest. Is not the former pattern sufficient? Is this latter more excellent, more perfect?

Ans. Christ's example is a full, complete, perfect, and every way sufficient pattern; far more excellent than this of a man's self: this is not annexed to add any thing to that, or in regard of the excellency hereof, but only in regard of our dullness, to make the point somewhat more plain and perspicuous. For this pattern is more sensible and better discerned. Every one knoweth how he loveth his own body: but few or none know how Christ loveth his Church. Besides, that example of Christ may seem too high and excellent for any to attain unto, even intimitable; therefore to shew that he requireth no more than a man may perform, if he will set himself with care and conscience to do his duty, he addeth the pattern of *one's self*; that which one doth to his body, if he will, he may do to his wife.

No direction can be taken from this latter pattern, but might be referred to the former, as most of the former [though in a far meaner manner] may be referred to the latter. For the love which a man beareth to himself is true, and entire without all dissimulation: the most dissembling wretch in the world [who in his dealings with other men doth nothing uprightly] nor will nor can dissemble with himself; though other men shall never know the depth of his heart, yet *the spirit which is in him, even himself, knoweth it* (1 Cor 2:11): so as this pattern also presseth truth and sincerity on husbands in their affection towards their wives: of all other they may not dissemble and deal doubly with them, but let them know the entireness of their affection towards them: and see they neither fawn on them, nor flatter them. They which pretend great love to their wives in shew only, offend against nature itself. As the foresaid love of a man's own self is for manner entire and true, so also free not forced: and for measure as great as possibly it can be, and or continuance, constant, and so like to Christ's love. But there are two points especially to be considered in the love of one's self which above others are most sensibly discerned in this pattern. 1. *Tenderness.* 2. *Cheerfulness.*

No other man will or can so tenderly handle a man's hand, arm, leg, or any other part of his body, as himself: he is very sensible of his own smart.

The metaphors which the Apostle useth in these words, *He nourisheth and cherisheth it*, do lively set forth this tenderness (Eph 5:29): for they are taken from fowls and birds which very charily, and tenderly hover over their young ones, covering them all over with their wings and feathers, but so bearing up their bodies as no weight lieth upon them.

Thus ought husbands with all tenderness, and mildness to deal with their wives, as we have before noted in many particulars: only this example of a man's self I thought good to set before husbands, as a lively pattern wherein they might behold a precedent without exception, going before them, and whereby they might receive excellent direction for the better performing of the particulars before noted.

Again, no friend, no parent, no other party will or can so willingly and cheerfully do any kindness for one, as a man for himself. This among other is one especial point which the law aimeth at, when it enjoins a man to *love his neighbour as himself*, namely, as willingly and readily as himself (Lev 19:18). Whatsoever a man doth for himself he doth much more cheerfully than for another. There needeth no other proof than experience. Let men take notice of their own mind and disposition when they do things for themselves, and this will be as clear as the light when the sun shineth forth at noon day.

Such an affection ought husbands to have to their wives: they ought more willingly and cheerfully to do any thing for their wives than for parents, children, friends or any other. Though this cheerfulness be an inward disposition of the heart, yet may it be manifested by a man's forwardness and readiness to do his wife good: when his wife shall no sooner desire a kindness, than he will be ready to grant it: as *Boaz* saith to *Ruth*, *I will do to thee all that thou requirest* (Ruth 3:11); yea, if by

any means he may know that this or that will be behoveful to her, though she desire it not, yet to effect it for her: which was the mind of the said *Boaz* to *Ruth*, as the history in many particulars sheweth.

Contrary is the disposition of those husbands who so grudgingly, repiningly, and discontentedly do those things which they do in their wives' behalf, as their wives had rather they were not done at all. The manner of doing them causeth more grief to tender hearted wives, than the things themselves can do good.

Hitherto of the manner which husbands ought to observe in performing their duties. The reasons to enforce the same remain to be handled.

78. Of Christ's example, a motive to provoke husbands to love their wives.

The forenamed examples of Christ and of *ourselves* as they are patterns for our direction, so general motives to provoke and stir us up the more to perform all the forenamed duties after the manner prescribed.

A greater, and stronger motive cannot be yielded than the example of Christ. Example in itself is of great force to provoke us to do any thing: especially if it be the example of some great one, a man of place and renown.

But who greater than Christ? What more worthy pattern? If [as was shewed (see Treatise 3, Section 74)] the example of the Church be of great force to move wives to be subject to their husbands, the example of Christ must needs be of much greater force to move husbands to love their wives. A great honour it is to be like unto Christ: and his example is a perfect pattern.

Two things there be which in Christ's example are especially to be noted to move husbands to love their wives.

1. That great inequality which is betwixt him and his spouse.
2. That small benefit which he reapeth by loving her.

For the better discerning of that *inequality*, the *greatness* of Christ on the one side, and the *meanness* of the Church on the other, are duly to be weighed.

Christ's *greatness* is in Scripture set forth by comparing him with *creatures*, and the *Creator*. Compared with creatures he is far more excellent than the most excellent, as the Apostle by many arguments proveth in the first chapter to *Hebrews*, that whole chapter is spent in proof of this point: And in another place it is said that *He is set far above all principality and power, and might, and dominion, and every name that is named not only in this world, but also in that which is to come* (Eph 1:21).

Compared with the Creator he is no whit inferiour to him, but *equal* (Phil 2:6): *Being the brightness of glory, and the express image of his person* (Heb 1:3): and that *Word* of whom it is said, *In the beginning was the word, and the word was with God, and the word was God: All things were made by him* (John 1:1,3), &c. So as he is the very *Creator* himself, *external, infinite, incomprehensible*. Thus is Christ's greatness inexplicable.

The meanness of the Church is as low on the other side: she is a creature, fashioned out of the earth, proceeding from the loins of corrupt *Adam*, not only finite, but in itself vile and base: The Prophet *Ezekiel* doth set her forth in her lively colours as she is in herself (Eze 16:1). Compared therefore unto Christ she is *nothing, less than nothing* (Isa 40:17). What equality, what proportion can there then be betwixt Christ and her.

But if man and woman be compared together, we shall find a near equality: and that both in the points of their humiliation, and also of their exaltation. In regard of the former, they are both of the same mould, of the same corrupt nature, subject to the same infirmities, at length brought to the same end. In regard of the latter the best and greatest privileges are common to both of them: they are both made after the same image, redeemed by the same price, partakers of the same grace, and heirs together of the same inheritance.

Quest. What is then the preferment of the male kind? What is the excellency of an husband?

Ans. Only outward and momentary. *Outward*, in the things of this world only: for *in Christ Jesus they are both one* (Gal 3:28). *Momentary*, for the time of this life only: for *in the resurrection they neither marry, nor are given in marriage, but are*

as the Angels of God in heaven (Matt 22:30): then all subjection of wives to husbands ceaseth.

To conclude this point, the inequality betwixt Christ and the Church, and equality betwixt man and wife being such as hath been declared; seeing Christ vouchsafeth to love his Church, ought not man thereby be moved to love his wife?

The other point concerning the *small benefit which Christ reapeth by his Church*, will yet further enforce the point: for illustration whereof we will note the great benefit which man reapeth by his wife.

The benefit which Christ reapeth from the Church is in one word *nothing* for Christ is in himself *All sufficient*: he neither needeth any thing, nor can receive any thing: *If thou be righteous, what givest thou to him? Or what receiveth he of thine hand?* (Job 35:7) Yet abundantly he bestoweth all manner of gifts, temporal, and spiritual, earthly and heavenly. It was not therefore his own good that he respected in loving the Church, but her good: for he being *God* became *man* (1 Tim 3:16); being *Lord of heaven and earth*, he took upon him *the form of a servant* (Phil 2:6,7); being *rich* he became *poor* (2 Cor 8:9): having the *Keys of hell and of death* (Rev 1:18), and being the *Lord of life* (Acts 3:15), he *humbled himself, and became obedient unto the death* (Phil 2:8): thus to shew love to his Church he left much for her sake, but received nothing of her.

But the benefit which man reapeth from a wife is very great: for *It was not good for a man to be alone* (Gen 2:18): in so much as *He who findeth a wife findeth a good thing* (Prov 18:22); and that in all the points of goodness, a profitable thing, a comfortable thing, a delightful thing. They know not the benefit of the married estate, who prefer single life before it, especially if the married estate be ordered by God's word, and man and wife careful to perform their own duty each to other (see Treatise 2, Part 1, Section 27).

To apply this point also, and to bring it to the conclusion: If Christ who can receive nothing from the Church notwithstanding love her, ought not men much more to love their wives, who many ways receive much good from them, and without whom they cannot well be?

This example of Christ is the rather to be noted, because it clean wipeth away all those false colours, and vain pretences which many allege as reasons, to shew that there is little reason they should love their wives: some of their pretences are these.

1. Their wives are of a far meaner rank than themselves; should they then perform duty to their inferiours? They commonly who marry their kitchen maids, or others far under their degree, allege this pretence.

Answ. I might reply, That marriage advanceth a wife to the degree of her husband: and that it was his own folly to marry one so mean: but for the purpose and point in hand, let any tell me, whether the supposed disparity betwixt them and their wives, be in any degree comparable to that which is betwixt Christ and the Church: yet Christ thinketh not much to do duties of love to his Church.

2. There is nothing in their wives worthy to be loved.

Answ. This very thing, that *such an one is thy wife*, is matter enough to make her worthy of love. But what was there in the Church to make her worthy of Christ's love? If it be said that she is endued with many excellent graces, which make her amiable in Christ's sight: I answer, that of herself she hath none of those graces, Christ hath bestowed them upon her, and so made her amiable: and thus oughtest thou to endeavour by using all good means thou canst to make thy wife answerable to thy love: but howsoever, to love her.

3. Their wives give just occasion to be hated by reason of their peevishness, stoutness, insolency, and other like intolerable vices.

Answ. No occasion may seem just to move an husband to hate his wife: nor any vice seem to him intolerable: with goodness he ought to overcome evil. If notorious sins seemed intolerable to Christ, or that he thought any occasion just to cause hatred, many that are of his Church would oft draw his hatred upon them: but Christ hateth never a member of his Church.

4. There is no hope that ever I shall receive any help of my wife, or benefit from her.

Answ. There is little charity in such as can conceive no hope: for *love hopeth all things* (1 Cor 13:7): but yet the case so

standeth with Christ. The Church is so utterly unable to help or benefit him, as he may justly say, he cannot hope to receive any thing from her. Christ loveth the Church for her own good, not for his; so ought husbands. Thus if Christ's example be well weighed, and observed of husbands, it will afford matter enough to remove every doubt or scruple raised to alienate their affections from their wives. Fitly therefore hath the Apostle set it before husbands, both to direct them how to love their wives, and also to move them so to do.

79. *Of a man's love to himself, a motive to provoke him to love his wife.*

To the same purpose that Christ's example tendeth, tendeth also the pattern of a man's self. Great is the affection that a man beareth to himself, to his own flesh, his own body: he never hateth, but ever loveth himself: no sore, no disease, no pain, no stench that the flesh bringeth to a man, can make him hate it: but rather all manner of infirmities do make him the more to pity, tender, and cherish it. This is a work of nature: the most heathenish, and barbarous, that ever were, do it. Now a wife being to a man as his body and his flesh [for *they two are one flesh*] and God having commanded men to *love their wives as their own bodies*, these conclusions will necessarily follow from this motive:

1. He that loveth not his wife is more carried with the instinct of nature, than with the express charge of the God of nature. Nature's instinct moveth him to love his body. But God's express charge moveth him not, to love his wife.

2. He that loveth not his wife is worse than an infidel and a barbarian, yea than a very beast: for all these love their own bodies, and their own flesh: but a wife [by God's ordinance] is as one's body, and his flesh.

3. He *that loveth his wife loveth himself*: the Apostle himself in these very words layeth down this conclusion: from whence by the rule of contraries this also will follow, *He that loveth not his wife, loveth not himself*.

4. He that loveth not his wife cannot but bring woe and mischief upon himself. For the damage and mischief which followeth on a wife, through any neglect of duty on her husband's part, followeth also on him: as the mischief which followeth on the body through any negligence of the head, lighteth also on the head.

If these be not motives sufficient to provoke an husband to love his wife, I know not what can be sufficient.

The Fifth Treatise

Duties of Children

1. *Of the general heads of children's duties.*

Ephesians 6:1-3. *Children obey your Parents in the Lord: for this is right. Honour thy father and mother* [which is the first commandment with promise]. *That it may be well with thee: and thou mayest live long on the earth.*

The second couple in a family are *Parents, Children*.

In laying down their duties, the Apostle beginneth with children: his direction, and instigation unto them is laid down in the three first verses of the sixth chapter: wherein

1. He declareth their *duty*.

2. He addeth *reasons* to enforce the same.

In laying down their duty he noteth three points.

1. *Wherein* it consisteth, [*obey, honour*].
2. *To whom* it is to be performed [*your parents*].
3. *After what manner* it is to be done [*in the Lord*].

The reasons used by the Apostle are four.

1. The *place* of parents [*in the Lord*].
2. The *equity* of the thing [*this is right*].
3. The *charge* of God [*honour thy father, &c.*].
4. The *reward* promised [*that it may go well, &c.*].

Under this word [*obey*] which the Apostle useth, and that word [*honour*] which the Law useth, are all those duties comprised, which any where throughout the whole Scripture are enjoined to children.

We will therefore set them down in some order, and handle them distinctly one after another.

1. The *Fountain* of children's duties is to be searched out.
2. The *Streams* that flow from thence are to be observed.

The *Fountain* is an inward disposition of the heart compounded of *love* and *fear*.

The *Streams* issuing from thence extend unto parents, both while they are *living*, and also when they are *dead*.

Children's duties which are to be performed to their parents while they live, have respect to their *Authority, Necessity*.

The *Authority* of parents requireth of children *Reverence, Obedience*.

Their *Necessity* requireth *Recompence*.

The duties which children owe to their parents deceased, respect their *Body, Credit*.

Their *Body* with decency must be *buried*.

Their *Credit* with honour must be *maintained*.

2. Of children's love to their parents.

I make the fountain of children's duties to be a mixed and compound disposition, in respect of that *authority and affection* which is mixed together in parents. The *authority* of parents requireth *fear* in children: and their *affection, love*. So entire and so ardent is parents' *affection* towards their children, as it would make children too bold and insolent if there were not *authority* mixed therewith to work *fear*: and so supreme and absolute is their *authority* over them, as it would make children like slaves to dread their parents, if a fatherly *affection* were not tempered therewith to breed *love*. But both these joined together make a very good composition: *love* like sugar sweeteneth *fear*, and *fear* like salt seasoneth *love*: and thus, to join them both together, it is a *loving-fear*, or a *fearing-love*, which is the ground of children's duties.

Where Christ forbiddeth an excessive love in children to their parents (Matt 10:37), he implieth that parents are a fit object for children to love [so as their love be well moderated:] yea he implieth that it is an affection even by nature ingrafted in children to love their parents. *Joseph* is commended unto children as a worthy pattern in loving his father, and that from his

youth till the decease of his father: in testimony whereof in his younger years he brought to his father the *evil report of his brethren* (Gen 37:2), whereby he incurred their envy and hatred, which he would never have done, if he had not loved his father: and having been long absent from his father, when by God's providence there was offered an occasion for him to meet with his brethren, one of his first questions to them was about their father (Gen 43:7): and hearing that he was living, he thought it not enough to send him food for his need, but must also needs see his face, and have him dwell with him (Gen 45:9): and while his father was in the way he went out to meet him, and at first sight fell on his neck, and wept a good while [a token of great affection] (Gen 46:29).

That love which naturally parents bear to their children, ought in equity to breed in children a love to their parents. For love deserveth love: and most unworthy are they to be loved, who cannot love again. The love of parents above all others is to be answered with love on children's part to the uttermost of their power, because it is free, great, and constant.

Besides, there is a necessity of love in children to their parents, lest for want thereof, their subjection [which of all others ought to be most free] should turn into slavish servitude.

This ought children the rather to labour after, because by nature they are nothing so prone to love their parents, as their parents are to love them. Love is weighty, and, as weighty things, it descendeth. Children therefore with conscience of duty must labour to make supply of this defect, and help nature by grace. I deny not but naturally there is in children a greater love to their parents, than to others: yet in comparison of the heat of parents' love to them, their love to their parents is but cold. Wherefore as the heart of the sun shining much and long on a stone wall, draweth a reflection of heat from that wall: so the hot beams of parents' love, which with fervency and constancy is cast on children, ought to provoke and stir up children to send forth a reflection of love on their parents.

Two extremes are contrary to this affection of love.

One is *want of natural affection*, which is a vice most odious and abominable in all, but most of all in children. The Apostle reckoneth this among the most heinous vices that be (Rom 1:30; 2 Tim 3:3).

The other is hatred and despite of parents: a vice more than monstrous, and unnatural. From thence cometh mocking and cursing of parents, whereof we shall afterwards hear.

3. Of a child's fear of his parent.

To the forenamed duty of love, must *fear* be added, which is a child's *awful respect of his parent*.

This *awful respect* ariseth from an honourable esteem which a child in his judgment and opinion hath of his parent, as he is his parent; and from it proceedeth on the one side, a desire and endeavour in all things to please the parent, and on the other side a loathness to offend him.

In this respect the fear of a *child* is opposed to the fear of a *slave*. For a child's fear being mixed with love, hath respect to the *offence* which a parent may take; but a slave's fear, which is ordinarily mixed with hatred, hath respect to nothing but the *punishment* which his master may inflict upon him. The forenamed fear is so proper to children, as that awful respect which the Saints bear to God, is called a *filial* or *child-like fear* (see Treatise 1, Section 4).

This *fear* in a child is an especial branch of that *honour* which the Law requireth of children to their parents (Exo 20:12): and it is in express terms enjoined to children by the Law (Lev 19:3). That phrase which God useth of *Miriam* [*If her father had but spit in her face, should she not be ashamed seven days?*] (Num 12:14) sheweth that there ought to be such a fear of the parent in a child's heart, as should work shame in it when the parent is offended.

A worthy pattern we have hereof in *Jacob*, who was loath to gain the blessing with offence of his father (Gen 27:12).

This *fear* keepeth *love* in compass: and restraineth a child from overmuch sauciness, and malipartness.

And it is a cause of a child's reverend and dutiful carriage to his parent. For as the heart is affected the carriage will be ordered.

Contrary hereunto is that *light*, or [which is more abominable] that *base* and *vile* esteem of parents, which is in the heart of many children: especially if parents be poor, of low degree, unlearned, ignorant, or subject to any infirmities. It cannot be but that *Ham* had too light (Gen 9:22), if not a base esteem of his father, when he derided him. A true filial fear would have restrained him from that extreme.

Wherefore to breed and cherish this fear, and to prevent, or redress the contrary extreme, let children well inform themselves of their parents' place and authority, how they are in God's stead, and a means under God of their children's being: children have received their very substance from the substance of their parents. In which respect though they should seem contemptible to others, yet not to their children.

Thus much of a child's inward disposition towards his parent. The manifestation thereof must be by his outward carriage: and that in two things; *Reverence*, and *Obedience*: both which respect a parent's authority.

4. Of a child's reverence in refraining speech before his parent, and in hearkening to his parent.

The outward *reverence* which children owe to their parents consisteth partly in their *speech*, partly in their carriage.

Their speech both *to* and *of* their parents must savour of reverence.

TO their parents in presence.

OF their parents in absence.

In presence, by *refraining*, *well framing* their speech.

For refraining speech two virtues are requisite - *Silence*, *Patience*.

Silence in *forbearing* to speak, *breaking* of speech. Patience in hearkening to their parents.

The two branches of silence, in *forbearing* to speak [especially when parents are speaking, or till parents give leave to their children to speak,] and in breaking off speech, when parents come into the place where children are speaking, are tokens of great reverence. Thus children testify that there are some in place whom they must respect and honour. *Job* doth thus set forth the respect which Princes and others did bear to him in his prosperity, *The Princes* [saith he] *refrained talking, and laid their hand upon their mouth, the Nobles held their peace, &c.* (Job 29:9,10) Namely, while he was in presence, or while he spake. The like may be said of children's patience in enduring their parents' speech; which *Job* also noteth in these words, *Unto me men gave ear, and waited, and kept silence* (Job 29:21). Though parents in their speech seem to be long and tedious, yet must children endure it.

And it is very needful that patience be added to silence, because many parents in tender love of their children, and earnest desire of their good, think they can never speak enough in instructing and admonishing them. The many exhortations given in Scripture unto children to *hear, hearken, give ear, give heed, mark, and observe* the words of their parents (Gen 49:2; Prov 1:8; 4:1; 7:1), do imply the forenamed *silence* and *patience* (James 1:19): for they who ought to be *swift to hear* must be *slow to speak*. I deny not but much more is intended under those phrases, namely, *obedience*: yet must *these* also be presupposed: for he that will not in silence patiently hearken to his parents while they speak, will much less obey what they say.

Contrary to silence is sauciness [as we speak] and overmuch boldness in children, when, without due respect of their parents' presence, they will be prating of this thing or that thing: insomuch as if strangers should come into the room where such children are, they would not think that their parents were in presence; or if they knew it, they might well think that such children bear little respect to their parents.

Contrary to patience in hearing, is fretting and murmuring against parents [if at least their speech be any whit long] and slinging or slinking away before they have done. These faults are the greater, if children by their loquacity, or impatience hinder or interrupt their parents' speech when they are giving any admonition or instruction: for thus they shew both too light a respect of their parents: and also too little regard of the means of their own good.

5. Of a child's reverend framing his speech to his parent.

A child's reverence in well framing his speech to his parents may many ways be manifested, as

1. By giving unto them reverend and honourable titles. No title can be more honourable than that which is most proper and usual, *Father* to the one parent, and *Mother* to the other. God taketh the title *Father* unto himself, as a title of great dignity (Jer 31:9; Gal 4:6).

Object. This title is so proper to God, as *We are to call none on earth Father* (Matt 23:9).

Answ. This is not simply to be taken of the title itself, but of the mind of him that giveth or affecteth that title.

It if be affected or given to obscure God's *Fatherhood* or to make a man a *Father* of himself without dependence on God, or reference to him, who is properly the father of all, it is an impious and sacrilegious title. But otherwise lawful and warrantable.

In Scripture the title *Father* is given to all degrees of dignities among men, as to *Kings* (1 Sam 24:12), *Captains*, and other *chief Governours* (2 Kings 5:13), to *Priests* (Judg 18:19), *Prophets* (2 Kings 6:21), *Apostles* (1 Cor 4:15), and other *Ministers* (1 Tim 5:1). In the fifth commandment all superiours are comprized under it, therefore *Father* is a title of great honour: and by the rule of relation *Mother* is a title of as great honour to the female sex. Religious and dutiful children have ever used to give these titles to their parents. *My Father* saith *Isaac* to *Abraham* (Gen 22:7), *Jacob* to *Isaac* (Gen 27:18), *My Mother*, saith *Solomon* to *Bathsheba* (1 Kings 2:20). I find also the title of *Sir* or *Lord* used (Matt 21:30): a title of honour.

2. By using *few words* before their parents: and those few not without just occasion, being first spoken to by their parents, or having leave of them, or making known to them some needful matter: at least not against their parents' liking, so as their parents should be offended thereby. And if they observe their parents to be unwilling to hear them speak any more of such and such a matter, then ought they to lay their hands upon their mouths, as *Isaac* (Gen 22:7) and *Jacob* (Gen 27:12). This is a token of great respect.

3. By meek and humble speeches. Such was the speech of *Jonathan* the natural son of *Saul* (1 Sam 19:4), and of *David* his son in law (1 Sam 24:10), wherewith he was much contented, and his wrath pacified.

4. By observing a fit opportunity: as when parents are not seriously busied, or in company, or in passion. When *Saul* was out of passion (1 Sam 19:6), how well did he accept *Jonathan's* Apology for *David*? but in his passion (1 Sam 20:30), how ill did he take it? This wise observing of fit opportunity sheweth great reverence.

5. By a present, ready, willing, pleasing answer, when by their parents they shall be spoken unto. *Eli* was as a father to *Samuel*: therefore when *Samuel* thought that *Eli* called him, he presently and readily answered, *Here am I* (1 Sam 3:4,6): and when *Eli* was instant to know what the Lord had said to him, *Samuel told him every whit, and held nothing from him* (1 Sam 3:18). The younger son [noted in the parable] shewed a son-like reverence in giving a willing and ready answer to his father (Matt 21:30), though he failed in his obedience, by not performing what he promised.

6. Of the vices in children contrary to the forenamed reverence in speech.

Contrary to those branches of reverence in speech are,

1. *Pride*: when children scorn to give the title of *Father*, or *Mother*, to their parents. This is the mind of many who have gotten more wealth or honour, than ever their parents had. In public especially such children most refuse to give those titles. *Solomon* was not so minded. He being a great King, sitting upon his throne, in sight and hearing of all his people that were about him, called *Bathsheba Mother* (1 Kings 2:20).

If children had that regard to the honour of their parents which they should, they being themselves in places of honour and dignity, would the rather openly call their parents *Father* and *Mother*, that they might be known to be the father and mother of so eminent a person.

2. *Loquacity*, and too much importunity, or rather impudence in speech, when children having to do with their parents, can never have done [as we speak] but must needs urge matters to the very uttermost. Many parents are oft much provoked

hereby. It skilleth not that the child have the right, especially in a matter of no great consequence. For reverence sake the child must forbear, at least for a time. And if the matter of difference be weighty, as in points of religion, the child must either take some other opportunity of better informing his parent, or else get some other wise friend to do it.

3. *Stoutness*, when children answer their parents as if they were their equals: giving word for word. It doth as ill become children to *answer again*, as servants [to whom the Apostle hath expressly forbidden it (Titus 2:9)]. Both law and nature forbiddeth children to be provoked hereunto, by any thing that their parents say or do; how great then is their fault who give scornful and stout words to their parents when they are no way provoked, as the *elder son* noted in the parable, and the *elder brother* of the prodigal child?

4. *Indiscretion*, when children have no respect to any time, business, or temper, of their parents in speaking to them (Matt 21:29; Luke 15:29), and so, much provoke them. It is laid down as a caveat to parents, that they *provoke not their children to wrath*. How much more must children observe that caveat? (Eph 6:4)

5. *Stubbornness*, when children pout, lower, swell, and give no answer at all to their parents. This is too common a fault in children, and many parents are much offended and grieved thereat. We heard before a child-like silence which was very commendable, and a token of great reverence (see Section 4); but this is worthy of much blame, a token of great undutifulness; and as carefully to be avoided, as that to be practised.

7. Of children's reverend speeches of their parents.

So true and entire ought that reverend respect to be which children bear to their parents, as their speech not only *to them* before their faces, but also *of them* behind their backs, must be so framed both for matter and manner, when they have any occasion to fall into speech of their parents, as all that hear them may note them to bear a reverend respect to their parents.

As a general direction for the better performing of this duty, let children speak nothing of their parents that they would be loath should come to their parents' ear. More particularly, let them speak of those things which most tend to their commendation, that so [as Christ said of his father] they may honour their parents (John 8:49): Let other things be buried in silence so much as in them lieth. And if others speak of matters disgraceful to their parents, let them interpret in the better sense things doubtful, and, so far as they may, extenuate things evident, and sharply reprove them that slander their parents. This is that *blessing* which children owe to their parents, for neglecting whereof the wise-man taxeth children saying, *There is a generation that doth not bless their mother* (Prov 30:11).

Contrary to that kind of blessing is discovering of parents' infirmities, noted in cursed *Ham* (Gen 9:22), and broaching untruths of them, noted in impious *Absalom* (2 Sam 15:3), and mocking and cursing them expressly condemned (Prov 30:11). The reward whereof is by God's law death (Lev 20:9): yea a shameful and ignominious death, for the *ravens of the valley shall pluck out his eyes, and the young eagles shall eat it* (Prov 30:17): which phrase setteth forth the end of a notorious malefactor that is hanged (Gen 40:19).

8. Of a child's reverend carriage to his parent.

As the speech, so the carriage of children towards their parents must be seasoned with reverence: for

1. *This* is a fruit, and proof of filial fear as well as that.
2. Of the two, this is the surer evidence: for actions are better signs of the disposition of the heart than words.
3. Fair words joined with contrary deeds, cannot but be accounted merely complemental and hypocritical.
4. Where there is a contrariety betwixt words and deeds, the one will be a witness against the other, and that man's condemnation the greater.

Wherefore let all reverence be manifested in children's behaviour to their parents, and that in these and such like instances.

1. If a parent be coming to a child, and the child observe it, let him haste to meet his parent: so did *Joseph* to his father (Gen 46:29), and *Solomon* to his mother (1 Kings 2:19). Which two examples are the rather to be noted, because both were in

eminent place: one a great Governour, the other a King.

2. Let such child-like obeisance be performed as becometh the age and sex, either in going to, remaining before, or going from a parent: as uncovering the head, bending the knee, bowing the body, standing up, with the like. The two forenamed eminent persons, *Joseph* (Gen 48:12) and *Solomon* (1 Kings 2:19), bowed, the one to his father, the other to his mother.

3. Let the countenance, and gesture of the body be so soberly and modestly ordered in the presence of the parent, as may argue due respect.

4. Let the upper place, and hand be given to parents: and if occasionally a child be above his parent, let him come below him. For that is a manifest token of inferiority and subjection. What maketh men to strive for the upper hand, but because they would be accounted better than those with whom they strive? But that ought not to be the mind of children to their parents.

Quest. What if children be in estate more wealthy, or honourable than their parents, are they then to give the hand to them?

Answ. No honour is comparable to the dignity of fatherhood: it giveth a greater eminency to the parent over his child, than any other honour can to the child over his parent. I grant that a child may by some office, and outward dignity be so advanced above his father, as other men may more honour and reverence the child, and give the upper place to him: and for order sake the child may and ought to take it in company: but when they are alone, the child must rather reverence the father.

5. According to the custom of the time and place wherein they live, let children ask their parents' blessing.

9. Of children's asking their parents' blessing, whether it be lawful or no.

Some doubt is made of this duty both in regard of the thing itself, and also of the gesture of kneeling used in the performance thereof: I will therefore distinctly prove both.

For the thing, it is noted of *Jacob* that he carried savory meat to his father, that *he might bless him* (Gen 27:19): and of *Joseph*, that he went to his father, and carried his two sons with him, that his father might *bless* both him and them (Gen 48:1): for which end the twelve sons of *Jacob* assembled to their father (Gen 49:1).

Object. These were extraordinary examples: the Patriarchs were indued with the spirit of prophesy, whereby they revealed to their children what their estate should be in the times to come: for knowledge whereof their children came to them.

1. *Answ.* Their blessings were more than predictions of things to come: they were confirmations and assurances to the children that God would indeed perform that blessing which their parents had pronounced. For they sustained a double person: the person of a Prophet, and of a father; as Prophets they foretold things to come: as fathers they obtained the blessings pronounced, and an assurance thereof to their children, and that by faith and prayer (Heb 11:20).

2. *Answ.* Though all parents cannot with such an extraordinary spirit assure unto their children any distinct particular blessing, yet the faithful prayer of parents is an especial, and ordinary means to obtain a blessing from God upon their children: and that because of God's promise which extends itself not only to faithful parents, but also to their seed (Gen 17:7; Acts 2:39). Wherefore as the children of the Patriarchs came to their fathers to be assured of some extraordinary blessing, so may other children go to their parents as a means to obtain an ordinary blessing. It is noted of *Elias* that by an extraordinary spirit in prayer he obtained extraordinary matters (James 5:17): Yet the Apostle setteth forth that example to all Christians as a motive to stir them up in faith to pray for ordinary blessings. But for further clearing of this point, note the phrase used in the fifth commandment as a reason to move children to honour their parents: this it is word for word, *That they may prolong thy days*, &c. How can parents prolong their children's days, but by begging that blessing of God? (See Treatise 6, Section 4) The prayers then of parents are a great blessing to children (Prov 15:8), and children ought to seek this blessing of their parents.

Object. If parents be wicked, their prayer is abomination: what blessing then can children look for from wicked parents?

Answ. Though God hear not wicked parents in love and goodness to themselves, yet for the good of their children he may and will hear them: and that the rather to maintain a reverend respect of parents in the heart of their children. For asking a

blessing is an acknowledgement of superiority and authority, according to that of the Apostle, *The less is blessed of the greater* (Heb 7:7).

Concerning the gesture of kneeling, it is answerable to the gesture which of old was used by God's people in like case: of *Joseph* it is said that *he bowed down himself with his face to the earth* (Gen 48:12).

Object. Kneeling is a gesture proper to God's worship.

Answ. It is not so proper, but that it may be used in civil cases: else Christ would have reproved the young man for *kneeling* before him as well as for calling him *good* (Mark 10:17): for he conceived Christ to be but a mere man, and the worship he did him was but civil.

It is not simply the gesture, but the occasion of the gesture, the mind of him that performeth it, and the end why he performeth it that maketh it divine, or civil. *Cornelius* fell down before *Peter* with conceit of some divine excellency in him, and was not allowed: his manner of worshipping was divine. The jailer fell down before *Paul* and *Silas* in acknowledgement of some outward eminency in them, and was not reproved: his manner of worshipping was merely civil. The same gesture may be performed to different persons with a different respect. A child may kneel to his parent, and to the King. Yet it followeth not that he maketh his parent a King. Neither will it follow that by kneeling to his parent he maketh him a God, because men kneel to God.

10. Of the vices contrary to children's reverend gesture towards their parents.

Contrary to the forenamed branches of reverend gesture, are, 1. *Rudeness* and *unmannerliness*, when children know not how to put difference betwixt their parents and strangers, but can suffer their parents to come to them, and they abide in their place and not stir to meet them.

2. *Disdainful stateliness*, when they think much to stand bare-headed any while in their parents' presence. It falleth out many times, that when parents and children are together before their better, *they* will shew more reverence than *these*: for the father will stand, and be uncovered, when the son sitteth down and puts on his hat, upon conceit that his father doth more reverence than is meet: but if it were so, yet the son for the father's sake should stoop somewhat the lower.

3. *Wantonness* and *boldness*, when children are over-familiar with their parents: toying and giggling upon every light occasion. This kind of carriage cannot but much tend to the disgrace and dishonour of parents. For what can they who behold it think, but that such children have been too much cockered and ill nurtured?

4. *Ambition*, when children are so ambitiously desirous of place, especially in company, as rather than be under some whom they suppose to be at least their equals, they will be above their parents. This oft falleth out, when parents being of a lowly mind, give place to such as their children, being of a lofty mind, think meaner than themselves. Now rather than they will be under their inferiours [as they suppose] they will be above their parents. A point of great insolency. Such ought to be the respect of a child to his parent, as he should debase himself below those that are his inferiours, rather than exalt himself above his parent. As with other men, for peace sake, in many cases, a man must depart from his rights: so especially with his parent, in case of superiority. Would not every one that knows what honour a child owes to a father, condemn that child's ambition, that should so stand upon the place and hand, as to take them of his parent?

5. An *over-nice* and erroneous *opinion* of those, who think it unmeet for any child to ask their parents' blessing. Their own conceit more swayeth them, than the continual approved practise of God's people in all ages: not unlike him whom *Solomon* saith to be *wiser in his own conceit, than seven men that can render a reason* (Prov 26:16). Others, though they do not so generally disavow this duty, yet they think it meet only for young children: not considering of what years, stature, and state, *Joseph* was, when he performed it.

As for those, who think it not unlawful, yet carelessly neglect it, they little consider the benefit of a parent's blessing. Profane *Esau* shall another day rise up in judgment against them. He begged and begged again and again, and that with a loud cry and salt tears, a blessing of his father (Gen 27:34; Heb 12:17).

Thus much of children's reverence. Their obedience followeth.

11. *Of children's obedience.*

The obedience of children doth most prove the authority of parents, and is the surest evidence of the honour a child giveth to his parents: therefore is it by name in the text expressed, and all other duties are comprised under it (Eph 6:1; Col 3:20). Reverence without obedience is a mere mockage, nothing at all acceptable. Of the two, a child were better fail in the former: instance the parable of the two sons (Matt 21:31). Reverence in comparison of obedience is but a complemental honour. Obedience is a true real honour; the surest trial of a dutiful child. Obedience is a duty so proper to children, as the Apostle applieth it to them as a proper attribute, saying, *as obedient children fashion not*, &c. (1 Peter 1:14). The example of Christ is herein set before us as a pattern: *he was subject to his parents* (Luke 2:51) *Solomon* counteth the neglect thereof a *despising* of a parent (Prov 23:22).

Contrary is disobedience and rebellion: the greatest impeachment of parents' authority that can be. For to what end is authority over those who resist it, and rebel against it? The Apostle reckoneth disobedient children among the lowliest persons that be (2 Tim 3:2): and setteth forth their disobedience by a metaphor taken from untamed, head-strong beasts, that will not be brought under the yoke (Titus 1:6): the word therefore is not unfitly translated *unruly*: and it is somewhat answerable to an Hebrew phrase given to disobedient children, viz. *sons of Belial* (Deut 13:13), which is according to the notation as much as *sons without profit*; or, as some will have it, *sons without yoke*, that is, such children, as refusing to be in subjection unto parents, are no way profitable, but work much mischief, and cause great grief. The punishment which by God's law was appointed to disobedient and rebellious children, was a public shameful death (Deut 21:18).

12. *Of children's forbearing to do things without consent of parents.*

That children may the better know their duty in this respect, I will distinctly set forth, both the *parts*, and also the *extent* of a child's obedience:

1. Wherein it consisteth.
2. How far it extendeth.

The general *parts* wherein it consisteth are two:

1. A *forbearance* from doing things without consent of parents.
2. A *performance* of such things as parents will have done.

The former of these is a duty whereunto children are most bound while they are under their parents' government (Num 30:16). For that time the consent of parents is not only meet, but necessary: and that for these reasons.

1. Children are as the goods of their parents, wholly in their power, to be ordered and disposed by them. On this ground Satan having all that *Job* had put into his hand, took liberty over his children as well as over his goods and chattel (Job 1:12,19).
2. Children while they be under government, [even the eldest that are heirs] differ nothing from servants (Gal 4:1).
3. By God's law given to the Jews, parents had power to sell their children (Exo 21:7).
4. Parents had power to disannul such things as children had done. Instance the case of a vow made to God, which was one of the most inviolable things that one could do (Num 30:4).

Contrary is the opinion and practise of many, who hold parents' consent at the most but a matter of conveniency: that it is good, if children will, to have their parents' consent: if they have it not, the matter is not great: their contracts or other things which they do, are as firm, and good, without, as with their consents. If this were so, wherein is the authority of a parent more than of a wise experienced friend? It is meet, and good to have such an one's consent.

But that the power of parents, and duty of children in this point, may the better be seen, I will exemplify it in five particular cases. 1. Entering into a calling. 2. Making marriage. 3. Disposing of goods. 4. Ordering apparel. 5. Making vows.

13. Of consent of parents for children's entering into a calling.

I. That children ought to have the consent of their parents in making choice of their calling, and not place themselves as they please, is evident by the approved practise of the Saints recorded in God's word. *Jacob* was sent by his parents to *Laban* to be educated under him (Gen 28:2). *David* was appointed by his father to keep sheep (1 Sam 16:11,19): when *Saul* was desirous to have *David* attend upon him, he sent to *Jesse*, *David's* father, for him. In that *Jesse* was so careful to send provision to his three eldest sons that followed *Saul* to the war (1 Sam 17:17), we may well think, that they went to the war with his consent. It is noted of *Jonadab*, that he appointed his sons to dwell in tents (Jer 35:7), and that accordingly they did so, and are commended and rewarded for this their obedience. It is collected both by ancient and later Divines, that our Lord Jesus Christ in his younger years, before he began to exercise his public ministry, occupied himself in his father's trade: and that this was one thing wherein he manifested his subjection to his parents. This collection is made by comparing Luke 2:51 [where his subjection is noted] with Mark 6:3 and Matthew 13:55 where he is called the *Carpenter* and *the Carpenter's son*.

Equity requireth that parents should have an hand in placing forth their children, because they brought them forth into the world, and brought them up with much care, pains, and charge, while they were young, and till they were fit for a calling.

Besides, God hath laid it as a charge upon parents, that they should see their children well trained up: great reason therefore that parents' consent be had in setting forth children to a calling.

14. Of the unlawfulness of children's entering into religious orders without consent of parents.

Contrary is the opinion of Papists, who say, that children may enter into religious orders, not only without consent, but also against the mind and good like of their parents. Whereby they do not only patronize apparent disobedience in children, against the express word of God; but also disable children from helping their parents in case of necessity: for both which Christ rebuked the Scribes and Pharisees in a like case.

Object. Papists do grant that if parents be in such necessity, as they cannot live without their children's help, their children may not by entering into any religious order forsake their parents. For they are bound by the Law of God to succour their parents.

Answ. 1. This caution hath been extorted from them by evidence of argument taken from God's Word, and pressed by their adversaries.

2. It toucheth not the principal argument taken from God's precept, which they make of none effect by this their tradition.

3. Though parents be not at that present, when children first enter into their religious order, in such extreme need, yet they may be afterwards. But after that children are once entered, they hold it utterly unlawful that children for any necessity of the parent, should attend upon them for their succour.

Object. Children being entered into religious orders may help them, as becometh religious persons, by their prayers to God.

Answ. 1. This is jump the Pharisees Corban, whereof Christ maketh mention (Mark 7:11), and whereby he notably discovereth the hypocrisy of the Pharisees, who made pretence of religion, an hindrance to that obedience which God required of children.

2. To pray for that which a man endeavoureth not to do, when he may do it, is a plain mocking of God.

The arguments which they allege for confirmation of their erroneous opinion, are taken from extraordinary examples, or from mystical resemblances, as

1. *Abraham's* leaving his father's house (Gen 12:1).

2. *Levi's* speech of his father and mother, who said, *I have not seen him* (Deut 33:9).

3. The advice given to the royal Queen, *Forget thy father's house* (Psa 45:10).

4. The trial of our love of Christ by loving him more than father or mother (Matt 10:37).

5. Christ's forbidding one that followed him to go and bury his father (Luke 9:60).

Answ. 1. For *Abraham's* example, 1. It cannot be proved that he left his father's house without the consent of his father (Gen 12:1). 2. He was then married, and so of another house. 3. He had an express particular charge of God to leave his father's house, even as he had to sacrifice his son. Except the like charge can be shewed, his example maketh nothing to the purpose.

2. For *Levi's* speech, 1. It was noted by *Moses* in relation to a particular zealous fact of the *Levites* (Exo 32:26) in executing the vengeance of the Lord, and so to be reckoned among such extraordinary things as are not exemplary. 2. That which moved the Levites to make no difference betwixt their parents and others, was the Lord's cause: their parents and kindred as well as others had notoriously sinned against God, and in that respect the Levites took no notice of them. But they are not such parents which Papists teach children to forsake, but any parents.

Now what consequence is this; Some children have been God's Ministers in executing just punishment on their wicked parents, therefore children may enter into such places as shall exempt them from helping any parents, though well deserving? 3. The Levites had an express charge for that which they did (Exo 32:27): but that which Papists infer from their example doth make the commandment of God of none effect (Matt 15:10).

3. For the advice to the Queen (Psa 45:13), 1. It is mystically to be taken. 2. If it should be literally taken, it is to be taken as given to her after marriage, when she was out of her parents' government. 3. It hath relation to the law of marriage (Gen 2:24), and implieth not a simple forsaking of parents, but a preferring of a husband before them.

4. For the loving of father and mother more than Christ, 1. It doth not necessarily imply a forsaking of our parents: for we may love Christ more than them, and yet perform duty to them. 2. If they be forsaken, it must be in opposition to Christ, that either Christ or they must be forsaken, in that if we cleave to them they will draw us from Christ.

5. For Christ's forbidding one that followed him to go and bury his father: 1. It was because of an extraordinary calling which he had. 2. It is set down as a pattern to Ministers, to shew that they should especially attend upon their proper function, and leave other secular matters to be performed by such as can perform them well enough. To apply it to children's forsaking of parents, is to pervert the sense of it.

Thus we see to how little purpose the forenamed arguments are alleged to prove that erroneous opinion of children's entering into religious orders without their parents' consent. I might further shew how irreligious their pretended religious orders be, and so shew how unlawful it is to enter into them, even with consent of parents: but that maketh nothing to the point in hand.

15. *Of the unlawfulness of children's travelling, and bending themselves prentises without consent of parents.*

Contrary also to the forenamed part of children's obedience, is the practice of such children as travel, and seek their fortunes [as they speak] without consent of parents, like the *Prodigal child* (Luke 15:12), if not worse: for it is likely that he forced from his father a general consent, in that he obtained of him his portion of goods. These usually bring great grief to their parents, and many times make them fear more than is cause, as old *Jacob* feared, when he knew not what was become of his son (Gen 37:35).

Among those aberrations may be reckoned a custom in this land more usual than lawful, for children to bind themselves prentises without consent of parents: to which fault they who take indentures of such children, or otherwise covenant with them without knowledge of their parents' consent, make themselves accessory.

16. *Of parents' consent to the marriage of their children.*

II. That children ought to have their parents' consent unto their marriage is without all question evident. For

1. God himself hath given us herein a pattern: He first brought the woman to the man (Gen 2:22) whereby he would shew that he who gave a being to the woman, had a right to dispose her in marriage: which right parents now have: for from them

under God, children receive their being. In this case parents stand in God's room, and are as it were God's hand to join their children in marriage.

2. God hath given express laws concerning this point. To omit that general moral law, *Honour thy father and thy mother* [which, as it is the ground of all other duties appertaining to children, so of this also] the authority and charge which God by his Law (Deut 7:3) hath laid upon parents, *to give their daughters to husbands, and to take wives for their sons*, hath the force of a law to bind children from taking wives or husbands, without or against their parents' consent. This law was not proper to the Jews only; but as a branch of the moral law it is pressed upon Christians (1 Cor 7:36,37).

To this may be added the judicial law [if it be to be accounted merely judicial] of a parent's power in giving his daughter, or refusing to give her in marriage to him that had deflowered her (Exo 22:17).

3. Answerable to the Law hath been the practice of God's Saints recorded and approved in Scripture. *Isaac* married the wife which his father provided (Gen 24:67). *Jacob* both obeyed his father in going to *Laban's* house for a wife (Gen 28:2) and also when he came to *Laban* asked his daughter of him (Gen 29:18, &c.).

Though *Samson* saw a daughter of the Philistines which pleased him well, yet would he not marry her before he had his parents' consent (Judg 14:2).

4. These words of *Tamar* (2 Sam 13:13) *Speak unto the King* [who was her father,] *for he will not withhold thee from me*, shew that children were not wont to be married without consent of parents: Which is further confirmed by this oath of the Israelites, *There shall not any of us give his daughter unto Benjamin to wife* (Judg 21:1).

5. The ancient fathers of the Church have in their ages taught children this duty, and pronounced marriages of children without consent of parents, to be unlawful.

6. The very heathen have observed the equity hereof. Though *Shechem* loved *Dinah*, and had deflowered her, yet would he not marry her without the consent of his and her father, (Gen 34:3). *Ishmael* had learned as much either by the instruction he had received out of *Abraham's* house, or else by the light of nature: for he stood to the choice which his mother made for him (Gen 21:21).

7. Though Papists in other cases make the authority of parents to be of no effect, yet in this case they count it utterly unlawful for children to marry without or against their parents' consent: and have thereupon made Canons against it.

8. The law of nature and nations, the civil and canon law, the common and statute law of our land, all manner of law is agreeable to God's Law in this point.

9. It hath been a custom in all Christian Churches throughout all ages, for the parent, or some in the parents' room, to give the bride to the bridegroom at the time of the marriage: whereby the parents' consent is openly manifested.

10. Many Divines of good note and name have judged such marriages as have been made simply without, or directly against parents' consent [especially if parents have just cause of exception against those marriages] to be of no force till the parent be brought to ratify them: and in many Churches upon due examination of the matter, they use to account them as no marriages. Experience hath manifested the boldness of many children in setting light by their parents' consent in those places where marriages once consummated are ratified, and made indissoluble, though they have been made simply without or directly against parents' consent. Many children think, though it be unlawfully done, yet being done it shall stand. Whereupon if they doubt of their parents' consent, they will cast how to get their marriage consummate, so as their parents may not know of it to hinder it before it is done: and after it is done, impudently resolute to bear out as well as they can, the storm of the parents' displeasure. To prevent such contempt of the power of parents, and to establish that authority which God hath given them over their children, marriages without or against parents' consent as aforesaid, are in many Churches made void.

17. Of the equity of the point, and reasons why children should have their parents' consent unto their marriage.

1. By marriage children are put from their parents: for *Man must leave his Father and Mother, and cleave unto his wife* (Gen 2:24). Is it not then great reason that they from whom children had their being, and by whom they have been maintained and trained up till the time of their marriage, should have notice of that kind of leaving them, and consent thereto?

2. A parents' power by the marriage of his child is passed over to the husband or wife of the child. And shall such a power be taken away without consent of parent?

3. Children for the most part being heady and rash for want of experience; and seeking more to satisfy their present carnal desire, than to provide a good lasting help for themselves: but parents by the instinct of nature loving their children as well as children love themselves, and having by much experience better understanding of a meet help, and better able to use their discerning gift in this case, because it is not their own case, and yet the case of one whom they love as themselves, and to whom they wish as much good as to themselves; is it not meet even for the child's good, that in a matter of such moment as marriage, the parent should have a stroke?

18. Of a child's carriage in case a parent provide an unfit mate or none at all.

Quest. What if parents urge their children to marry such as they cannot affect and love: must children therein against their mind and liking yield obedience?

Ans. If there be no just exception against the party commended, they ought with the uttermost of their power to endeavour to bring their affection to the bent of their parents' will: and as an help thereunto, be persuaded that their parents are as careful of their good as they themselves are, and wiser than themselves: yea above all they ought to make instant prayer unto God [*in whose hand man's heart is to turn it whithersoever he will* (Prov 21:1)] that he would be pleased to alter the course of their affection, and to settle it on the party whom their parent hath chosen for them; if at least they see no just cause to the contrary. But if notwithstanding all the means that they can use, they still find their heart altogether averse, they may in a reverend manner entreat their parent to forbear to press that match, and to think of some other.

2. *Quest.* What if the parent be negligent, and in due time provide no fit match, may not the child provide one for himself?

Ans. A parent's negligence is not a sufficient pretext to make a child cast off that subjection which he oweth to his parent. Yet I deny not but that a child knowing where a fit match is to be had, may make known as much to his parent [as *Samson* did] and crave both his consent and help thereunto (Judg 14:2). And if his parent give no ear to his humble suit, he may use the mediation of his kindred or other friends. Yea if necessity require that the child be married, and his parent add willfulness to negligence, and will not be moved at all, neither by the humble suit of his child, nor by the earnest solicitation of any friends, means may be made to the Magistrate [who is in God's place over the parent as well as over the child, and ought to afford relief unto the child] and what the Magistrate doth in that case is as good a warrant to the child as if the parent had done it.

The like means may be used if a parent be an idolater, heretic, or atheist, and will not yield that his child be married to any but to one of his own profession and disposition.

19. Of the sin of children in marrying without their parents' consent.

Contrary is the mind and practise of such children as over lightly esteeming their parents' power, take matches of their own choice: and that sometimes privily without giving any notice at all to their parents: and sometimes most rebelliously against their parents' mind and charge: not much unlike those who in the old world are condemned for *taking wives of all that they chose* (Gen 6:2) [which was one branch of that wickedness for which the world was drowned] or rather like *Esau* who took such wives as proved a grief to his parents (Gen 26:35). What blessing can be expected to fall upon such marriages? or rather what curse may not be feared to follow them? God's law is transgressed thereby: his image in parents despised, that which is more proper to them than any goods; or fraudulently, or violently taken from them: their souls grieved thereat: and they oft provoked to cast off their children, and curse their marriages. Now God's curse doth oft follow the just curse of a parent.

20. Of objections for children's marrying without parents' consent, answered.

1. *Object.* Though *Jacob* married one wife according to his parents' direction, yet he married other three [at least the two maids] without their consent.

1. *Ans.* *Jacob's* example in marrying more wives than one is not justifiable.

2. *Answ.* *Jacob* had a general consent of his parents to take a wife of the daughters of *Laban* (Gen 28:2): if therefore his marrying of two wives had been lawful, neither this nor that daughter had been taken without all consent of his parents. As for the two maids of whom he had children, neither of them was his wife: for long after they had children they are called *his maids*, and distinguished from his wives (Gen 32:22).

2. *Object.* Servants may marry without their master's consent: why then not children without their parents'?

1. *Answ.* It is not lawful for servants so to do while the date of their covenant lasteth (see Treatise 8, Section 17).

2. *Answ.* Though the servitude of a servant be greater than of a child, yet a parent hath in many respects a greater power over his child, than a master over his servant. The power which a master hath is by a mutual covenant betwixt him and his servant, and by the voluntary subjection of a servant unto his master. But the power of a parent is by the bond of nature, in that a child hath his being from his parents. Besides, this subjection of a child to his parents in case of marriage, is not for servitude but for the good of the child (see the third reason in Section 17).

3. *Object.* Children marry for themselves and not for their parents, why then should parents' consent be so much stood upon?

1. *Answ.* Though they marry not *for* their parents, yet they marry *from* their parents (see the second reason in Section 17): by marriage they are freed from the power of their parents.

2. *Answ.* Children are not their own: they are *the inheritance of the Lord* (Psa 127:3): the Lord hath given them to parents as an inheritance: a child therefore may no more marry for himself without consent of parents, than alienate his parents' goods for himself.

21. Of stealing children from parents for marriage sake.

To the forenamed sin, and to the vengeance thereof, do they make themselves accessory, who fraudulently allure, or violently take away children to marry them otherwise than their parents would. This is a worse kind of felony than stealing away the goods of a man. For children are much more properly a man's own, than his goods: and dearer to him than any goods can be: yea and so much more highly to be esteemed, by how much reasonable creatures are to be preferred before senseless, and sensual things. Our statute law expressly condemneth this, and imposeth a severe punishment on such as shall offend therein. And justly do such offenders deserve to be severely punished, both in regard of the heinousness of the sin, and also in regard of the many mischiefs which follow thereon, as, *Alienation of parents' affection from their children, Disinheriting heirs, Enmity betwixt the friends of each party so married, Litigious suits in law, Ruin of families*, and [if the personages, whose children are married without their parents' consent, be great and noble] *Disturbance of whole towns, cities, and nations*. Instance the destruction of the *Shechemites* (Gen 34). This is said to have been the cause of the ten years' war betwixt the Grecians and Trojans, and of the ruin of Troy.

22. Of Ministers' sin in marrying children without parents' consent.

Such Ministers also as through *carelessness*, not taking due account of the parties whom they marry, whether they have their parents' consent or no; or through *bribery*, being hired by reward, do marry such children as they know have not their parents' consent, do in an high degree make themselves accessory to the forenamed sin (see Section 19). Their fact is as bad as the fact of the principals themselves. Their solemnization of such marriages emboldeneth both the parties that are so married, and also all the persons that are present thereat. They highly dishonour God's holy ordinance, in that bearing the person of God they say of such as God hath forbidden to be so joined together, *Those whom God hath joined together let no man put asunder*. If Ministers had not their hand in such unlawful marriages, they could not be made: for our Church ratifieth no marriage but what is made by a Minister. Wherefore some Minister or other is guilty of this soul sin, whensoever any child is married without consent of parents. Well therefore doth our Church [to prevent this sin] expressly forbid Ministers to marry any without parents' consent: and inflict a severe censure on them that shall offend therein.

23. Of children's forbearing to dispose any of their parents' goods without consent.

A third branch of the subjection of children in forbearing to do any thing without their parents' consent, is about their parents' *goods*.

That children though living in their parents' house, ought not without their parents' consent to dispose their goods, is evident by the extent of their obedience, *in all things*.

In that *Isaac* was pleased to send *Jacob* to *Padan Aram* without any great provision, it seemeth that *Jacob* made conscience of taking any thing privily, but went as his father sent him *with his staff* (Gen 32:10). And the apology which he made to *Laban* his father in law concerning things taken away (Gen 31:36), sheweth that he held it unlawful for children privily to convey away their parents' goods. *What is my trespass? what is my sin?* [saith he] *what hast thou found of all my household stuff?*

Doth he not hereby imply, that if *Laban's* daughters had taken away any of their father's goods, it had been a trespass and sin?

The Apostle saith of the heir [who of all the children may seem to have the greatest right] that as *long as he is a child* [that is, under the government of his parents] *he differeth nothing from a servant, though he be Lord of all* (Gal 4:1). If he differ not from a servant, what right can he have at his pleasure to dispose his parents' goods? hath a servant any such right?

It is very requisite that children herein should be tied to their parents' consent, both for the good of parents, and of children themselves.

Of parents, that they may know what they have, or have not, and accordingly order their expences. How can parents tell what they have, if children privily without their knowledge purloin and dispose their goods?

Of children, that their lavish humour might by this means be restrained: [for youth is much prone beyond moderation to spend, if it have wherewithal] and that their parents may the better *lay up for them* (2 Cor 12:14).

24. Of the sin of children in purloining and wasting their parents' goods.

Contrary is both the opinion and practise of many children.

For *opinion*, many think and say, that whatsoever is their parents', is theirs also: and thereupon being through the watchful eye and provident care of their parents restrained from overlavish spending, or from laying out any thing with their own hands, they murmur against that restraint.

Knowledge and persuasion of their subjection in this case, would be a good means to suppress that repining humour.

For *practise*,

1. Some privily take away and purloin what goods, money, wares or any thing else they can come by of their parents. This the Holy Ghost accounteth plain theft: for *Rachel* having privily taken away her father's idols, the Scripture saith that she *stole them*.

Hereunto do they make themselves accessory, who counsel and encourage children so to do: as many busy-bodies, and deceitful persons advise daughters, when God hath take away their mothers, to take away linen, and other like household stuff from their father, pretending that their father may marry another wife, who will carry all away: And upon like pretence also persuade sons when their fathers die, to convey away what they can from their mother. But such pretences are no sufficient warrant unto children to deceive their parents. It were better for children to be deprived of their parents' goods, than to enjoy them with such deceit: for they will be like that *bread which is sweet to a man, and afterward his mouth is filled with gravel* (Prov 20:17).

2. Others riotously spend their portion, like the prodigal child (Luke 15:13), and run into debt, and so make their parents either to pay it, or to leave them to the law. Many scholars at the Universities, gentlemen at Inns of Court, and such children as are somewhat liberally trained up in their parents', or other friends' houses, do much offend herein. Little doth this excess and riot differ from the forenamed kind of theft: and ordinarily it bringeth as many mischiefs as that doth.

3. Some also be so ungracious and ungrateful, that being come to years, and their parents grown old, seek to defeat their parents of all they have, and to bring their parents under them, to be ordered by them: labouring to get possession of all be-

fore their parents be dead, or before they be willing to resign any such right unto their children. Such were *Absalom*, and *Adonijah* (2 Sam 15:10; 1 Kings 1:5). How highly displeasing such practises are to God, the vengeance which fell upon the pates of those two *Brethren in evil*, traitorous, and disloyal children, doth shew.

All such children as seek after the forenamed, or any other like means to defraud their parents, do very ill repay their parents' care over them, and more like barbarians, than Christians, recompence evil for good: they oft bring poverty and ignominy upon their parents and themselves: they are worse than other thieves, because they are more dearly accounted of, and more freely trusted: yea they are a very bad example to servants in the house, or subjects in the Commonwealth.

25. Of children's contentedness to be apparelled after their parents' mind and liking.

IV. A fourth branch of the foresaid subjection of children is about their apparel, that it be no other, than may stand with their parents' good liking. It is noted that *Israel made Joseph a coat* (Gen 37:3). Doth not the particular mentioning of that circumstance shew, that parents must have the ordering of their children's apparel? Which is also intimated in the reason given of *Tamar's garment of divers colours* (2 Sam 13:18), namely because *with such garments were the king's daughters, that were virgins, apparelled*. And whereas *Rebekah* had the keeping of her son *Esau's* clothes, it appeareth that his clothes were to the mind of his parents (Gen 27:15): else he would have hid them from them: for further confirmation whereof it is noted that his apparel was pleasing to his father.

Contrary is the vain-glorious humour of many children, who to the grief and discredit of their parents, apparel themselves both against the mind, and also above the ability, and unbecoming the place and calling of their parents. Among others, many Ministers' children bring much discredit on their parents hereby. Let all such proud youths note how the Lord hath threatened to *visit even King's children that are clothed with strange apparel* (Zeph 1:8).

26. Of children's forbearing to bind themselves to do any thing against their parents' consent.

V. The fifth and last branch wherewith I will exemplify the forenamed subjection of children, shall be that which is expressly noted in the law, namely a child's binding of itself by a vow.

The law giveth the parent power to disanul his child's vow (Num 30:4). It is therefore a child's duty to abstain from vowing without his parents' consent.

Contrary are such vows as Papists allure children to make, namely, vows of *continency*, *perpetual virginity*, *regular obedience*, *voluntary poverty*, with the like.

Though by these they be not drawn to forsake their parents [which before we proved to be utterly unlawful (Section 14)]: and though these in their nature were lawful [which they are not, because they are against God's law and ordinance, and against Christian liberty, and savour too rankly of Judaism, yea of a worse superstition], yet without parents' consent might they not be made.

As unlawful are oaths, and other like means, whereby children bind themselves to the performance of such indifferent things, as their parents are not willing they should do. What doth this but bring a snare upon the consciences of children, and cause a necessity of breaking one of God's commandments? either the third, in breaking their vow or oath; or the fifth, in disobeying their parents.

27. Of children's active obedience.

The affirmative and active part of a child's obedience, consists in yielding himself pliable to his parents' will; which must be added to the forenamed negative and passive part of obedience in forbearing to do things without consent of parents, for manifestation of a true child-like affection and disposition toward the parent. Passive obedience may arise from mere sullenness, and stoutness of stomach. For there are many who will forbear to do this or that without consent of parents, because they are loath to ask their consent: they had rather have their own wills crossed in the things they desire, than be made subject to their parents' will. What doth this argue, but a stout stomach, and a disdainful heart? Besides, to forbear the doing of an unlawful thing, is but to *abstain from evil*. But it is required of Christians to do that which is good, as well as to abstain from that which is evil (Psa 34:14). This is it which is commended in *Jacob*: he did not only forbear to take such a wife as would be a grief to his parents [wherein his brother *Esau* had offended (Gen 26:34,35)] but also obeyed his parents in taking

such a wife as they willed him to take (Gen 28:2; 29:18).

This general point we will exemplify in four particular instances, namely, in a child's obedience to his parents' *commandments, instructions, reproofs, corrections*.

28. Of children's obedience to their parents' commandments.

I. What lawful *commandments* soever parents give to their children, they must be ready to the uttermost of their power to obey. *Obey your parents*, saith the Apostle to children (Eph 6:7).

Parents, by virtue of their place, have power and authority to command: Children therefore must obey, or else that power is to no purpose.

To demonstrate this by some particulars:

1. If a parent call his child, or send for him, he must readily come, yea though he know not the occasion. *Eli* was in place of a parent to *Samuel*, whereupon the child supposing that *Eli* called him, ran to him once, and again and again (1 Sam 3:5). *David* when he was sent for by his father out of the field to be anointed King, knew not the occasion, yet came (1 Sam 16:12). The twelve sons of *Jacob*, though men grown, yet called for by their father, assembled themselves together before him (Gen 49:1).

2. If a parent be disposed to send his child any whither, or of any errand, though it be far off, and may seem somewhat troublesome, yet he ought to go, and do it. The forenamed (Section 27) example of *Jacob* (Gen 28:5), the example also of *Joseph* (Gen 37:14) [being sent to *see whether it were well with his brethren*] and of the *ten sons of Jacob* (Gen 42:2,3) [being sent by their father into Egypt], and of *David* (1 Sam 17:17) [sent to visit his brethren] are in this case commended by the Holy Ghost. Of *David* it is noted, that he *arose up early and went as Jesse had commanded him* (1 Sam 17:20): which setteth forth his ready obedience.

3. If a parent require his child to attend upon him, he must also do that. When *Abram* was going up to the top of *Moriah*, his will was that his servants should tarry behind, and that his son *Isaac* should attend him, and carry the wood for the sacrifice, and accordingly *Isaac* obeyed (Gen 22:6).

4. If a parent enjoin any task, or commit any business to his child, he ought faithfully to perform it. This kind of faithful obedience is commended in *Joseph* (Gen 50:5), in the *Rechabites* (Jer 35:8), and in *David* (1 Sam 17:20), with many others. *Joseph*, by reason of his great place, might not go out of Egypt, yet to perform that which his father enjoined him, he asked leave. The *Rechabites* were tempted to break their father's charge, yet they would not. *David* when he was sent by his father, from the sheep which were committed to his custody, was careful to *leave them with a keeper* (1 Sam 17:20): and again, when a bear at one time, and a lion at another, came to the flock, he put his life in hazard to preserve the flock (1 Sam 17:34): all these circumstances are thus noted, to set forth the great care that these children had to discharge that charge which their parents had committed to them.

29. Of children's disobedience to their parents' commandments.

Contrary is a rebellious disposition in children, manifested by these and such like practises,

1. By refusing to be at their parents' call; or coming [as we speak] at leisure, and making their parents wait for them.

2. By a lazy, sluggish pretending of vain and frivolous excuses, when their parents would send them of an errand, like that sluggard, who saith, *A lion is without, I shall be slain in the streets* (Prov 22:13). Such pretences are as *vinegar to the teeth, and smoke to the eyes* (Prov 10:26).

3. By scorning to wait on their parents; and in that respect they will slink out of doors, and absent themselves, when they imagine their parents will use their service in that kind: they forsooth will not be their parents' servants: an impious conceit.

4. By refusing to do what their parents enjoin them to do, and require at their hands, like the younger son, that went not to work in the vineyard at his father's command (Matt 21:30). Such children for the most part offend herein, as through pride

think the business enjoined to them too mean, and base to do. Had *David*, or the daughters of *Reguel* been of this mind, the one would not have returned to his father's sheep, after he was anointed to be King over Israel, and after he had been called to the Court (1 Sam 16:13,21; 17:15); and the other would not have watered their father's sheep, especially among such rude and boisterous clowns, as without all respect to their place and sex, would drive them away (Exo 2:16,17).

30. Of children's obedience to their parents' instruction.

II. Such wholesome *instructions* as parents give their children for the well ordering of their carriage, children ought conscientiously to obey: a point which *Solomon* much presseth (Prov 1:8,9; 4:1): *My son*, saith he, *hear the instruction of thy father, and forsake not the law of thy mother, &c.* And to move children the rather to do so, he sets before them his own example (Prov 4:3), shewing that he required no more of them than himself had performed. *Moses*, though grown to years, and a prince among his people, testified his obedience to his father in law hereby (Exo 18:24).

1. Parents have an express commandment to instruct their children [as we shall after shew (see Treatise 6, Section 26)]. Great reason therefore that their children hear and obey them therein. The good instructions of any one are to be regarded, much more of parents.
2. Great wisdom may be attained thereby: for the desire that parents have of their children's good, maketh them give the best directions they can unto them, even what themselves have learned of others, or observed by their own experience: in this respect, *Solomon* styleth him *a wise son that obeyeth the instruction of his father* (Prov 13:1): and resembleth the fruit and benefit thereof, *to a comely ornament, to chains, and bracelets, and to a crown of glory* (Prov 1:9; 4:9).
3. Much joy and comfort is brought to parents by seeing their children observe their instruction: for *a wise son maketh a glad father* (Prov 10:1). Now this is a thing which children ought to aim at, *to rejoice their parents' heart* (Prov 27:11). *Esau* is taxed for *grieving* his parents (Gen 26:35).

Contrary is their proud and foolish humour, who think they need no instruction, their parents are too jealous of them, they are wise enough of themselves; if their parents would but let them alone, they should do better: thus they shew themselves impious against God, rebellious against their parents, and injurious to themselves. Such were *Eli's* (1 Sam 2:25), and *Lot's* (Gen 19:14) sons. Now note the vengeance that fell upon them.

31. Of children's patience to their parents' reproof.

[The reasons alleged, and the directions given concerning a wife's subjection to her husband's reproof, may fitly be applied to this part of children's obedience. Here therefore the same order is observed, and the several points confirmed by proofs pertinent to children (see Treatise 3, Section 47, &c.).]

III. The obedience of children must further extend itself to their parents' reproof: and that by *patient bearing* all manner of reproofs, and by *amending* what is justly reproofed. That *shame* whereof the Lord speaketh, which should be in a child, when *her father hath spit in her face* that is, by some outward sign manifested his anger, implieth a child's patient bearing of a parent's reproof. This patience in a child must be manifested to his parent, whether his reproof be mild or bitter, just or unjust. In this respect a child must more consider the *person* who reproveth, than the *matter* or *manner* of the reproof. *Jacob's* reproof of *Joseph*, for his dreams which came of God (Gen 37:10), was unjust: the manner of uttering it, with many short pauses, and that interrogatively, implieth some tartness: yet such was his patience, as we read not of one discontented word that he gave. But most memorable is the patience of *Jonathan* in this kind. His father *Saul's* reproof of him was directly unjust, and out of measure bitter (1 Sam 20:30): yet with what patience did he bear it? all that he replied was to make some little apology for *David*: he replied nothing against his father's opprobrious speeches.

Great wisdom may be learned by this patience: for so may a child better judge of his parents' reproof, whether it be just or no. Though it be unjust, yet thereby may he observe what is displeasing to his parents: at least he may observe his parents' infirmity, and so know the better how to carry himself towards them.

Contrary is the practise of such children, as upon every reproof of their parents are ready to *answer again* (see Section 6). Our parents are wayward, say they, who can bear them? If none else could bear them, yet should children: for parents ordinarily bear such waywardness, and untowardness at their children's hands, especially while they are young, as none else would or could.

Quest. If a parent be mistaken in a matter, and unjustly reprove his child, may the child make no answer?

Ans. Yes, he may, so he do it mildly, reverently, and seasonably: not to peremptorily crossing or thwarting his parent.

Object. Christ took up his mother very roundly for reproving him unjustly (Luke 2:49)

Ans. Christ as God-man was greater than his mother, and in that respect with authority blamed her for her unjust reproof. The virgin *Mary* was not ignorant thereof, and therefore was silent.

32. Of children's readiness to amend what is justly reprov'd by their parents.

If a child be justly for his fault reprov'd by his parents, both conscience toward God, and obedience to his parents, requireth that he readily redress that which is amiss unless amendment of the thing justly reprov'd be added to patient bearing of reproof, that patience can be no better accounted of, than dissimulation, and plain mockage. When the father in law of *Moses* told him, that what he did *was not well* (Exo 18:17), he forthwith amended it.

But contrarily many lewd and ungracious children continue to go on in their wicked courses, though their parents again, and again rebuke them for it. Just was *Eli's* reproof of his children, but yet no amendment followed. Now note the inference made thereupon by the Holy Ghost, *They obeyed not the voice of their father, because the Lord would slay them* (1 Sam 2:25): whereby is implied, that to despise the just reproof of parents is an evident sign, and forerunner of God's heavy judgment. *Solomon* calls the child which *will hear no rebuke, a scorner* (Prov 13:1), which noteth out a most obstinate sinner that cannot be reclaimed, and in that respect is *scorned* of the Lord (Prov 3:34).

33. Of children's submission to their parents' correction.

IV. Correction is a real reproof, a reproof in the highest degree, even the severest kind of reproof: so as by subjection hereunto great trial of obedience is made. By the same means must a child's submission to his parent in this kind of reproof be manifested, as in the former: namely,

1. By bearing patiently the correction which his parent shall give him.
2. By amending readily that for which he is justly corrected.

The former of these is noted by the Apostle as *a ruled case*, a matter not to be denied, in these words, *We have had fathers of our flesh which corrected us, and we gave them reverence* (Heb 12:9). One special part of this *reverence* is a *patient suffering*: therefore he infers thereupon, *ought we not to be in subjection?* &c.

The latter is set forth by *Solomon* under an effect which followeth upon the performance thereof: for having advised a parent to correct his child, he addeth this reason, *He shall give thee rest, yea he shall give delight unto thy soul* (Prov 29:17): how can this *rest*, and *delight* be given, but by the child's amendment of that for which he is corrected? A parent taketh no delight in the pain, and smart of his child, but in the fruit that followeth thereupon. As a child's transgression is a *grief* (Gen 16:35), and vexation to the parent, so his amendment causeth *rest* and *delight*. Now this effect followeth not simply upon correction, but upon the good use thereof which is made by the child. It lieth therefore in the child, and so lieth upon him as a duty, to give this *rest* and *delight* to his parent by amending the fault for which he is corrected, as he brought grief to him by provoking him to use correction. Thus shall neither parent repent the *inflicting*, nor the child repent the *enduring* of correction.

That a child may attain to this degree of obedience, he must duly consider both the *Cause* whereby his parent is moved to correct him, and also the *End* which he aimeth at therein. The *cause* is the *love* he beareth to his child (Prov 13:24). The *end* which he aimeth at, is his *child's good* (Prov 22:15). If these motives work not obedience, what can?

34. Of refusing, abusing correction.

Contrary is *disdain* on the one side, and *obstinacy* on the other. *Disdain*, when children scorn to be corrected by their parents: and in that respect when by all the means they can use, they cannot avoid it, they will mutter and murmur, fret and

fume, rage and rave against their parents, and despise and hate them for it. *Obstinacy*, when they will be no whit bettered thereby, but still run on in their lewd courses, and rather wax the worse for being corrected. This may be counted the highest pitch of a child's rebellion: for this is the last means which a parent can use to reclaim his child from desperate courses. If this prevaieth not, the law of God requireth, that a parent should give up his child into the hand of the Magistrate, that he may be put to death (Deut 21:18).

Hitherto of the distinct branches of children's Obedience.

The Extent thereof followeth.

35. Of children's conforming their judgements to their parents'.

[The *extent* of children's duties being the very same that was of wives' duties: and the *restraint* also the same, that order which was there observed shall here also be kept. Only other proofs more pertinent to children's place, shall be brought to confirm those general propositions which may be applied to any inferiours. Many general reasons there alleged for proof of the propositions shall here be omitted. Wherefore compare this place with that (see Treatise 3, Section 63 and 64, &c.).]

The *extent* of children's obedience is only implied in this Epistle to the Ephesians, but it is expressed (Col 3:20) in these words, *Children obey your parents IN ALL THINGS*. A large extent, but not simply to be taken without any limitation: for the Apostle himself noteth a restraint in these words, *In the Lord* (Eph 6:1). So far forth as children transgress not any of God's commandments, in obeying their parents, they ought to obey. This is to obey *in all things, in the Lord*.

Thus we see that parents' authority is very large: there is no restraint of it but God's contrary command, whereof a child must be assured, if he refuse to obey his parent in any thing.

It is not enough for a child to say I have thus long, and in thus many things obeyed my parent, I hope in some things if I have mine own will, I may be excused. No: *All things* comprise more than *many things*. Wherefore *Many* are not enough. And though God's will be exempted, yet is not thine own will exempted: though thou mayest do nothing against God's will, yet thou oughtest to do many things against thine own will, if it be contrary to thy parents.

Two things are to be laboured after by children for attaining to this *extent* of obedience *in all things*.

1. They must labour to bring their judgment and will to the bent of their parents: to think that meet and convenient for them to do which their parents will have them do. Though *Isaac* thought it somewhat strange that he should carry wood up to an hill to offer sacrifice where was nothing for a burnt offering, yet it being the will of his father that he should do so, he thought it meet enough for him to do so (Gen 22:6,7).

This subjection of judgment and will is to be yielded in all the particular cases of obedience which were before propounded (see Section 13 and 14, &c.), as in their *calling, marriage, apparel, allowance, &c.* So as children are to think that kind of calling, that particular match, that apparel, and that allowance to be meetest for them, which their parents think meet.

If the judgment be persuaded of the meetness of a thing, and the will inwardly brought to yield unto it, outward obedience will more readily and cheerfully be yielded thereunto.

Contrary is the overweening conceit which many children have of their own judgment and will, who think they can better discern what is fit and meet for themselves, than their parents. They imagine their parents to be too strict and precise, or too suspicious and jealous, or too covetous and worldly. This maketh them take what callings, what matches, what apparel, what allowance they think best; whence many mischiefs arise, which would all easily be avoided, if they would lay down that presumptuous conceit, and labour to observe the forenamed direction.

36. Of children's yielding to practise at their parents' command, such things as in their judgment they cannot think very meet.

2. Though children cannot in their judgments think that which their parents require to be the fittest and meetest, yet being pressed thereto by the peremptory command of their parents, in practise they ought to yield unto it, saying to their parents as *Peter* to the Lord, *nevertheless at thy word I will do this*, Thus did *Jacob* yield to *Rebekah* (Gen 27:6): he thought by doing

that which his mother bid him, he should seem a mocker to his father, yet she urging him, he did it.

Quest. May not a child, yielding better reason than his parent, refuse to do what he thinketh unmeet, or at least forbear to do what he is commanded, till he be better informed of the meetness thereof?

Ans. With reverence and humility he may render his reason why he thinketh it not meet, and desire his parent not to urge it upon him.

[This did *Judah* one of the sons of *Jacob*, and is not blamed for it (Gen 43:3):] and parents ought in such a case to yield to their children [as *Jacob* did (Gen 43:11)]. But yet if in things indifferent, parents be otherwise minded than their children, and will have their children yield to them, they must yield.

For, 1. In indifferent things the command of a parent is a warrant to the child, by reason of this extent [*all things*.] so as the parent may sin in commanding that, in doing whereof the child may not sin. Who can clear *Rebekah* of sin in commanding *Jacob* to deceive his father? yet I take it, that *Jacob* cannot justly be blamed for obeying. 2. Children do thus manifest an high esteem of their parents, and very great respect towards them: they shew how desirous they are to please them, and how fearful to offend them. When the will of parent and child consent, there is no such trial.

By this means peace and love is better preserved betwixt parent and child: a parent's anger is stopped, the effects thereof avoided, and many other mischiefs prevented, which oft fall out when inferiours refuse to yield to their superiours who have authority over them.

Contrary is their preposterous peremptoriness who will do nothing against their own mind and will, though their parents require it never so much. This phrase [*If thou wilt not send, we will not go down* (Gen 43:5)] which *Judah* used to his father, though in a good cause, was too peremptory for a child. They who obstinately refuse to do those things which are against their own mind, must needs come short of this extent, *Obey in all things*. Yea they shew that what they do is rather for their own sakes because they like it, than for their parents' sake. What obedience then may that be thought to be? Yet this is all the obedience which many children will yield. If they think not that which their parents require to be meet, nor fair, nor foul means shall move them to do it; whereby many children do much provoke their parents. Let such children know, that it is every way more safe for them at the instant command of their parent to do that which they conceive to be unmeet, than peremptorily to disobey their parents, which is more than unmeet, even unlawful.

37. Of the restraint of children's obedience.

The *restraint* of children's obedience is expressed in this clause, *in the Lord*: which phrase affordeth a necessary limitation in obeying their parents, who are but *parents of our flesh* (Heb 12:9), men and women, subject to err in their commandments, and to require such sinful things as their children may not with a good conscience perform. The limitation then which the forenamed clause [*in the Lord*] affordeth, is this,

Children must perform no other obedience to their parents, than may stand with their obedience to God. The reasons rendered by the Apostle prove as much: *This is right, this is well pleasing to the Lord* (Eph 6:1; Col 3:20). But to obey parents against the Lord is neither right nor well pleasing to the Lord.

[See the two pair of cautions annexed to like limitations of a wife's obedience (Treatise 3, Section 51 and 52), and apply them to these limitations of children's obedience.]

If therefore parents command their children to do any thing which the Lord hath forbidden them, they ought not to do it. On this ground did *Michal* well in suffering her husband *David* to escape out of the hand of *Saul*/her father (1 Sam 19:11). I justify not her manner of carrying the matter, with untruths, and false tales; but her refusing to yield to her father's mind and will is justifiable, and that in two respects. 1. In that the difference was betwixt her husband and father. Now by God's law a wife is to yield to her husband rather than to her father (Gen 2:24; 3:16).

2. Because she knew her father sought to slay him: if then she had delivered him into the hands of her father, she had made herself accessory to murder. In this latter respect, *Jonathan* also did well in refusing to fetch *David* at his father's command (1 Sam 20:31,32).

Thus if a father command his child to go to Mass, to forswear himself, to marry an idolater, to steal, to lie, or to commit any other sin forbidden by God, the child ought not to obey: those things cannot be done *in the Lord*.

Again if parents forbid their children the doing of any necessary duty commanded of God, the child ought to do it notwithstanding the parent's inhibition. We may well think that *Ahaz* who set himself so violently to deface the holy things of God, to profane his ordinances, and to shut up the doors of God's House, gave strait charge to his son that he should not repair them again; yet *Hezekiah* so soon as he had power did repair all (2 Chron 29:3).

If a parent forbid his child to go to the Protestant Churches, to hear a sermon, to pray in a known tongue, to give just weight, and measure, to speak the truth when he is called to witness it, with the like; he must be of *Daniel's* mind (Dan 6:10), and notwithstanding that prohibition, do the things which God requireth.

38. Of children's sin in yielding to their parents against God.

Contrary to this limitation is on the one side a flattering eye-service in many children, who care not what they do, be it good or evil, lawful or unlawful, so they may please their parents thereby: and on the other side a slavish fearfulness, which maketh them so to dread their parents as they fear not God at all: they will rather choose to sin and so provoke God's wrath, than do any thing whereby their parents' wrath may be provoked. It is a brand set upon evil kings that they walked in the ways of their fathers, and mothers (1 Kings 22:52): and did wickedly as they counselled them (2 Chron 22:4). Wherefore the following and obeying of their parents in evil was so far from extenuating their sin, as it did rather aggravate the same. The preferring of father and mother before the Lord Christ sheweth that such a child is *not worthy of Christ* (Matt 10:37): In comparison of Christ *Father and mother must be hated* (Luke 14:26). But that undue, and unchristian-like respect of parents above Christ, is it that maketh so many young Papists, young swaggerers, swearers, liars, deceitful persons, and lewd livers.

For avoiding the two forenamed extremes let thine heart be filled with a true fear of God, and withal consider the difference betwixt our earthly parents and our heavenly Father. They are but parents *of our flesh*, he is the *Father of Spirits* (Heb 12:9). They can but touch the body, he can cast body and soul into hell (Luke 12:4,5). They are but a while over us, he forever. Their authority is subordinate to his, his supreme and absolute of itself. They can give but a light temporary reward; he, an eternal weight of glory. They cannot shelter us from his wrath, he can from theirs.

Hitherto of such duties of children as respect their parents' authority, such as respect their necessity follow.

39. Of children's recompence.

The general head whereunto all the duties which children owe to their parents in regard of their *Necessity*, is in one word *Recompence*, which is a duty whereby children endeavour as much as in them lieth, to repay what they can for their parents' kindness, care, and cost towards them, and that in way of thankfulness; which maketh a child think he cannot do too much for his parent, and well may he think so, for a parent doth much more for his child before it is able to do for itself, than the child possibly can do for the parent. So as if the parents' *authority* were laid aside, yet the law of *equity* requireth this duty of *Recompence*: so also doth the law of *piety* and *charity* (1 Tim 5:4). Wherefore of all other duties this is most due. It is in express terms given in charge to children by the Apostle, who willeth them to learn to *requite their parents*.

Contrary is neglect of parents in their need, which is more than monstrous ingratitude. As all ingratitude is odious to God and man, so this most of all, and yet very many are guilty thereof. In them the proverb is verified that *love is weighty*. For it is the property of weighty things to fall down apace, but to ascend slowly, and that not without some violence. Thus love from the parent to the child falleth down apace, but it hardly ascendeth from children to parents. In which respect another proverb saith, *One father will better nourish nine children, than nine children one father*. Many children in this kind do no more for their parents, than for strangers. They either consider not how much their parents have done for them; or else they conceit that what their parents did, was of mere duty, and needeth no recompence. Fie upon such barbarous and inhumane children!

40. Of infirmities whereunto parents are subject.

The rule of the forenamed recompence is on the one side the *parents' Necessity*, and on the other, the *child's Ability*. So as in every thing wherein a parent needeth his child's help, the child to his power must afford his best help. *Beyond one's power nothing can be expected*.

A parent's *Necessity* may be through *Natural infirmities, Casual extremities.*

Natural infirmities are *Inward, Outward.*

Inward Infirmities are weakness of judgment, slipperiness of memory, violence of passion with the like; whence proceed forwardness, testiness, suspiciousness, jealousy, fear, grief, &c.

Outward Infirmities are such as arise from some instant temptation, as were *Noah's* (Gen 9:21) and *Lot's* (Gen 19:33) drunkenness; *Lot's* and *David's* (2 Sam 11:4) uncleanness; *Abraham's* (Gen 12:13) and *Isaac's* (Gen 26:7) dissimulation; *Jacob's* (Gen 37:34,35) and *David's* (2 Sam 18:33) excessive lamentation, &c.

Some of these latter, which may seem most heinous and odious sins, are then to be accounted infirmities, when they who commit them make not a sport of them, nor delight to live and lie in them, as swine to wallow and lie in the mire: but only at some times, through some temptation, as it were unawares, fall into them; and after they are committed they are themselves more ashamed of them, and more grieved for them, than any other that see them, or hear of them.

In regard of the natural infirmities of parents, the duty of children is both to *bear with them*, and also to *cover them* so far as they can.

41. Of children's bearing with their parents' infirmities.

Children bear with their parents' infirmities when they do not the less reverently esteem their place, or person, nor perform the less duty to them because of their infirmities.

This is the first particular branch of recompence. For children in their younger and weaker years are subject to many infirmities: if parents had the less respected them for their infirmities, and from thence had taken occasion to neglect them, and would not have borne with them, surely they could not have been so well brought up. That great patience, long-sufferance, and much forbearance which parents have shewed towards their children, requireth that children in way of recompence shew the like to their parents as occasion is offered. It was a great infirmity in *Isaac* to prefer *Esau* a profane child, before *Jacob* a religious child, especially against God's express word concerning *Jacob*; yet *Jacob* respected not his father a whit the less for it, as appears by his fear to offend him (Gen 27:12), and by his readiness to obey him (Gen 28:5). *Jacob's* unjust reproof of *Joseph* was no small infirmity (Gen 37:10), and yet how much *Joseph* revered and every way respected his father the history following sheweth. *Saul's* infirmities were far more and much greater than any of theirs, yet what duty and faithfulness did *Jonathan* his son perform to him, even to their deaths? for he died with him (1 Sam 31:2).

We have herein the pattern of Christ himself: how great infirmity did his mother bewray, when over-rashly she rebuked him being about a good work, a bounden duty, his Father's business? yet immediately thereupon it is noted that *he went down with his parents, and was subject to them* (Luke 2:51): which manifesteth the honour he gave to his mother, notwithstanding her infirmity.

Contrary to this duty do they, who take occasion from their parents' infirmities to think basely of their person and their place, and thereupon grow careless in duty, either refusing to do any duty at all, or else doing it carelessly, grudgingly, disdainfully, and scornfully. *Absalom* made a supposed infirmity of his father the ground of his rebellion (2 Sam 15:3). Had his pretence been true, yet had it not been a sufficient cause for him to disgrace, and rise against his father, as he did. The law that threateneth God's vengeance against such children as *mock at their father, or despise to obey their mother* (Prov 30:17), maketh no exception of parents' infirmities.

42. Of children's covering their parents' infirmities.

Children cover their parents' infirmities both by passing by them [as we speak] and taking no notice of them, and also by concealing them from others as much as they can. the Scripture noteth it to be a property of *love* to *cover a multitude of sins* (1 Peter 4:8): now in whom should love abound, if not in children? And who should more manifest this property of love than children?

Of passing by and concealing from others a parents' infirmity, we have a worthy pattern in *Shem* and *Japhet*: when *Noah*

their father being drunken lay uncovered in the midst of his tent, *they went backward* [that they might not themselves see their father's infirmity] and *covered his nakedness* [that others might not see it] (Gen 9:23). The blessing which upon this occasion was then promised to them and their posterity, sheweth how acceptable this duty was to God.

Contrary was *Ham's* practise, who discovered, and made known his father's nakedness. The curse thereupon denounced against him, sheweth how odious that sin was unto God. Too many there be of *Ham's* cursed brood, who blaze abroad their parents' infirmities, and make such things known of them, as otherwise would not be known (Gen 9:22): whereby they bring much dishonour and shame upon their parents [which can be no honour to the child], and withal a curse from their parents on themselves, which the heathen accounted very dreadful.

More contrary was *Absalom's* practise, who raised a most malicious slander of his father, and thereby alienated his subjects' hearts from him (2 Sam 15:3). Too many *Absalom*-like seek to raise a supposed reputation and honour to themselves by vilifying and disgracing their parents: but let them note *Absalom's* end. Assuredly, if they hold on in that course, the like, or a worse, shall be their end.

43. Of children's bearing with their parents' casual necessities.

Casual extremities, are all manner of crosses which by the providence of God are laid upon a man: whether upon his body, as blindness, lameness, sickness, &c. or on his person, as captivity, banishment, imprisonment, &c. or on his estate, as poverty, penury, &c. In all these, children must bear with their parents, as in the forenamed infirmities; neither less reverently esteem of them, nor perform the less duty because of them. These are such necessities, as are not sinful in themselves; and therefore in regard of these, parents are much more to be borne withal. Though *Isaac* were *blind*, yet did not *Jacob* a whit the less respect him (Gen 27:1). Though *Naomi* were poor, yet *Ruth* her daughter in law continues to do a child's duty and service unto her (Ruth 1:16,21).

Contrary is the unnatural disposition of such children, as take occasion from these casual necessities of their parents to despise them. God hath made an express law against despising those who are by any outward defects impotent, as *deaf*, *blind*, &c. (Lev 19:14). If no person may despise another, for these, much less children their parents. They are worse than *Ham* that do so, and may look for an heavier curse.

44. Of children's relieving their parents according to their need.

Besides bearing with parents' necessities, in such cases as parents stand in need of their children's relief and succour, they must afford it them. In sickness they must visit them, as *Joseph* visited his father (Gen 48:1). In time of mourning, they must comfort them, as the children of *Jacob* (Gen 37:35). In want, they must provide things needful for them, as the sons of *Jacob*, who went up to buy food for their father (Gen 42:8); and as *Joseph*, who sent for *Jacob* into Egypt, and there nourished him (Gen 47:12). It is noted of *Ruth*, that she did not only glean for her mother a poor woman, but also reserved some of that food which was given to herself to eat, for her (Ruth 2:18). In time of danger they must do what they can for their protection and preservation, as *David* had in this respect an especial care of his father and mother (1 Sam 22:3,4). Yea, if God be pleased to take children out of this world before their parents, and their parents be succourless, they must take what order they can for the well-being of their parents after their own departure, as Christ, who commended his mother to his disciple *John* a little before his death (John 19:27). These and such like duties are particular branches of *recompence*, and are all comprised under that *requital*, which the Apostle requireth of children (1 Tim 5:4): And they are but a small part of requital of all the pains, care, and charges, that parents have been at with their children. Yea, this only thing, that parents have brought forth children into the world, can children never sufficiently requite. Nature hath taught thus much, not only unto heathen men, but also unto the unreasonable creatures. Among other unreasonable creatures, the example of the *stork* is worthy to be noted: for it is recorded of that kind, that when the dams are old, the young ones feed them; and when through age, they are ready to faint in their flying, the young ones will help; and when they are past flying, the young ones carry them on their backs. The Greek name of a *stork* is taken from that word, which signifieth, to *requite a parent's kindness*: or else this word is taken from that name: they are both of the same notation.

Contrary is the opinion of Pharisees, who thought that children by consecrating their substance to the Temple, might be freed from this duty of *recompence* to parents, which is the mystery of that Hebrew word *Corban* (Mark 7:11). They made a mere pretext of piety to God, a cause of manifest impiety against parents. Christ giveth this verdict of them, that *they make the word of God of none effect* (Mark 7:13). Papists are of the same opinion, and so under the same censure (see Section 14).

Contrary also is their practise, who having the goods of this world, suffer their parents to want. *S. John* saith, that *the love of God dwelleth not in him, who shutteth up his compassion from his brother* in that case (1 John 3:17); how then can it dwell in such a child? Not they only who suffer their parents to starve, offend in this extreme, but they also who suffer them to live poorly, and basely, when themselves Dives-like fare delicately, and go gorgeously attired every day (Luke 16:19).

In an higher degree do they offend, who bring their parents to such extremities, as to poverty by their lavish spending; to prison by importuning them to be their sureties; to excessive grief by their mischievous practises, as the sons of *Jacob* (Gen 37:34).

But what shall we say of such graceless children, as dare strike their parents? God's law accounteth such a child unworthy of life, and adjudgeth him to death (Exo 21:15).

Nay, what may be said of *father-quellers*, and *mother-quellers*? there was of old no particular law made against them, because it is supposed, that no child can be so unnatural and inhumane. In imitation whereof *Solon* that wise law-maker among the heathen, made no law against them: and his reason being asked, he answered, that he thought no child would commit such a fact.

When afterwards such inhumane impiety was manifested in the world, the Civil Law ordained this punishment; *If any shall kill his parent, let him not be put to the sword, nor fire, nor any other usual punishment: but let him be sewed in a sack with a dog, and a cock, and a viper, and an ape, and cast into the next sea, or river; that while life is in him, he may begin to want all use of the elements, and be deprived, while he liveth, of the air, and when he is dead, of the earth.*

This sin having been committed among the heathen, the Apostle reckoneth is up among other most notorious and barbarous sins (1 Tim 1:9). As murder is one of those sins, which the earth can least bear, and which crieth loudest to heaven for vengeance; so among the several kinds of murder, this is the most unsupportable, and crying.

Thus much of the duties of children, which they are to perform while their parents live. It remaineth to speak of those which they are to perform when their parents are dead.

45. Of children's care to bury their parents being dead.

The duties which children owe to their parents after they are dead, concern the *Body, and Credit* of their deceased parent.

It is the duty of children to bring the bodies of their parents deceased, with such decency and honour, as may be answerable to the place and reputation wherein they lived.

So as both the *thing* itself, and the *manner* of doing it, is to be observed.

The thing itself, namely *Burial* of the corpse of such as are deceased, hath ever been in use in God's Church: and it hath been used as a means to maintain our hope of the resurrection of our bodies. Many of the heathen, who never dreamt of the resurrection, were wont to burn the dead bodies of their friends: other heathen learned this manner of burial from the Church, though they knew not the mystery thereof. It is more clear than needs be proved, that God's people, from the beginning of the world, have performed this duty of burial to their friends; but it is not pertinent to the point in hand, to insist upon the general: that it belongs especially to children to procure this duty to be performed, is now the point to be proved, which is readily done by the approved examples of *Isaac* (Gen 25:9), *Jacob* (Gen 35:29), *Joseph* (Gen 50:7), and others expressly recorded in Scripture.

And great reason there is for it: for

1. It is a testimony of great love and good respect to the party deceased. Now who should manifest more love, and greater respect than a child?

2. It is a kind of *blessing* promised by God to his Saints, *to be buried* (1 Kings 14:13; 2 Kings 22:20): as on the other side, it is a *curse* threatened against obstinate sinners, *not to be buried* (Jer 22:19; 1 Kings 21:23,24; Psa 79:3). In this respect, *David* blesseth the men of *Jabesh Gilead* for burying *Saul*, and acknowledgeth it a kindness done to *Saul* (2 Sam 2:5). Now who ought rather to procure a blessing, and do a kindness to parents, than children, who are oft blessed through their parents'

means?

3. It being a great deformity to have a man's corpse lie above ground [for no carcasse will be more loathsome than a man's if it lie unburied] children, who are most bound to cover their parents' deformity, are in this respect bound to bury their corpse.

Contrary is their practise whose minds are so set on their parent's goods, as they clean neglect their bodies. So soon as their parent's breath is out of the body, they so busy themselves about the things which they have left behind them, as their corpse is ready to stink before care be taken for the burial of it. Yea, some will purposely keep their parent's corpse above ground till they be exceeding noisome, for receiving some revenues, or debts, or other accounts, which must be paid before the corpse be buried. If their corpse must needs for some time be kept above ground, let them be embalmed, or so used as they may not savour. They who are careless hereof, shew that they respect their parent's wealth more than his person and honour.

In which respect they also heinously transgress, who are so greedy of their parent's estate, as they must needs prevent his departure, and like *Adonijah* enter upon their father's estate, and take possession of his goods before breath is out of his body (1 Kings 1:5): whereby they do oft cause great disquietness to him that would depart in peace.

Again, others bearing an inward grudge and secret hatred against a brother, or other kinsman, whom their parent entirely loved, and in that respect durst not meddle with him in their parent's life-time, so soon as their parent is dead, pick a quarrel with the party hated, and so disturb and hinder their parent's funeral. Such a plot *Esau* intended (Gen 27:41): but God defeated it, whereby it appeareth that God is displeas'd therewith.

46. Of the decency wherewith children ought to see their parents buried.

The *manner* after which children ought to see their parents buried, must be with such *decency* as is agreeable to the commendable custom of the country and Church where their parents die, and with such *honour* as is in some measure answerable to the estate, and place of their parents while they lived [at least if it be not above the means that the parent hath left, or above the ability of the child that maketh the solemnity]. *Joseph* was a great Governour in Egypt, by reason whereof his father when he came thither was highly accounted of (Gen 50:7): accordingly with great honour did he carry him to his grave.

There are two extremes contrary to the forenamed *decency* and *honour*. One is an overlavish and prodigal sumptuousness and solemnity at their parent's funeral, far above the estate, and far beyond the means which the parent hath left, and far also above the estate and ability of the child himself. Some by the needless solemnity of their parent's funeral are so far cast into debt, as they are never able to recover themselves again, and so bring more dishonour to their parents by the weakness of their child's estate, than honour by the solemnity of the funeral: there may be great honour, and much decency in a funeral, where is not extraordinary charges: instance *Stephen's* funeral (Acts 8:2).

The other extreme is too base; and private a manner of burying their parents, much unbeseeming both their parents and their own estate, and means; which ariseth from a mixture of pride, and covetousness possessing their hearts. Pride maketh them have no solemnity at all, because covetousness will not suffer them to exceed in their solemnity. Hence it cometh to pass that they choose out strange places where neither their parents or selves are known, and the dead of the night that none may espy them; and appoint an uncertain time, that no friend may accompany them. God oft meteth with such proud, covetous children in their kind, and causeth them with like dishonour to be brought to their graves.

47. Of children's paying their parent's debts after their death.

As children must have respect to the body of their parents deceased, so also to their credit and name, which is a thing of greater account, and honour: a thing wherein they may bring a kind of blessing to their parents and make them live after their death.

Parents themselves cannot do any thing when they are dead to preserve the same: children therefore being the living image of their parents must endeavour to do it.

Three things there be which children must make conscience of, even in regard of their deceased parent's credit, and reputation; one, to pay their debts: another, to suppress ill rumours: a third, to imitate their good example.

I. If the estate of parents, their goods or lands come to their children, their duty is to pay their debts, so far as they can: especially if by law those debts may be recovered at their hands. For what law may force others to do in equity and justice, conscience must move good children to do in charity, and recompence to their parents. The Holy Ghost makes it a note of a wicked man *to borrow and not to pay* (Psa 37:21). Wherefore to wipe away that blot from the name of a parent deceased, children must be ready in this kind to do what the parent himself, if he were living, would, or should do. Yea if children of themselves be well able, though their parents left not sufficient to pay all their debts, they ought to pay them. Herein especially a childlike affection is manifested to the parent.

Contrary is their practise who strive to get all they can of their parents, and yet make no conscience of paying any debts at all, unless law force them thereto. What they do in this case cannot be thought to be done for their parent's sake, but rather for their own sake. Many so little respect their parent's credit in this kind, as they privily convey away and utterly conceal much of their parent's estate, of purpose to defeat creditors: which as it is a part of apparent injustice, so it is a cause of opening the mouths of men against their parents, to their discredit and shame.

48. Of children's suppressing evil reports against their parents deceased.

The direction given before concerning children's speech of their parents behind their backs (see Section 7), may fitly be applied also to the care which children ought to have of the speeches and reports which are made of their parents after their departure. It followeth as *from the less to the greater*, that what children do for their parent's credit in absence behind their backs, they must much more do when they are dead: for then there is no hope, no possibility that parents should do any thing to right their own wrong in that kind: it lieth therefore upon children to do it.

Do not they clean contrary, who take occasion from the departure of their parents, both to open their ears to receive any ill reports of them, and also to open their mouths to speak ill of them: than blazing abroad all their infirmities, and stretching their ill reports of their parents beyond the lists of truth. Ill birds they are that so bewray their own nest. They know that their parents being dead can have no notice thereof: whereby they shew what little piety to God or parent is in their heart. But there is an ever-living, all-seeing, and all-knowing Father that taketh notice of all: who beside other vengeance will cause such measure to be meted out to them, as they mete to their parents. There is no one thing wherein this proverb, [*With what measure you mete it shall be measured to you again* (Matt 7:2)] is more often verified than in children's ingratitude to their parents. All ages have given many instances thereof. [The very heathen observed it.] Which sheweth God's great indignation against it.

49. Of children's imitating their parent's good example.

If parents have been persons of good carriage in their life time, as religious towards God, just in their dealings with men, merciful to such as stood in need of their help, doing much good in their place, and so ended their days with much credit; it is an especial means to maintain and continue this their credit, for children to walk in their steps, and to endeavour to be like them.

Thus is a blessed memory of their parents kept fresh and green [as we speak] though their bodies be rotten. For when they who knew the parents behold the like good qualities and actions in their children, they will thereby be put in mind of the parties deceased, and say, Oh how such parents yet live! behold a lively, and living image of them. Thus did *Solomon, Asa, Jehosaphat, Hezekiah, Josiah* and such like good Kings which came of the stock and lineage of *David*, keep the memory of their father *David*, fresh, fair, and flourishing [long after his body was rotten] as is evident by these and such like phrases, *He walked in the ordinances of David his father* (1 Kings 3:3): *he walked in all the ways of David his father* (2 Kings 22:2): *he did that which was right as David his father*, &c. (1 Kings 15:11). There can be no better monument of a parent's piety, honesty, and virtue, than a child's lively representation of the same. Wherefore as a motive to stir up children to walk in the good ways of their parents, God hath promised to *shew mercy to thousands of them that love him and keep his commandments*, that is, such as having religious and righteous parents walk in their steps.

Contrary are both those that are unlike good parents, and those that are like evil parents. The former sort do much impeach and dishonour the reputation of their parents, as *Rehoboam*, who by his foolish rigorous and unjust carriage, made the people speak contemptuously of *David* (1 Kings 12:16).

The latter sort continue in memory the evil name, and the shame of their parents, and cause them to stink more and more:

as the sons and successors of *Jeroboam*, who following his idolatrous course, made it the more remembered, and caused this blur to remain in his style from age to age, *Jeroboam which made Israel to sin* (1 Kings 15:26).

As *they* stop the current, and hinder the passage of the blessings of righteous parents: so *these* propagate, and open a way for the curse of unrighteous parents.

50. Of the superstitious duty enjoined by Papists to children after their parent's decease.

To the two forenamed duties of *burying the corpse*, and *preserving the credit* of parents, *Papists* add a third, and *Heathen* a fourth, whereof neither are warrantable by God's word, but directly contrary thereto.

That which *Papists* add is, that children after their parent's death ought to procure *Dirges, Masses, Pardons, Releases*, and such like toys for them, and make continual prayers to free them out of Purgatory, and bring them to rest in heaven: of the vanity of these prayers, and folly of the other toys I have elsewhere spoken (see Treatise 3, Section 39 and 40).

The Scripture expressly teacheth that after death the soul goeth to the place appointed for it, of endless bliss or woe: so as there is no means of altering the one, or helping forward the other.

51. Of the unlawfulness of children's seeking to revenge their parent's wrongs.

That which *Heathen* add, is, that children after their parent's death revenge such wrongs as have been done to them in their life time. And they press this so far upon children, as they affright them with their parent's *Ghost*, saying, that if they neglect to revenge their parent's wrongs, their Ghost will follow them, and not suffer them to live in quiet, but molest them continually. This conceit ariseth from the corruption of nature, which is exceeding prone to revenge: but it is expressly forbidden in Scripture, in these and such prohibitions, *Resist not evil* (Matt 5:39), *Recompence to no man evil for evil* (Rom 12:17). *Avenge not yourselves* &c. (Rom 12:19). Yet some in justification thereof allege *David's* charge to *Solomon* of taking vengeance on *Joab* and *Shemei*, after his death (1 Kings 2:5,8).

Ans. The charge which *David* gave, and *Solomon's* execution thereof, was no matter of private revenge, but only a lawful execution of justice which children may and ought to do. Just reasons there were to move *David* to put off the execution of Justice upon the one and the other so long. *Joab* was too mighty (2 Sam 3:39) to have execution done on him in *David's* time: and *Shemei's* offence was committed in the time of *David's* humiliation, which made him swear that he would not himself take vengeance of him. Besides, *Solomon* executed justice on the one and the other, not for the wrongs they did to his father, but for other crimes which they committed in his time: only their former offences were remembered to aggravate the matter.

Thus far of children's *duties*. The *manner* of performing them followeth to be declared.

52. Of the manner of performing children's duties.

That clause which noted out the *limitation* of children's duties (see Section 37), affordeth also an excellent *direction* for the *manner* of performing them. It is this, *in the Lord*: that is, *Children must so perform their duty to their parents as they would or should perform it to the Lord*.

More particularly it implieth these six points:

1. That their duties be performed *in conscience*, or *for conscience sake* (Rom 13:5), which is all one as *for the Lord's sake*. for the Lord only is judge of the conscience and hath power over it. Thus must subjects perform duty to Magistrates (1 Peter 2:13): much more children to parents. The reason which the Apostle rendereth in these words, *This is well-pleasing to the Lord* (Col 3:20), sheweth that children in obeying their parents must labour to approve themselves to God.
2. Their duties must be in sincerity, which is when children pretend in shew to do no more, than in truth and heart they mean: *Whatsoever ye do, do it heartily as to the Lord* (Col 3:23), saith the Apostle. Parents use to deal with none more heartily than with their children: accordingly must children deal with parents.
3. They must be performed cheerfully, with a willing and ready mind (2 Cor 9:7): for the Lord loveth cheerfulness. Herein

lieth a main difference betwixt a filial and servile, a child-like and slave-like obedience.

4. They must be performed reverently as to them which bear the Image of God. Hereof we spake before (see Section 3).
5. They must so be performed, as in performing of them no sin be committed against God. Hereof also we spake before (see Section 37 and 38).
6. Constancy must be added to all other virtues. For as the Lord himself is constant in all his ways and works, so he expecteth that children should be in the duties which he requireth at their hands. He that beginneth well, and holdeth not on, loseth all the glory of his good beginning.

If the examples of all good children commended in Scripture be well weighed, we shall find their duties, so far forth as they were acceptable to God, performed after the foresaid *manner*, in all the branches thereof.

53. Of the aberrations of children in the manner of their obedience.

Contrary are these aberrations.

1. When children perform their duties on by-respects: for fear of parents' wrath, and the punishment following thereon: for hope and expectation of greater portion and allowance: upon instant persuasion of friends, with the like: these respects simply in themselves are not *for the Lord*.
2. When they perform them only outwardly in shew, complementally while parents are in presence, or may know thereof. This is not with respect to God who searcheth the heart.
3. When they perform them grudgingly, mutteringly, disdainfully: as if their parents' authority were an usurped power and not given them of God. Is this *in the Lord*?
4. When they perform them rudely and unmannerly: this sheweth they consider not the glory of God's Image shining in their parents.
5. When they care not how they sin against God, so they may please their parents (see Section 38).
6. When, as if they repented of what they have well done, they refuse to do any more duty to their parents. They wax weary, thinking that God hath laid too heavy a burden upon them. Many shew themselves more dutiful in their younger, than in their riper years. That which maketh children weary in doing duty, is commonly the great and long need of their parents, as long sickness, long impotency, long poverty, with the like. It appears that such children look only on their parents as men, which, as they imagine, can never recompence their pains and cost: they look not to God who is able abundantly to recompence all. These therefore perform not their duty *in the Lord*.

54. Of the equal respect that children are to bear to both parents.

As the distinct duties of children have been set forth, so I think it requisite to declare distinctly who the parties be to whom those duties are to be performed. These principally are the natural parents, both *Father* and *Mother*. Secondarily such as are in the place of parents.

The first point then to be noted is, that children bear an equal respect to both their natural parents, and perform duty to both alike. The law expressly mentioneth both, *Honour thy Father and thy Mother*. Well may we think that there was some just and urgent cause, that the law which so briefly under as few words as well could be, compriseth exceeding much matter, should expressly mention *father* and *mother*, when as there is one word, *parent*, which includeth both. Now what other reason can be rendered than the point in hand?

It is worthy to be noted, how the Apostle contenteth not himself to have named *parents*, which implieth both, but also annexeth the express words of the Law, which in particular setteth down, *father and mother*. It is expressly set down of *Jacob* that he obeyed *his father and his mother* (Gen 28:7). Among other pen-men of Scripture *Solomon* expressly mentioneth *both father and mother*, even almost twenty several times in Proverbs.

Many reasons there be to enforce this point.

1. Both parents are under God alike means of their children's being. Children come out of the substance of both alike.
2. The care and pains of both for the good of the children is very great: I know not of whether the greater. The mother's pains and care in bringing forth the child is indeed the greater, and it may be also the greater in bringing up the child, especially while it is young, at least if she give it suck herself: yet afterwards the father's exceedeth in providing fit calling, sufficient means of maintenance, yea and portion or inheritance for it, and that after he himself is dead. Thus one way or other the child is equally bound to both: and accordingly God's Law maketh no difference betwixt them.

Object. The wife is subject to her husband: therefore a child ought to prefer his father before his mother.

Answer. Though there be a difference betwixt father and mother in relation of one to another, yet in relation to their children they are both as one, and have a like authority over them. Now children are not to look to that difference that is betwixt their parents in that mutual relation that is betwixt husband and wife, but to that authority which both parents have over their children; and so to carry an equal respect to both.

2. *Object.* What if the father's and mother's disposition be contrary: and the one command what the other forbids.

Answer. The thing commanded or forbidden must be observed: if it be about a thing simply good or evil, lawful, or unlawful, then the parent which would have the thing lawful to be done, or unlawful to be forborne [though it be the mother] must be obeyed: for in this case she is backed with God's authority. But if the matter be merely indifferent, then I doubt not but the father must be obeyed: yet so as the child no way shew any contempt to his mother, but with all reverence and humility make it known to her that it is best both for herself and himself, that his father be obeyed. But if the father's contrary authority be not interposed, or if the father be dead, then is a mother as simply and absolutely to be obeyed in all things, as a father.

55. *Of pretences alleged to obey father rather than mother.*

Contrary on the one side is their childish fondness who so wholly respect their mother, and seek to please her, as they little regard their father, unless through fear they be forced thereto: and on the other side, their scornful spirit who only bear respect to their father, and altogether neglect their mother, if not despise her. For the most part, of the two, the mother is less regarded. The reasons whereof I take to be these following, whereunto I will annex particular means to remove the seeming force of those reasons, as antidotes or remedies unto them.

1. The mother by reason of her sex is commonly the weaker, and subject to more infirmities.

Answer. Children ought rather to look upon their mother's place and authority, than their person and infirmity: so *these* would no whit impair their respect of the *other*.

2. The mother is more indulgent and tender to her children: and useth more familiarity towards them: now *familiarity breedeth contempt*.

Answer. This is the abuse of familiarity: love should breed love: and love must be ordered according to the condition of the parties loving, and loved. As children with one eye behold the affect of the mother, so with another they should behold God's image in the mother; and then [that which is noted as the ground of all children's duty (see Section 2 and 3)] a *loving-fear* would be wrought in their heart, which would cast out all contempt.

3. The mother hath not that power to reward or revenge that a father hath.

Answer. 1. This is not to obey *in the Lord*. No outward respect should move the child to obey his parents so much as conscience to God-wards. If children duly considered God, how he hath made no difference, but commanded them to obey both alike, and how he is able abundantly to reward, and severely to revenge, that reason would be no reason.

4. The mother is subject to the father.

Ans. This was removed before (see Section 54).

As a general answer to these and all other such pretences as can be alleged, let it be noted that the Lord doth not only in express terms charge children to *fear their mother*, but also [the more to press this point] sometime setteth the mother in the first place, thus; *Ye shall fear every man his mother, and his father* (Lev 19:3): which is not so to be taken as if the mother of the two were the more excellent [in this respect the father for the most part is first named] but because it is the truest trial of a child's subjection to be subject to his mother. He that willingly and conscionably subjecteth himself to her, who is in relation to her husband the inferiour, in sex the weaker, in condition subject to more infirmities, in her affections less moderate, in power less able to reward, or to punish, will much rather [no doubt] subject himself to his father.

56. Of the difference of children's subjection to natural parent, and to such as only are in the place of parents.

Beside *natural parents*, there are others by God so set over children, as they owe in conscience child-like duty unto them. These in general are such as are in the place of parents, and so perform, or at least ought to perform, the duty of parents to children.

They are of two sorts.

1. Such as are joined to a natural parent in marriage, commonly called *Step-fathers, and step-mothers, or fathers in law, and mothers in law*.
2. Such as have the government and tuition of children committed to them, commonly called *guardians, tutors, Governours, yea also foster-fathers, and foster-mothers*.

Quest. Is the same duty in every respect due to those who are in place of parents, as to natural parents themselves?

Ans. Not so. There is such a prerogative appertaining to natural parents from whom children have received their being, that many things wherein children by an absolute necessity are bound to them, are bound unto the other who are but in place of parents only, by the law of honesty, of meetness and conveniency. Whence it cometh to pass that such things as being done by children rebelliously without, or against the consent of natural parents prove mere nullities, will stand in force though they be done without or against the consent of such as are only in the place of parents: instance contracts made about goods, lands and such other things as parents retain a right in: whereunto many good Divines add contracts of marriage, or calling and the like (see Section 16).

Yet notwithstanding seeing in conscience we are bound to those things which the law of honesty, and conveniency requireth [for *whatsoever things are honest, just, and of good report* (Phil 4:8), are to be done] great is that duty which children owe to those who are in place of parents.

57. Of children's subjection to fathers and mothers in law.

Fathers and mothers in law are to be ranked in the first degree of those who are in the place of natural parents. Very good proof there is in Scripture for children's subjection to them. The respect which *Moses* bear to his father in law (Exo 18:7), and *Ruth* to her mother in law (Ruth 1, 2), and *Christ* himself to his supposed father (Luke 2:51), are commended for this very purpose. *Subjection* is noted in *Christ's* example: *Reverence in Moses: Recompence in Ruth's*.

The marriage bond maketh man and wife *one flesh*: whereupon the natural parent that marrieth another, maketh that other *one with him*, and in that respect is as a parent to the children, and by them ought to be accounted so.

The Law of God maketh it plain *incest* for a son to *uncover the shame of his mother in law*, or for a father in law to *uncover the shame of his daughter in law* (Lev 18:8,17). Whereby it appeareth that fathers and mothers in law, are by God's Law in the very place and stead of natural parents to their children, and accordingly as natural parents are to be honoured.

Besides it is a great honour which a child doth to his natural father or mother to respect such as they have made one flesh with themselves, as they do their own parent. So as to honour a father, or mother in law, is to honour a natural parent.

Contrary is the mind and carriage of most children. Very few bear a reverend, dutiful, and child-like respect to step-fathers, and step-mothers: but for the most part despise them in heart, grumble at them in speech, and are very undutiful in their behaviour: whence it cometh to pass that they bring much grief to their natural parent, and oft cause much discord and dissension betwixt their natural, and step-parent: being herein set on work by Satan, who laboureth what he can to disunite those whom God hath nearly united together and made one flesh. Lamentable experience sheweth that the *second*, *third* or any *after-marriages* are seldom so comfortable and peaceable as the *first*: especially if either the *one*, or *other*, or *both* have children. The cause thereof, for the most part, is in children, who brook not fathers or mothers in law.

Object. Nature cannot so well brook a step-parent, as a natural parent.

Answ. 1. If not so well, yet despise them not: there is a difference betwixt extremes.

2. Conscience and religion ought to alter corrupt nature. Look to God's ordinance: and let God's fear possess thine heart, that that may bring thee to do what nature cannot.

2. *Object.* Fathers and mothers in law seldom respect their husband's or wife's former children.

Answ. This objection more beseemeth the mouth of a barbarian than a Christian. The Gospel teacheth to *be subject not only to the good and gentle, but also to the froward* (1 Peter 2:18): and *not to be overcome of evil, but to overcome evil with goodness* (Rom 12:21).

The Scripture reckoneth such as rise up against their parents in law, among such as rise up against their natural parents (Micah 7:6): shewing there by that the impiety of *those*, is as blame-worthy, as the impiety of *these*.

58. Of children's subjection to guardians, tutors, &c.

For children's subjection to governours, guardians, and tutors, the Apostle saith that a child is *under* them (Gal 4:2). If by the Law children are *under* them, they ought in equity to be subject to them. It is expressly noted of *Esther*, even after the King had chosen her for his wife, that she *did the commandment of Mordecai* [who was as a guardian to her] *like as when she was brought up with him* (Esth 2:20). A memorable pattern for this purpose. What pretences might she have made to have cast off all manner of subjection? *Mordecai* was but her cousin: she was now advanced above him: a wife she was, and so subject to her husband: yea a King's wife, and so herself a Queen: yet she was subject, and her subjection commended. We read that the children of the Prophets much respected *Elisha*, did reverence to him, and were obedient to him, because he was as a father and tutor unto them (2 Kings 2:15; 6:1): in which respect also *Elisha* was as a child subject to *Elijah*, whom he called *father* (2 Kings 2:12).

Guardians, tutors, and such like over-seers of children, have a parent's charge laid upon them, as we shall after shew (see Treatise 6, Section 74, &c.): great reason therefore that child-like duty should be yielded to them. Their honour must be answerable to their charge and care.

Contrary is the conceit of many lawless children, whose parents being dead, or they being sent and placed abroad out of the government of their parents, think they are clean free from all government, and may live as they list. Their practise being correspondent to this opinion, they run into all riot, and in time bring themselves to utter ruin. It is the overthrow of many children, that they regard not their guardians, tutors, and governours: and God in judgment bringeth many such refractory children to some fearful and shameful end or other. Let children therefore be wise, and not take too much liberty to themselves. Thus far have been handled the duties of children in their several *kinds*, the *manner* of performing them, and the *parties* to whom they are to be performed. It remaineth to speak of the reasons which the Apostle allegeth to enforce those duties.

59. Of the place of parents, whereby children ought to be moved to obey them.

The reasons which the Apostle useth to move children to perform their duty are four:

The *first* is taken from the *place* of the parent.

The *second* from the *equity* of the thing.

The *third* from God's express *charge*.

The *fourth* from *God's promise*.

1. The *place* of a parent is noted forth by this phrase, IN THE LORD: which as it affordeth a *limitation* (see Section 37), and giveth a *direction* to children (see Section 52), so it addeth a spur unto them, to stir them up to perform their duty: for it sheweth that parents are to their children *in the Lord's stead*: as an evidence thereof hath God communicated to them this glorious and honourable title [*FATHER*] which is proper and peculiar to himself (see Section 5). Now then parents being to their children in *God's stead*, and by virtue of their place bearing *God's image*, children in obeying their parents, obey God; in refusing to obey them, refuse to obey God. A strong motive is this first motive. For who is so void of religion, but will think it most meet, that God should be honoured? or who so impious, as to refuse to yield duty to God? Here then children may learn in one main point how to honour the Lord, and shew themselves children of God. And let them hereby know, that disobedient and undutiful children, that resist the authority of parents, *resist the ordinance of God, and receive to themselves damnation* (Rom 13:2).

60. Of the equity whereby children should be moved to obey their parents.

II. The second reason in these words, *for this is right*, though it be not of greater force, yet is it more plainly and expressly noted to be a reason, as the causal particle [*for*] prefixed before it, sheweth. It is a general reason drawn from common equity; a reason which may move all sorts, even infidels and pagans: therefore much more Christians.

In saying, *It is right*, he implieth three things.

1. That it is agreeable to all law. To the Law of *God*, which is the fountain of equity. To the law of *Nature*, which proceeds from thence. And to the law of *Nations*, which is answerable in many respects. The forenamed proofs out of God's Word, shew it to be agreeable to *God's Law*. The precepts which heathen men have given of this point, shew it to be agreeable to the *law of nature*. And the many constitutions of law-makers, in all ages, shew it to be agreeable to the *law of nations*.

2. That the place of parents requireth as much. For *RIGHT* requireth that every one have his own, that which is his due. It being therefore *right*, that children obey their parents, that duty is due to them.

3. That parents deserve as much: for *right* presupposeth *desert*. That which is done *of right*, is done by way of *recompence*. The cause of this desert, is the love which parents bear to children, the pains, care, and cost they have been at, in bringing them forth, and bringing them up.

These things being implied under *right*, note what followeth from the force of this reason,

1. Disobedient and undutiful children, transgress against *God's law*, against *common equity* of all nations, and against *light of nature*: so as they are unworthy of the name of Christians, they are worse than infidels, yea worse than the brute beasts.

2. They have no respect to the place of their parents, they disgrace the image of God, which their parents by virtue of their place carry, and they disturb that comely order and degree, which God hath set among men.

3. They ill repay their parents' care and pains for their good, and shew themselves both *ungrateful* and *unnatural*: which are two most monstrous and odious sins.

61. Of God's accepting children's obedience.

The forenamed reason is by this same Apostle in another place thus set down, *This is well-pleasing to the Lord* (Col 3:20). By comparing that place with my text, I observe, that

What is right is well-pleasing to the Lord. And again, *What is well-pleasing to the Lord is right*.

These two propositions, are [as we speak in Schools] *convertible* and *reciprocal*; either of them true of the other every way. Wherefore the Apostle, in another place, joineth them both together. For having exhorted children to recompence their par-

ents, he saith, *That is good and acceptable before God* (1 Tim 5:4). *Good* or *honest* is in effect the same that *right*.

This sheweth, that dutiful children, as they do that which is good, or honest, and right unto their parents; so also therein they highly please God: so as they may be sure not to lose thereby. At God's hand they shall receive a reward, though their parents should little regard their dutifulness. Thus God dealt with *Jacob*. His father in law ill repaid his faithfulness (Gen 31:7,42): but God looked upon him, and abundantly recompenced all his pains.

This sheweth again, that undutiful children, as they do not that which is right, but rather wrong unto their parents; so they highly displease God: they may be sure therefore not to escape unpunished, though their parents, through over-much indulgency, should let them alone: instance the two impious children of *Eli*, *Hophni* and *Phinehas* (1 Sam 2:34): and the two rebellious children of *David*, *Absalom*, and *Adonijah* (1 Kings 2:25).

This therefore addeth force to the second reason, and moveth children to do *right* to their parents, by obeying them, as they respect God, his *good pleasure*, or *displeasure*: as they look for *recompence*, or fear *vengeance* from him.

62. Of God's charge, how inviolable a bond it is to the children to obey their parents.

III. The *third* drawn from *God's charge* is not only in express terms noted, but for more weight the very words of the moral law are quoted [*Honour thy father and thy mother*] and it is added, that this is a *commandment*, yea the *first* commandment, and that *with promise*, all which is for amplification of the point.

Here then consider we - 1. The reason itself, 2. The amplification thereof.

From the reason that *it is God's charge*, I gather these three points.

1. That it is no arbitrary matter left to children's discretion whether they will obey their parents or no: but a matter whereunto in conscience they are bound, even as they owe allegiance to God himself the great law-giver: so as in neglecting duty to parents, children sin even against God himself: for the same God who hath commanded us to honour himself, hath commanded us to *honour father and mother*.

2. That this is a *perpetual* and a *general* law: a law whereunto all children of all times, places, sexes, estates and degrees always have been, still are, and ever shall be bound. For the moral law is of that extent: it is *general* for all persons: *perpetual* for all times. Therefore no children may think to be exempted from it.

Quest. What if children be grown to years, and not under their parents' government?

Answ. There may be some difference both in some *parts* of subjection, and also in the *manner* of subjection betwixt such children as remain under their parents' government, and such as are freed from it: but yet so long as a child hath a parent, of what age or estate so ever he be, he oweth an *honour* unto his parent. *Joseph* when he was a great Governour of Egypt, a man grown, having wife and children, yet performed the honour of *reverence*, *obedience* and *recompence* unto his father (Gen 47:12; 48:12; 50:5). *Solomon* when he was in an higher place than *Joseph*, even an absolute King, did the honour of *Reverence* to his mother (1 Kings 2:19).

3. That no man can give children any dispensation, or exemption from their duty to parents. If any may, he must be either the law-maker himself, or one greater than he, one that hath power over him. Now God is the author and giver of that Law, *God spake all these words* &c. (Exo 20:1). But is any greater than God? hath any power over him? Who then can dispence with children in this kind?

Hence then I infer these two conclusions.

1. That the Pope's dispensation is nothing worth: they who make it to be of force, must make him greater than God, which is a horrible blasphemy.

2. Though parents themselves should not exact duty of their children, yet children were bound to perform duty to them, because of God's charge. To this therefore are children to look. This sheweth that there is no less pain hanging over the heads of the transgressors of this charge, than the curse of the law, eternal condemnation.

63. Of the title FIRST given to the fifth commandment.

In the amplification of the forenamed reason, the Apostle styleth the commandment of honouring parents the *first with promise*, as to shew that it is the first which hath a particular promise annexed to it; so it is the first that God gave of any duty to be performed unto man. The very order of the decalogue manifesteth the truth hereof. The reason is clear: Honour due to parents is the ground of all the duties required in the second table: for if duty be not performed to such as we are bound unto by some peculiar bond, may we think that it will be performed to such as we are bound unto at large? Now of all to whom we are first and most bound, and to whom we owe our first duty, our parents are the persons. They therefore who are rebellious against their parents, and refuse to do their duty to them, will hardly perform duty to any other. Little hope that a disobedient child will prove a profitable member in Church or Commonwealth. *Absalom*, who was a rebellious child, proved but a traitorous subject: and *Hophni* and *Phinehas* that refused to hearken to the voice of their father, proved but sacrilegious Priests. Wherefore if any precept of the second table be conscionably to be observed [as all are, for the same law-maker gave all, and Christ hath said that *the second table is like the first* (Matt 23:39)] then is this of *honouring father and mother*, are among the rest, and above the rest to be observed, at least if difference of observing any may be made.

But this particule [*first*] being set down, not simply but with a connection of promise with it [*The first with promise*] we are duly to consider the promise thereof: whence a fourth reason ariseth.

64. Of God's promise moving children to obey their parents.

The *fourth* reason taken from *God's promise*, is both generally *propounded* and particularly *exemplified*. Propounded in this clause [*first with promise*]. Exemplified in the third verse.

For the *General*. God's promise made to the performance of any duty, cannot but be a strong motive to stir us up to perform it. Men hereby do stir up, and provoke one another to perform any thing. Thus Kings when they would fain have their subjects do this or that, promise such and such rewards unto them: Thus masters incite their servants, parents their children, and one man another. If the promises of men encourage us to perform the things which they give us in charge, how much more ought the promise of God? Men are deceitful, and may deal doubly, pretending one thing with their mouths, and intending another with their heart, and never mean to perform what they promise: But God is faithful and true: his words are as deeds: his promise as performances; so as he never maketh shew of more than he means to perform. Again, man's power is limited; though he truly intend what he promiseth, yet in the performance he may fail either in that he knew not his own power, but thought when he made the promise he could have done more than in the event he findeth he can do; or in that he is afterwards by some occasion hindered, or disabled. But God's power cannot be so straitened, or hindered. Besides, men may be taken away before the time of performing their promise is come: but God ever liveth, and changeth not. If then man's promises be any motives to any thing, much more God's who ever remaineth the same. Betwixt God and man there is no proportion, no comparison.

This motive doth exceedingly commend God's fatherly indulgency towards us, and the earnest desire he hath of our good. For he hath such power and authority over all his creatures, that the very knowledge of his will ought to provoke them to perform any duty which he shall command: and if they obey not, he might presently execute vengeance upon them. But considering that we are his children, and need many allurements to draw us on by little and little, he accordingly dealeth with us. He standeth not wholly and only upon his authority, but addeth promises thereto: [for *this is a commandment with promise*]. If notwithstanding all this, children refuse to obey their parents, may not the Lord justly expostulate the matter with them, as sometimes in another case he did with the Israelites, and say, *Judge between me and these children: what could I have done more that I have not done? I gave them an express charge to honour their parents (Isa 5:3,4): I laid it down in the first place as a main and principal charge: to encourage them to keep it, I added a promise of good to redound to themselves: what could I do more? Do not they justly deserve vengeance that regard none of these?* Thus, in that *this is a commandment with promise*, we see how children disobedient to their parents are both *rebellious against God* in regard of the *commandment* which they transgress, and *injurious to themselves* in regard of the *promise* which they make to be void and of no effect. Of this particular promise see more in the first treatise, section 97 and 98, &c.

The Sixth Treatise

Duties of Parents

1. *Of the heads of parents' duties.*

Ephesians 6:4. *And ye fathers provoke not your children to wrath, but bring them up in the nurture and admonition of the Lord.*

Next to children's, follow parents' duties, which the Apostle layeth down in this fourth verse: where he noteth,

1. The duties.

2. The parties 1. That are to perform the duties, *Fathers*. 2. To whom they are to be performed, *Children*.

The duties are set down, 1. By prohibition. 2. By precept.

The prohibition noteth out one extreme, which is *over-much rigour*, [*Provoke not to wrath*].

The inference of the precept upon the prohibition noteth out another extreme, which is *over-much remissness*.

The precept itself enjoineth to parents three duties.

1. To *nourish* children, namely with food, apparel, and other like necessities [*Nourish them*].

2. To *nurture* them, namely with good discipline [*In nurture*].

3. To *instruct* them, namely in the ways of God [*And admonition of the Lord*].

Nature, Civility, Piety teacheth Unreasonable Creatures, Reasonable Men, Christians to do the First, Second, Third.

To these heads may all the several points which I shall deliver concerning parents' duties, be referred.

That parents may the better discern how one duty followeth another, I will proceed in this order

1. The fountain of all duties shall be declared, 2. The streams that issue thence, shall be declared.

The stream shall be divided into two rivers.

In the first are those general duties that are continually to be done.

In the second, such particular duties as are to be applied to the several ages of children. There are two principal general duties.

1. Faithful *prayer* to God.

2. Upright *walking* with God.

All the particulars may be comprised under this one head, *A provident care*. And this hath respect,

1. To the *Infancy* of children,
2. To their *Youth*,
3. To the time of their *placing* forth,
4. To the time of parents *departing* out of this world.

2. Of that love which parents owe to their children.

The *Fountain* of parents' duties is *Love* (Titus 2:4). This is expressly enjoined to them. Many approved examples are recorded hereof: as *Abraham* (Gen 22:2), *Isaac* (Gen 25:28), *Rebekah* (Gen 25:28), and others.

Great reason there is why this affection should be fast fixed in the heart of parents towards their children. For great is that pain, pains, cost, and care, which parents must undergo for their children. But if love be in them, no pain, pains, cost, or care, will seem too much. Herein appeareth the wise providence of God, who by nature hath so fast fixed love in the hearts of parents, as if there be any in whom it aboundeth not, he is counted unnatural. If love did not abound in parents, many children would be neglected and lost. For if parents look not to their children who will? If none look to them, they must needs perish: for they are not able to help themselves. As God by nature hath planted *love* in all parents, so Christians ought even for conscience sake, to nourish, increase, and blow up this fire of love, that they may thereby be made more forward to do every duty with cheerfulness. The more fervent love is, the more readily will every duty be performed.

As I have heretofore laid down *Love* a fountain of wives', husbands', and children's duties, so must I continue my course, and set it forth as the fountain of parents' duties. For the Scripture hath noted it as a duty belonging to all and every of them: and therefore I might not omit it in any of them. Yet let not any thereupon think, that the same point is oft handled, and repeated again and again. For according to the several parties, and the several relation they have to others, there are several fruits of love: even as the same moisture of the earth causeth several and divers fruits, according to the several kinds of plants that receive that moisture. Compare the several places, where this general duty of *love* hath been handled, and you will find the manner of handling to be different, and to afford new matter.

Object. As too much fire is dangerous, so too much *love*.

Answ. True. Wherefore as in other things, so in this, the golden mean must be kept. No duty so holy and necessary, but may be perverted. Let the extremes be avoided, and the mean will better be kept.

3. Of the contraries to love.

The extreme contrary to love in the defect is *want of natural affection*, which is reckoned in the catalogue of notorious sins (Rom 1:30; Titus 3:3). Though love of children be by nature engraven in man's heart, yet many clean put it out through covetousness, lust, vain-glory, superstition, idolatry, and other vices: whereby it cometh to pass that instead of the good which they should do for their children, they bring much mischief upon them. Some spare not the precious life of their children. Among these, barbarous idolaters do most exceed in this kind of unnatural cruelty, sacrificing their children, and offering them up to devils. To this the great blood-sucker Satan of old brought not only the heathen, who being ignorant of God did service the devil, but also the Israelites (2 Kings 16:3; 21:6; Ezek 16:20) to whom *Jehovah* the true God made himself known, and expressly forbid this cruelty (Lev 18:21), and that under pain of death (Lev 20:2). Behold how superstition and idolatry blind the eyes of men.

They who have been among the savages in Virginia, Florida, India, and other like places testify that such cruelty is used to this day. And it is rendered as a main reason why, notwithstanding such spacious places as they have, they increase no more in multitude, because many of their children from time to time are offered up in sacrifice.

Reasonable men herein shew themselves more unreasonable than unreasonable beasts, which do what possibly they can to preserve their young ones.

Though not so high, yet too high on this ladder of unnatural do they climb, who hate their children, and that [which maketh the sin to be out of measure sinful] for piety and integrity; as many popish and profane parents, who have children truly reli-

gious: and in the respect ought so much the more to be loved.

The extreme in the excess is too much doting upon children: as they do who so unmeasurably love them, as they make reckoning of nothing in comparison of children. Even God himself is lightly esteemed, his worship neglected, his word transgressed, all duty to others omitted, their own souls forgotten through care of children. Is not this mere apish kindness? for apes kill their young one with hugging. This is no love, but plain dotage. But what may be said of those that are so hellishly enamored with their children as to commit incest or buggery with them?

4. *Of parents praying for their children.*

The first and best stream which issueth out of the forenamed fountain of *love* is faithful and fervent *prayer*. This extendeth itself to all things, at all times, throughout the whole course of the child's life. It is the first and it is the last duty which parents ought to perform to their children: even that which they must do without intermission; *Pray without ceasing* (1 Thess 5:17).

Though prayer be a general duty which all Christians owe one to another, yet after a peculiar manner doth it appertain to parents: and of all others they are most bound to it. For the promise which God maketh to a parent is extended to his seed and children, as these and such like Scriptures shew *I will be thy God, and the God of thy seed* (Gen 17:7): *That it may be well with them and with their children* (Deut 5:29): *The promise is unto you, and unto your children* (Acts 2:39). Parents therefore with most assurance of faith may call upon God for their children. For God's promise is the ground of faith: so far as God's promise is extended, so far our faith may and ought to extend itself. Hence hath arisen the commendable custom of children's asking their parents' blessing (see Treatise 5, Section 9): which intimateth a desire that parents would pray for God's blessing on them.

This duty of prayer must be performed before parents have children [that they may have some, as *Isaac* (Gen 25:21), *Hannah* (1 Sam 1:10) and others did] and so soon as children are conceived especially if they observe them to be quick in the womb [as *Rebekah* (Gen 25:22) did] and again when they are born [as *Zachariah* (Luke 1:64) did] and throughout the whole course of their life [as *Job* (Job 1:5) did] and when they are going out of this world, and leaving their children [as *Isaac* (Gen 27:4) did].

There is no one thing wherein and whereby parents may do more good for their children, than in and by true prayer. God hath sanctified prayer as a means to receive all needful blessing from himself the fountain of all blessing. If therefore God's blessing be of use to children [what atheists are they that believe not?] then also is prayer by which it is obtained.

5. *Of vices contrary to parents praying for their children.*

The very neglect of this duty is a sin contrary to the duty itself: and many parents there be that stand guilty of this sin. Some think it needless to pray for a child before it be born, not considering that in sin it is conceived. When it is born they refer this duty to the midwife, whereas it properly appertaineth to the Father. After it is grown to any ripeness, they put it off to the child to pray for itself. And when they are on their death-bed, they think it enough if they can pray for their own souls. Such parents shew little true love to their children: but less faith in God.

But what may we say or think of such impious parents as fear not to make fearful imprecations against their children? God oft in wrath and vengeance heareth such imprecations to the woe of parent and child: whereby he sheweth his great indignation against them for the same.

6. *Of parents endeavouring to be righteous that they may leave God's blessing to their children.*

Another general branch proceeding from parents' *love* to their children, is, that for their children's sake they endeavour to *walk uprightly* before God, and to please him. This I do the rather note, because I find the reward promised to righteous parents to be extended unto their children. *The generation of the righteous shall be blessed* (Psa 112:2), saith *David*. And *Solomon*, *Blessed shall his children be after him* (Prov 20:7): and again, *The good man shall give inheritance unto his children's children* (Prov 13:22). This motive is therefore urged by the Holy Ghost to provoke parents unto all righteousness (Deut 5:29).

Thus doth the Lord extend the reward of righteous parents unto their children to shew his great good liking, and high ap-

probation of righteousness. Read for this purpose, 1 Kings 11:34 and 2 Kings 10:30.

1. *Object.* *The righteousness of the righteous shall be upon himself* (Ezek 18:20).

Answ. That is meant rather of a man's personal righteousness, and grace itself which is not communicated to children, than of the fruit thereof: That faith in Christ, fear of God, obedience to God's word, or any other personal grace which is in righteous parents, shall not justify or save their children. For *the just shall live by his own faith* (Hab 2:4). Yet this hindereth not but that the benefit of righteous parents may fall upon their children according to the extent of God's promise.

2. *Object.* By experience we find it verified, that the children of some righteous parents are cursed: and the Scripture giveth us many examples thereof: as *Cain* (Gen 4:11), *Canaan* (Gen 9:25), *Absalom* (2 Sam 18:15), and others like them.

1. *Answ.* Such children by their unworthy, and degenerate carriage make forfeiture of God's covenant and so deprive themselves of the benefit thereof (1 Sam 2:30).

2. *Answ.* Many good reasons may be given why God should sometimes alter his course, and withhold his blessings from the children of his servants. As

1. Lest God's gifts and blessings should otherwise seem to come rather by natural propagation from the parent, than by free donation from God.

2. Lest parents should thereby be drawn to neglect the means of good education.

3. Lest children also themselves, trusting too much to their parents' righteousness, should take too much liberty, and wax licentious.

4. Lest God's free election should seem hereby to be restrained.

3. *Object.* If this be so, what motive can it be unto parents to labour after righteousness for their children's sake?

Answ. Though God does reserve in himself a freedom to order his blessings as it pleaseth him, and to bestow them upon whom he will: and thereupon sometimes blesseth the child of a wicked parent [instance *Hezekiah* (2 Chron 28:27)] and denieth his blessing to the child of a righteous parent [instance *Amnon* (2 Sam 13:14,29)] yet in that it is a very usual course with him to extend his blessing [according to his promise] to the children of the righteous, it is a strong motive to such as desire the good of their children, the rather for their children's sake to endeavour after righteousness: for thus do they use the means which by God's word is warranted and sanctified for procuring God's blessing to their children. Leave therefore a good memory to thy children rather than much wealth.

7. Of the preposterous course which covetous and unjust parents take for the good of their children.

Contrary is the course of such parents as by unrighteous means think to provide well for their children. For many do not only too carkingly, and distrustfully moil and toil to scrape together great masses of money, or great store of land, or other stocks for their children, neglecting duties of piety and mercy, but also by unjust and wrongful courses defraud others to make their children rich. So common is this undue course of providing for children, as thence hath arisen this proverb, *Happy are those children whose parents go to the devil*. A cursed proverb. For what other thing can it intend, but this, that they who fear not God, nor take care for their own salvation, will have most respect to the outward estate of their children, and be most careful to make them great, and rich in this world? Wherein note how many ways they betray their notorious folly.

1. They prefer the outward estate of their children before the eternal salvation of their own souls. Yea and before God himself.

2. They place the happiness of their children in the goods of this world; then which nothing more vain (Prov 23:5).

3. They make themselves drudges to their children, and so debase themselves below that dignity which by reason of God's image on them, appertaineth to them.

4. They with much pains, care, grief, and fear are long gathering that which their children in short time most riotously and prodigally will lavish out.

5. They make themselves vassals to Satan and seek by him to be made rich: whereas indeed *it is the blessing of God that maketh rich* (Prov 10:22). Thus they take a wrong course to get wealth. If it be said that many are thus made rich, I answer, that as God gave a King to Israel (Hosea 13:11), so he giveth wealth to them, *in wrath*: and *in wrath* will he take it away.

6. They bring God's curse into their house, and leave it unto their children: *So as these are the riches that are reserved to the owners thereof for their evil*. Let not therefore care for children draw thee to any covetous or unjust courses: but know that he who made thy son made thee also, and he who afforded thee means of nourishment, will also afford thy children sufficient succour.

8. Of parents' providence for their children.

The *head*, whereunto all the particular duties, which parents owe to their children, may be referred, is *A provident care for their children's good*. This extendeth itself to *all times*, and to *all things*.

To *all times*, as to the infancy, youth, and man-age of their children: and that not only while parents live, but after their departure.

To *all things*, namely, tending both to the *temporal good* of their children, and also to their *spiritual good*.

Children are of the very substance of their parents, and therefore ought parents so far to see their children's good as their own.

The patterns of holy parents recorded and commended in Scripture, do lively set forth this provident care.

But this general we will exemplify in the particulars: and in order declare how parents must provide both for the temporal, and also for the spiritual good of their children in every degree of their age.

They who at any time in any thing are negligent and careless of their children's good, offend in the *contrary* to this general duty. The heinousness of which offences will appear in the particulars.

9. Of a mother's care over her child while it is in her womb.

The first age of a child is the infancy thereof. I will therefore first shew how therein parents must procure the *temporal* good of their children, and then their *spiritual* good.

The first part of a child's *infancy* is while it remaineth in the mother's womb. Here therefore the duty lieth principally upon the mother: who, so soon as she perceiveth a child to be conceived in her womb, ought to have an especial care thereof, that [so much as in her lieth] the children may be safely brought forth. [The heathen Philosopher, by light of nature, observed this to be a duty; and prescribed it to mothers.] A mother then must have a tender care over herself when she is with child: for the child being lodged in her, and receiving nourishment from her [as plants from the earth] her well-being tendeth much to the good and safety of the child: but the hurt that cometh to her, maketh the child the worse, if it be not a means to destroy it. Why was the charge of *abstaining from wine, strong drink, and unclean things* (Judg 13:4), given to *Manoah's* wife, but because of the child which she conceived?

In this case there is a double bond to make mothers careful of themselves. 1. Their *own*, 2. Their *child's* good.

Husbands also in this case must be very tender over their wives, and helpful to them in all things needful, both in regard of that duty which they owe to their wives, and also of that they owe to their children. Why was *Manoah* so desirous to hear himself the forenamed direction which the Angel gave to his wife? and why did the Angel again repeat it to him, but to shew it belonged to him to see her observe it?

They who through violence of passion, whether of grief, or anger, or through violent motion of the body, as by dancing,

striving, running, galloping on horseback, or the like: or through distemper of the body, by eating things hurtful, by eating too much, by too much abstinence, by too much bashfulness in concealing their desires and longings [as we speak] cause any abortion or miscarriage, fall into the offence contrary to the forenamed duty. If women were persuaded that in conscience they are bound to the forenamed duty, they would, I think, be more careful of themselves. For if through their default, they themselves or their child miscarry, they make themselves guilty of that miscarriage: if both miscarry, they make themselves guilty of the blood of both; at least in the court of conscience before God.

But they who purposely take things to make away their children in their womb, are in far higher degree guilty of blood: yea even of willful murder. For that which hath received a soul formed in it by God, if it be unjustly cast away, shall be revenged.

So far forth as husbands are careless of their wives being with child, denying them things needful, they are accessory to the hurt, which the woman, or child taketh, guilty of the sin, and liable to the judgment.

10. *Of providing things needful for the child, so soon as it is born: and of cruelty contrary thereunto.*

The next degree of a child's infancy, is while it is in the swaddling bands, and remaineth a sucking child. In this also the care especially lieth upon the mother: yet so as the father must afford what help he can.

The first duty here required is, that sufficient provision of all things needful for a child in that weakness be beforehand provided. What the particulars be, women better know, than I can express. For me, it is sufficient, to lay down the duty in general: which is commended unto us in that worthy pattern of the virgin *Mary*, who though she were very poor, and forced to travel far, and brought to bed in a strange place, where she was so little respected, as she was not afforded a place meet for a woman in her case, but was fain to content herself with a stable in a common inn, yet she provided for her child. For it is said, *She wrapped him in swaddling clothes* (Luke 2:7).

Contrary is the practice of such lewd and unnatural women, as leave their new-born children under stalls, at men's doors, in Church porches, yea many times in open field. It is noted as a point of unnaturalness in the ostrich, *to leave her eggs in the earth, and in the dust*: in which respect she is said to be *hardened against her young ones, as though they were not hers* (Job 39:14,16). Much more hardened are the foresaid lewd woman. The eagle is counted an unnatural bird, because she thrusteth her young ones, which she hath brought forth, out of her nest. Are not then such mothers much more unnatural? They oft lay their children forth in public places, for others to shew that mercy, which they themselves have not. The civil law judgeth this to be a kind of murder.

11. *Of giving suck to children.*

Among other needful things, the milk of the breast is fit for young babes, and with it they are to be nourished. I think none doubt of the equity of this. It hath in all ages, and in all countries, been accounted the best food that can be for young babes. The metaphor, which *S. Peter* useth, taken from young infants [in the words, *As new-born babes desire the sincere milk of the word* (1 Peter 2:2)] confirmeth as much. So doth also the desire which such infants have to the milk of the breasts: and the ability, and promptness which is in them to suck: and God's providence in causing a woman's breasts to yield forth such milk: and the constant manner of nourishing little infants after this manner, commended in the Scripture: and [to conclude] the natural instinct which many unreasonable creatures have thus to nourish their young ones.

They who on mere curiosity [where no urgent necessity requireth] try whether their children may not as birds be nourished without suck, offend contrary to this duty; and reject that means which God hath ordained as the best: and so oppose their shallow wit to his unsearchable wisdom.

12. *Of mothers giving suck to their own children.*

Of nourishing children with breast milk, there is no great question: therefore I have with a touch passed it over. The chiefest question of doubt is concerning the party who is bound to this duty; namely, whether the mother be bound to do it herself or no.

Many strong arguments there be to press it upon the consciences of mothers, and to shew that [so far as they are able] they are bound to give suck to their own children. Some are taken from the light of God's word; and some from the light of nature.

God's word doth in many places by just consequence imply, that it is a bounden duty: in other places it doth expressly commend it by the practice of holy women: and again in other places it taketh it for a granted truth, and ruled case, not to be denied.

I. The consequences whereby the word implieth this duty are these:

1. In the blessing given to *Joseph* thus speaketh old *Jacob*, *God shall bless thee with the blessing of the breasts, and of the womb* (Gen 49:25). By the blessing of the womb, what can be meant, but children? By the blessing of the breasts, what, but milk, whereby those children are nourished? As if he had said; I will bless thee with such women, as shall both bear thee children, and also give suck to them which they bear. The consequence then is this: As it is a blessing to have children of a true lawful wife; so to have those children nursed of the same wife their mother.

Object. They have the blessing of breasts that have other women to nurse their children.

Ans. By the same reason it may be said, they have the blessing of the womb who have strange women to bear them children. But the joining of these two branches of blessing together, sheweth that both must be taken in the same kind: so that as the blessing of the womb is to have children of a man's wife, so the blessing of the breasts is to have them nursed of his wife. If it be a blessing for the woman which beareth the child to give it suck, then mothers are bound to perform this duty.

2. It is denounced as a curse, that *women shall have a barren womb and dry breasts* (Hosea 9:14). If it be a curse for women to have dry breasts, then may not women wittingly make them dry: which all mothers do, that give not suck to their children.

3. *Manoah's* wife being promised to bear a son, had this charge given her: *Drink no wine, nor strong drink, &c.* those things were especially hurtful for her milk. It is therefore implied thereby, that she should so order her diet, as she might well nurse her child, and have good milk for him.

4. God by his good providence brought it to pass, that the mother of *Moses* (Exo 2:7) [though she were forced to cast out her child] should nurse her own child. Yea the mother herself was desirous to do it, and therefore appointed her daughter to watch who should take it up. These two circumstances imply that it appertaineth to a mother to nurse her children.

5. The Apostle layeth this down as a note of a good woman, who in her place hath been careful to do her duty, and thereupon fit to do service in God's Church [*If she have nourished her children*, or word for word, *If she have fed her children*] (1 Tim 5:10). Now the proper food for young babes is breast milk, which, by the Apostle's rule, the mother must give.

6. The same Apostle commandeth mothers to *love their children* (Titus 2:4). How can a mother better express her love to her young babe, than by letting it suck of her own breasts? As this is a testimony of love, so it is a means of preferring and increasing love: for daily experience sheweth that mothers love those children best to whom they themselves give suck.

Sum these several consequences together, and we shall find the duty in question to be very strongly enforced thereby.

1. As a blessing it is promised, that mothers shall give suck to the children that they bear.

2. As a curse it is threatened, that women shall not be able to give suck.

3. An Angel gave direction to a mother so to carry herself as she might have store of good milk for the child which she should bear.

4. God by his special providence manifested that the proper mother was the best nurse for a child.

5. It is the note of a good woman to perform this part of her particular calling, namely to nurse her own child.

6. Women ought to do all the best duties of love that they can to their children.

Therefore mothers ought to nurse their own children.

II. Some of the most worthy patterns in whose example this duty is commended to mothers are these.

1. *Sarah* gave suck to *Isaac* (Gen 21:7). This example is to be noted especially of the greater sort: as rich men's wives, honourable men's wives, and the like. For *Sarah* was an honourable woman, a princess, a rich man's wife, a beautiful woman, aged and well grown in years, and a mistress of a family.

Are not these excuses pretended by many mothers for not nursing children themselves?

2. The virgin *Mary* gave suck to *Jesus*. This example is to be noted especially of the meaner sort, for the virgin *Mary* was young, poor, persecuted, forced to remove and fly with her child from country to country. Are not these excuses pretended by other mothers?

These two patterns do not only commend the duty, but also strip all mothers that are negligent therein, of all excuse.

To these may be added the examples of *Hannah* (1 Sam 1:22), of *David's mother* (Psa 22:9), and of many others. What if also I add the example of that true, natural, affectionate mother who stood before *Solomon's* throne to plead for her child? she thus saith of herself, *I arose to give my son suck, &c.* (1 Kings 3:21). If this had not been a good motherly duty, she would not then and there have pleaded it.

III. The places of Scripture which take this duty for a matter granted, and for a ruled case, are such as these.

1. Where *Sarah* saith, *Who would have said to Abram that Sarah should have given children suck* (Gen 21:7)? In this phrase she setteth forth God's blessing in giving *Abram* a son by her. Now in that she expresseth the blessing under this phrase of *giving suck*, she taketh it for grant, that the mother which beareth children must give them suck.

2. Where *David* saith, *thou didst make me hope upon my mother's breasts* (Psa 22:9), he doth not only imply that his mother gave him suck, but by the phrase maketh it a ruled case that the child which sucks must hang upon the mother's breast.

3. Where *Solomon* saith, *O that thou wert as my brother that sucked the breasts of my mother* (Cant 8:1), he taketh it also for grant, that brothers and sisters, as they come out of the same womb, so they should suck the same breasts, even the breasts of her out of whose womb they came, their own mother's breasts.

4. Where the woman said to Christ, *Blessed is the womb that bare thee, and the paps which thou hast sucked* (Luke 11:27), she taketh it for grant [as it was an usual practice in those days] that the paps of that woman, whose womb bear him, gave him suck.

These arguments we have from the light of God's word: other we may have from God's works and the light of nature, as

1. God hath given to women two breasts fit to contain and hold milk: and nipples unto them fit to have milk drawn from them. Why are these thus given? to lay them forth for ostentation? There is no warrant for that in all God's word. They are directly given for the child's food that cometh out of the womb; for till the child be born, there is no milk in the breasts: anon after it is born, milk ordinarily floweth into the breasts: yea a great part of the meat which they eat turneth into milk. They make this admirable work of God's providence to be in vain, that dry up this spring, and suffer not their children to partake of the benefits of it.

2. That nourishment whereon the child fed in the mother's womb, and whereby it was there sustained, turneth into milk, and cometh into the breasts when the child cometh out of the womb. Whence we may gather, that of all women's milk, that woman's milk is fittest for the child, out of whose womb the child came.

3. Together with the milk passeth some smack of the affection and disposition of the mother: which maketh mothers to love such children best as they have given suck unto: yea and oftentimes such children as have sucked their mother's breasts, love their mothers best: yea we may observe many who have sucked other's milk, to love those nurses all the days of their life.

4. Other things are nourished by the same that they are bred. The earth out of which plants grow, ministreth nourishment to the said plants: trees that bring forth fruit yield sap to that fruit, whereby it groweth to ripeness: unreasonable creatures,

and among them the most savage wild beasts, as tigers and dragons, yea sea-monsters give suck to their young ones; whereupon the Prophet saith of women that give not suck to their children, that they are more cruel than those sea-monsters, *Like the ostriches in the wilderness* (Lam 4:3): for the cruel ostrich and the hateful cuckoo are the two kind of creatures which are noted to leave their young ones for others to nourish; the ostrich leaveth her eggs in the dust: the cuckoo leaveth hers in other birds' nests. Other creatures [if nature afford them not milk and dugs, as to birds it doth not] feed their young ones other ways, yet by themselves.

5. Shall I add another argument which daily experience confirmeth, namely God's blessing upon this motherly duty: commonly such children as are nursed by their mothers, prosper best. Mothers are most tender over them, and cannot endure to let them lie crying out, without taking them up and stilling them; as nurses will let them cry and cry again, if they be about any business of their own. For who are commonly chosen to be nurses? even poor country women which have much work to do and little help; and so are forced to let the child lie and cry, many times till it burst again. Children nursed by their mothers are for the most part more cleanly, and neatly brought up, freer from diseases; not so many die; I am sure not so many through negligence cast away. The number of nurse children that die every year is very great. It hath been observed in many country villages, that the most part, that from time to time die there, are nurse children. Are not mothers that might have nursed their own children if they would, accessory to the death of those that are cast away by the nurse's negligence?

On these and other like reasons heathen women, and very savages, have in all ages been moved to nurse their own children: and some heathen philosophers have urged and pressed the necessity of this duty. Never was it more neglected, than among those that bear the name of Christians.

Let mothers know of what rank or degree soever they be, that [out of the case of necessity] they have no warrant to put forth their children to others to nurse. We read not in all the Scripture of any holy women that ever did it.

13. Of the objections for putting children forth to nurse.

1. *Object.* Many nurses are mentioned in Scripture, as *Rebekah's* nurse (Gen 24:59), *Mephibosheth's* nurse (2 Sam 4:4), *Joash* his nurse (2 Kings 11:2), and others.

1. *Answer.* Such nurses mentioned in Scripture were commonly dry nurses. *Rebekah's* nurse went with her before she was married: how can it be thought that she was a milk nurse? Could they tell when *Rebekah* should have a child? or when she had one, that *Deborah* [the nurse there mentioned] (Gen 35:8) should have milk for her? It is said that *Naomi became nurse to Ruth's child* (Ruth 4:16): now *Naomi* was old, long before this she was past child-bearing, without an husband for many years: how then was it possible that she should give suck? She was therefore a dry nurse, as other nurses mentioned in Scripture.

2. *Answer.* The mothers of those children which are said to have nurses [if those nurses were milk nurses] might be dead: or if living, not able to give suck for want of milk, nipple, or for some other like defect: or if able, sin in putting forth their children.

3. *Answer.* Though it be said that there were nurses, yet is it no where said, that a mother put forth her child to suck.

2. *Object.* *Pharaoh's* daughter put forth the child which she took for her own to nurse (Exod 2:7).

1. *Answer.* She bare not this child, nor was the natural mother of it, so as this is nothing to the purpose. Yea it maketh against the objectors, in that the true mother of this child nursed it.

3. *Object.* The metaphor taken from nurses is oft used, and applied to God (Num 11:12), and to God's ministers (1 Thess 2:7).

1. *Answer.* The using of a thing by way of comparison and resemblance doth not simply justify it: instance the parable of the unfit steward, and of a thief (Luke 16:1).

2. *Answer.* The metaphor may be taken from a dry nurse as well as a milk nurse: for the comparisons are not used of giving suck, but of bearing and carrying in arms, as dry nurses used to carry children.

3. *Answer.* The metaphors are most fitly taken from mothers that are nurses to their own children.

4. *Object.* Many mothers have not such skill in giving suck as nurses have.

1. *Answer.* Let them learn seeing it is their duty.

5. *Object.* Mothers that are of great wealth and high place cannot endure the pain of nursing, nor take the pains in handling young children as they must be handled.

1. *Answer.* The greatest that be must set themselves to do that duty which God requireth at their hands, though it be with pain and pains. Note *Sarah's* example before recorded.

2. *Answer.* By this it appeareth, that if other women could bear their children in the womb nine months, and endure the pain of travail for them, they would hire them to do it. But feeling they do the one [namely bear and bring forth their own children with hard labour] why should they not do the other? If they say there is an unavoidable necessity of bearing and bringing forth their children; I answer, that conscience ought to move them to nurse those children, which necessity forceth them to bring forth. God by this latter of nursing children maketh trial of women whether they will for conscience sake, do that duty which they may if they will put off. But because God knew that many will do no more than necessity layeth upon them, he hath made it a matter of impossibility for women to bear and bring forth their children by another.

3. *Answer.* If women would with cheerfulness set themselves to perform this duty, much of the supposed pain and pains would be lessened.

4. *Answer.* Though they put not forth their children to nurse, they may for their ease entertain a nurse, so they give suck themselves.

6. *Object.* A mother that hath a trade, or that hath the care of an house, will neglect much business by nursing her child: and her husband will save more by giving half a crown a week to a nurse, than if his wife gave the child suck.

1. *Answer.* No outward business appertaining to a mother can be more acceptable to God than the nursing of her child: this is the most proper work of her special calling, therefore all other business must give place to this, and this must not be left for any other business.

As for the husband's saving by putting the child forth to nurse, no gain may give a dispensation against a bounden duty.

7. *Object.* It will break tender fair women, and make them look old too soon.

1. *Answer.* God's ordinance must not give place to women's niceness. *Sarah* was fair and old: the virgin *Mary* was fair and young.

2. *Answer.* Drying up a woman's milk will more break her, than her child's sucking of it: for it is a means both of better health, and also of greater strength, as to bear children, so to give them suck. Barren women and bearing women which put forth their children to suck, are most subject to sickness and weakness. The drawing forth of a woman's milk by her child is a means to get and preserve a good stomach, which is a great preservative of good health.

8. *Object.* Husbands are disturbed in the night time, and hindered of their sleep by their wives' giving suck to their children.

1. *Answer.* By this reason neither mothers nor other nurses which have husbands, should give suck to children.

2. *Answer.* Seeing children come from the loins of the father, as well as out of the womb of the mother, they must be content to endure some disturbance as well as their wives, and so much the rather that they may the more pity their wives, and afford unto them what help they can.

9. *Object.* Many husbands will not suffer their wives to nurse their children themselves.

1. *Answer.* Because it is a bounden duty, wives must use all the means they can by themselves or others to persuade their husbands to let them perform it: they must take heed that they make not this a pretext to cover their own sloth, and loathness

to this duty: they may not make themselves accessory to their husband's fault by providing a nurse, and sending the child away themselves: if their husbands will stand upon their authority, and be persuaded by no means to the contrary, they must be mere patients in suffering the child to be taken away.

10. *Object.* Many poor women maintain their house by nursing other folks' children.

1. *Answer.* If they were not that way employed, they might take pains in some other thing. But the gain of one may not make another neglect her duty.

11. *Object.* Some mothers cannot give suck, they have no milk: others cannot very well, in that they have no nipples, or they have sore breasts, or are sickly, or it may be that they have such a disease, as the child, if it should suck of their milk, would draw to itself, and so the sucking might prove very dangerous to the child.

1. *Answer.* God requireth no impossibilities: wherefore in propounding the duty I put in this caution *so far as they are able*.

2. *Answer.* God requireth *mercy and not sacrifice* (Hosea 6:6; Matt 9:12): if therefore in truth it be so that the mother's giving suck to the child will be dangerous to herself or to the child, she may and ought to forbear: for giving suck is but as *sacrifice* to preventing of danger, which is *mercy*. But women must take heed that they pretend not inability, and danger without just cause. Some are themselves the cause of wanting milk because they will not let it be drawn down; or because they will not use means [for means there are] to get and increase milk. There are means also to raise nipples where the breasts are very flat. Refusing to give suck many times causeth some sickishness in a woman, and sore breasts, which might be prevented with the child's sucking. If the soreness be only in the nipples, a mother with enduring a little more pain may safely give the child suck. Many mothers have given their children suck when blood hath run by the mouth of the child by reason of sore nipples, and yet both mother and child done very well.

12. *Object.* Divers children being nursed by the mother have died one after another.

1. *Answer.* Due and thorough search must be made by those that are skillful: and if any cause be found in the mother, then the rule holdeth, *Mercy and not sacrifice*: but if none can be found, the issue must be referred to God's providence: and the uncertain event must not be an hindrance to a known duty.

Thus the answering of the forenamed objections maketh the point so much the more clear.

14. Of the father's duty in encouraging his wife to nurse her child.

The duty which on a father's part in this respect is required, is that he encourage his wife, and help her with all needful things for the performance of this duty. It is noted of *Elkanah*, that he suffered his wife to tarry at home while she gave suck to her son, and would not force her to go up to the tabernacle as his other wife did, but gave her all the ease and content he could, saying to her, *Do what seemeth thee good* (1 Sam 1:23). And of *Abraham* it is noted, that after *Sarah* had done giving the child suck, *he made a great feast, even the day that Isaac was weaned* (Gen 21:8): one end whereof was to testify his rejoicing for God's blessing on her motherly duty so well performed.

15. Of the faults contrary to a mother's nursing her child.

Contrary to this duty do all such mothers offend, as for any by-respects when no necessity requireth put forth their children to be nursed by others.

1. Some do it for ease and quiet, because they cannot endure to have their sleep broken, or to hear their child wrangle and cry.

2. Others do it for niceness, because they are loath to open their breasts, or to soil their clothes.

3. Others upon pride, conceiting that their beauty would be impaired, and they look old too soon.

4. Others upon gain, because they can have a child cheaper nursed abroad than at home, where, at least, they must hire a maid the more.

5. Others upon pleasure, that they might more freely ride abroad, and meet their gossips.

6. Others upon other by-respects: all which do argue much self-love: little love to their child, and little respect to God. They can be counted but half-mothers: for nursing a child is as much as bearing and bringing it forth.

16. *Of a father's fault in hindering his wife's nursing of her child.*

To the forenamed fault of mothers do all such fathers make themselves accessory, as forbid their wives to nurse their children, or are a grief to them by their complaints of trouble, disquiet and expense: or afford not things needful, or do not encourage them all they can to do it. The mother's both pain and pains is the greatest: it is in comparison but a small thing that fathers can endure therein. Their fault therefore must needs be the greater, if any way they be an occasion of their child's putting forth to nurse: which I have the rather noted, because husbands for the most part are the cause that their wives nurse not their own children: and that partly by suffering, and partly by egging them on to put out their children. If husbands were willing that their wives should perform this duty, and would persuade and encourage them thereto, and afford them what helps they could, where one mother now nurseth her child, twenty would do it.

17. *Of parents' joint care about their children's baptism.*

There is a further duty to be performed of parents to their children even in their infancy, and that is in regard of their *spiritual good*, which is this,

Parents ought to procure that their children be rightly baptized in due season.

This is indeed a common duty appertaining to both parents, but most principally to the father, and that for two reasons.

1. The father is the chief and principal Governour, and hath the greatest charge: accordingly he ought to have the greatest care even in such matters as are common to both.

2. The mother at that time by reason of her travail and delivery is weak, and not in case to have her head much troubled with many cares; much less able herself to take order for such weighty matters. Only the husband is to make known to his wife [if she be not extraordinarily weak] what his purpose is concerning the place, time, manner, and other like circumstances of baptizing the child, and to advise with her about the name, witnesses, and such like points. And if the husband be too backward and negligent, the wife ought so far as she is able to put him in mind of his duty therein, and to stir him up by herself or some other to perform it.

18. *Of the reasons to move parents to see their children baptized.*

That parents are bound to procure baptism for their children these reasons declare.

1. The *commandment of God* concerning circumcising children: in the room whereof baptism succeedeth now under the Gospel (Col 2:11,12) God's commandment to this duty was first given to *Abraham*: and that for himself and all his posterity to observe (Gen 17:10). After this it was in the law laid down as a positive statute (Lev 12:3).

2. The *practice of the Jews* in a faithful and constant observance of this ordinance: as of *Abraham* (Gen 21:4); of *Zachary* and *Elizabeth* (Luke 1:59): of *Joseph* and *Mary* (Luke 2:21), and many others.

Object. The children which were born in the wilderness were not circumcised (Josh 5:5).

Answ. They had no abiding place in the wilderness, but were ever and anon removing: so as it would have been dangerous for the children to have been circumcised: in that extraordinary case this rule took place, *I will have mercy and not sacrifice* (Matt 12:7).

3. The *practice of Christians* (Acts 16:15,33), who believing were themselves and their whole household baptized. Under *whole household* children must needs be comprised.

4. *Christ's embracing and blessing* such children as were brought to him: and *rebuking* those that would have kept them from him (Matt 19:13).

5. The *promise of God* made to them (Gen 17:7): for seeing God is so gracious as to extend his promise to our children (Acts 2:39): our care must be to procure the seal which God offereth for the confirmation of that promise.

6. The *right they have to God's Kingdom* (Matt 19:14). Baptism is an evidence of that their right. It is a parent's duty to get them that evidence. If children have just title to any lands and revenues, or to any earthly honours and dignities, parents will do what they can to make that title sure unto them even in their infancy: much more careful should they be to make that rich and glorious inheritance, which is in heaven reserved for them, as sure unto them as they can: now no better means for the effecting of this than baptism.

7. Their *conception and birth in sin* (Psa 51:5). Children drew contagion from their parents: therefore great reason it is that their parents should see them washed with the water of regeneration.

8. The *comfort* which from the performance of this duty will arise to Christian parents, yea and to the children also themselves when they come to the age of understanding. When parents behold the covenant of God surely sealed and confirmed to their children, they cannot [if at least they bear any love to their children] but much rejoice therein. And it must needs also much comfort the child when [being of understanding] he shall know that from his infancy he hath carried the seal and pledge of his regeneration.

9. The constant continued *custom* of the true catholic Church, which ever since the Apostle's time hath afforded the sacrament of baptism to children.

19. Of parents procuring their children to be rightly baptized.

There being such forceable motives to stir up parents to perform the duty, [which motives shew it to be a weighty duty] I will further shew how this duty ought to be performed.

Two things in children's baptism ought to be observed.

1. That it be *rightly* done.
2. That it be *seasonably* done.

In the *right* performance thereof, some things are *necessary*, and some *expedient*.

Things of *necessity* are these especially:

1. That the child be baptized by a *Minister* of the word (Matt 28:19).
2. That it be baptized with the element of water: the only element sanctified to this purpose (John 3:5).
3. That the form prescribed by Christ be used, *In the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost* (Matt 28:19): whereby the unity of the Godhead, and trinity of Persons is plainly set forth.
4. That the proper rite be used of applying the water to the body of the child, so as at least the face of the child may be sprinkled therewith.

Things of *expediency* are,

1. That the child be baptized in a public place, where God's people ordinarily meet together, being set apart for the worship and service of God.
2. That such a time be chosen out, as an assembly of Saints may be there present.

These two circumstance are the rather to be observed, because baptism is one of the solemn parts of God's public worship; a pledge of our incorporation into the body of Christ, and communion of his Saints, and therefore with the more solemnity, [as a matter of great moment] before many witnesses, with the assistance of the faithful prayers of an assembly of Saints, to be performed.

20. *Of parents' care to give a fit name to their child at his baptism.*

A third matter of great expediency about a child's baptism, is, that *Parents be careful in giving a fit name.*

It belongeth to parents to give the name to their child: for so holy parents [whose pattern in Scripture is in this respect commended unto us] have done from time to time: and for their warrant to do it, it is worthy to be noted, that when God was pleased to appoint a name to a child, he gave in charge to the parent so to name him, saying to him, *Thou shalt call his name* thus and thus (Gen 17:19; Matt 1:21; Luke 1:13).

It is also evident, that the time of baptism is the fittest time for giving the name. Under the Law, children's names were given at their circumcision (Luke 1:59; 2:21): and so under the Gospel it hath in all ages been used: and that for these reasons.

1. That their names may be a testimony of their baptism.
2. That so oft as they hear their names, they may be put in mind of their baptism.
3. That they might know how by name they are given to Christ to be his soldiers, and therefore there must be no starting from him.
4. That they may also be assured, that being baptized with water and the Spirit, by name they are registered in heaven.

Now because names are so solemnly given, and of so good use, most meet it is that fit names should be given to children. And for proof hereof, let the names which in Scripture are recorded to be given by God himself, and by such holy men and women as were guided by his Spirit, be observed; and we shall find them to be holy, sober, and fit names.

For direction to parents in this duty, I will set down some sorts and kinds of names as be fit, and beseeming Christians.

1. Names which have some good signification: and among them such as are warranted by the Scripture, as *John* [the grace of God], *Jonathan* [the gift of God], *Andrew* [manly], *Clement* [meek], *Simeon* [obedient], *Hannah* [gracious], *Prudence* [wife] and such like: that thus their name may stir them up to labour after the virtue signified thereby.
2. Names which have in times before us been given to persons of good note, whose life is worthy our imitation, as *Isaac*, *David*, *Peter*, *Mary*, *Elizabeth* and such like: that the names may move them to imitate those worthies.
3. Names of our own and ancestors and predecessors, to preserve a memory of the family: which appeareth to have been an ancient practice even among God's people, in that the friends would have had *Zachariah's* son named *Zachariah* (Luke 1:59); and when the mother had just cause to name him *John* they answer, *none of thy kindred is called by his name.*
4. Usual names of the country, which custom hath made familiar, as *Henry*, *Edward*, *Robert*, *William* and such like among us.

21. *Of parents' care in bringing their children to be baptized in due season.*

Though Christians are not so strictly tied to a set day, as the Jews were to the eighth day; yet from that strict direction given to the Jews, we may well gather, that it is not meet for Christians to defer the baptizing of their children beyond eight days: for a young child of that age may with more ease, and less danger, be baptized, than circumcised.

The most seasonable time I take to be the day whereon God's people use in the place where the child is born, publicly to assemble together to worship God next after the birth of the child, if at least it fall not out within two or three days after, which is somewhat with the soonest both for mother and child.

Whether we respect the honour of God [the riches of whose mercy is lively set forth in the sacrament of baptism] or the good of our child [which in that sacrament receiveth a pledge and seal of that rich mercy of God] baptism is of great consequences and therefore the first season of performing it to be taken. For parents by their diligence and due speed therein, give evidence both of their zeal to God's glory, and also of their earnest desire of the child's spiritual good.

22. *Of parents' faults in neglecting their children's baptism.*

Contrary to the forenamed duty of parents about well baptizing their children, are many aberrations, as

1. The corrupt opinion of Anabaptists, who deny the lawfulness of baptizing children. The arguments before noted are sufficient to stop their mouths.
2. The practice of Separatists [coming too near to Anabaptism] who excepting against the ministry and orders of our Church, do what they can to keep their children from that Sacrament. And to that end carry their wives ready to be delivered unto a strange place, where they are not known, and anon after they are delivered, privily convey wife, child, and all away, that so the Magistrate may not, against their will, cause their child to be baptized: and having no ministry of their own, nor means to convey the child over sea, keep it many years unbaptized. Where is the evidence of their faith in God's promise, of their respect to God's ordinance, and of their desire of their child's spiritual good? Though it be a great wrong to children to be kept from baptism, yet the sin lieth on such parents as procure not baptism for their children especially at that age when their children cannot gainsay it.
3. The perverse opinion and practice of certain ancient heretics, who instead of baptizing children with water, had them branded with an hot iron. They grounded their error on a false interpretation of this phrase [*he shall baptize with the Holy Ghost and with fire*].
 1. *Answer.* They err in taking this word [fire] literally and properly, which was meant mystically and metaphorically.
 2. *Answer.* They err in applying that to the outward action of a Minister, which was meant of the inward operation of Christ. By this their misinterpretation they thwart the main scope of him who first used that phrase, which was to manifest the difference betwixt all other Ministers and Christ Jesus.
4. The opinion and practice of those, who use other forms of Baptism, besides this, [*In the name of the Father, and of the Son, and of the Holy Ghost*]. Their opinion and practice is grounded on certain concise phrases used by the Apostles: such as these, *Baptized in the name of Jesus Christ* (Acts 2:38): *In the name of the Lord* (Acts 10:48): *In the name of the Lord Jesus* (Acts 19:5), &c.
 1. *Answer.* Those phrases rather set forth the very substance and inward matter of baptism, than the form thereof.
5. Their opinion and practice, who care not by whom their children are baptized, whether heretics, idolaters, laics, or women: Little do they regard the comfort of conscience, and strength of faith, that ariseth from this; that a lawful Minister in God's room and name, as God's ambassador, putteth the seal of God to his covenant.
6. The practice of those as [I know not upon what niceness or state] must have their children baptized at home in their private house. This manner of baptizing taketh away much from the honour of that high ordinance, which ought to be done with all the seemly solemnity that may be.
7. Their practice who bring their child to Church to be baptized, accompanied only with the midwife, and three witnesses. It were almost as good be baptized in a private house: for it is not the walls of the Church, but the assembly of Saints, that addeth to the honour of the Sacrament, and is most of all to be respected.
8. Their practice who upon state, or for great witnesses, or such by-respects put off the baptizing of their children longer than is meet, some, two or three weeks, some, two or three months, some longer: whereby they shew too light esteem of this sacrament, in that they prefer mere complemental circumstances before a matter of so great moment. God oft sheweth his just indignation against such, in taking away their children unbaptized before the time set down by them for baptism be come.

9. Their practice who care not what heathenish, idolatrous, ridiculous names they give to their children. What respect do they shew either to God in whose name their child is baptized, or to the holy sacrament itself, or to the congregation of Saints before whom the name is given, or to the child itself who all his life is to carry that name?

23. Of parents providing things needful for the life and health of their children.

Hitherto of the duties of parents respecting their children's infancy. Such as respect their childhood follow.

Many distinguish the whole course of a man's life into four parts. 1. Childhood, 2. Youth, 3. Man-age and 4. Old-age.

Childhood from his birth to 14 years. Youth from 14 to 25. Man-age from 25 to 50. Old age from thence to his death.

But for better distinguishing the duties which parents are to perform, I follow not so accurate a division, but rather distinguish the degrees of age according to the times wherein new duties are to be performed: and therefore I make a distinction betwixt infancy and childhood.

The childhood of a child is reckoned from the time that it beginneth to be of any discretion and understanding till it be fit to be placed forth: even so long as ordinarily it liveth under the parent's government.

The duties which parents for this time must perform to their children may be drawn to these two heads.

1. Care to bring them up.

2. Care to place them forth. For their well training up, respect must be had both to their *temporal* and also to their *spiritual* good.

Two things are required of parents, in regard of the *temporal* good of their children.

1. To *nourish* them well.

2. To *nurture* them well.

Children must be well *fed* and *taught*.

Feed them in discipline, saith the Apostle.

Under *nourishment* are comprised all needful things for *health* and *life*: which parents ought to provide for their children, as

1. *Food*, which Christ taketh for a ruled case. Whence he draweth his argument to shew that God will provide for his children. *What father [saith he] if his son ask him bread would give him a stone, &c.* (Matt 7:9-11).

2. *Apparel*, for it is expressly noted, that Israel made his son a coat (Gen 37:3).

3. *Recreation*, which in young children especially is needful for their health. In that *Zachary* told the Jews, and that in way of blessing, that *boys and girls should be playing in the streets*, he implieth that it is a lawful and meet thing, which parents should permit unto their children. But yet the time, and measure, and kind of recreation must be well ordered.

4. *Means for recovery of health* when they are sick: for this end was it, that *Jeroboam* sent his wife to the Prophet, in behalf of his son who was sick (1 Kings 14:2): that the Ruler came to Christ for his son also who was at point of death (John 4:47); and that many others came to him for their sons and daughters being ill.

Whatsoever other things are needful, parents to their power must provide for their children; else the Apostle counteth them worse than infidels (1 Tim 5:8).

Both equity and necessity require thus much of parents.

Equity, in that children own all their pains and service to their parents while they are under them, and are wholly at their command, and in that regard have no means to provide needful things but by their parents' help. Parents therefore in all right must herein be helpful to them.

Necessity, in that, if the life and health of children be not well provided for, no duty, no service can be expected at their hands.

24. *Of parents' too much niggardliness, and carelessness toward their children.*

There are two extremes contrary to the forenamed provident care of parents for their children's good:

In the *defect*, Covetousness.

In the *excess*, Lavishness.

Some parents so far fail in the *defect*, as they almost starve their children through want of necessaries: not affording them sufficient wholesome food, nor meet and comely apparel, but suffer them to go tagged and ragged like beggars' brats: if they be sick, God may recover them if he please, but the parents will use no means when they are well, they afford them no time of refreshing themselves by any recreation, but over-strictly hold them in. There is not only want of charity, but plain unnaturalness in such parents: even more than in the most cruel beasts. For the wild beasts do with much tenderness provide for their young ones.

25. *Of parents' too much lavishness and indulgency upon their children.*

Others surpass as much in the *excesses*, feeding them too daintily: attiring them too garishly: tending them too cockeringly: and letting them spend too much time in sport and play. Many and great are the mischiefs that follow thereupon: as

1. They who are in their childhood daintily fed, and too much pampered, besides that for the most part they are most sickly, they will in time grow so squeamish, and choice of meats, as their parents shall not know what to provide for them, or when to give it them: *The full soul loatheth an honeycomb* (Prov 27:7): yea if a stranger cometh to the table, where such a child sitteth, he may soon observe that he hath been too daintily fed. If at first children be fed with ordinary moderate diet, they will afterwards both be in better health and liking, and also more contentedly, and thankfully accept whatsoever shall be provided for them. But excess breedeth diseases both in body and mind.

2. Vanity in apparel doth also much corrupt young children: for there is in them even from the cradle a natural disposition to outward bravery: now for parents to prank them up, what is it but to blow up the fire of that vanity, and make it arise into such a flame as in time may much scorch the parents themselves, and utterly consume the children: and yet how usual a fault is this? how monstrously do many parents offend therein? what foolish fashion is used of the greatest swaggerers, and lightest strumpets, which they will not bring their children unto, and that when their children are not able to discern betwixt stuffs or colours? what can this proclaim but parents' pride and folly? Proud maids are many times the instruments of pranking up children [especially when they are little ones] more than is meet: but yet the blame lieth on parents for suffering it.

3. Tending children too cockishly maketh them too long children, and too tender: and oft altereth a good constitution of body. Some are so overmuch tender of their children, as if a child never so little complain, or refuse the meat [though for daintiness or fullness] the physician must presently be sent for, and the apothecary sent unto, and the child with supposed and apish kindness made much worse.

4. Too much sport maketh them wild, rude, unfit to be trained up to any good calling, and spendeth their spirits, and wasteth their strength too much. Yet many parents care not how much time their children spend in sport, and how little in learning: they think it dulls their children too much to be held to school, or to any learning: whereas indeed too much play infatuates them more, and learning would much sharpen their wits.

26. *Of well nurturing children.*

I refer good nurture in part to the temporal good of children, because [as afterwards we shall hear in the particulars] it is an

especial means of the outward temporal welfare of the child even in this world. Unless this be added to *nourishing* wherein do reasonable men and women exceed unreasonable beasts? The most cruel beasts that be are very tender [as we heard before] towards their young ones, nourishing them, and providing all things needful for them till they can shift for themselves. But as God hath given to man a reasonable soul, and understanding head, capacity, docility and aptness to learn, so ought parents to make use of those parts and gifts, lest for want of using them, in time they be lost: and so children prove little better than brutes. In this respect the proverb is true, *better be unfed than untaught*. Experience sheweth that good education is better than a great portion. The Holy Ghost doth very much press this point on parents, as we shall after hear in the particulars. For I will handle these three points.

1. The *kinds* of nurture.
2. The *time* when it is to be done.
3. The *means* of well doing it.

27. Of parents' neglect in nurturing children.

Contrary to good nurture is too much liberty: which oft bringeth much woe, and utter ruin upon children: it is the greatest enemy that can be of good education, and the nurse of all vice. Yet many parents care not to let their children live as they list: all the care they take, is that they be fed and appareled. This is a common fault both of rich, and of poor parents. The rich pretend that their children need no education, because they have enough to leave them: not knowing that education is an especial means to make them keep and well use *that enough*. The poor pretend that they are not able to bring up their children to any thing: not considering that the Lord by his providence hath so ordered the affairs of men, that as there are fit employments for the greatest, so also for the meanest, which without much cost may be used. The fault therefore wholly resteth in the negligence of parents. And if thereupon children fall into any riot, their parents shall answer for it.

28. Of parents teaching their children good manners.

The nurturing of children before mentioned consisteth

1. In teaching them good manners.
2. In training them up to a good calling.

Not only heathen men, and other moralists which were but mere natural civil men, but also the Holy Ghost himself hath prescribed many rules of good manners, and much urged and pressed the same.

1. The word *nurture* (see Treatise 1, Section 119) mentioned by the Apostle in this text which we have in hand, implieth as much: and the phrase which *Solomon* useth, *Train up a child in the way he should go* (Prov 22:6): that is, teach him how to order the course of his life.
2. The many precepts of reverencing our superiours, and carrying ourselves with respect one to another, are rules of good manners. Hereof there be very many in Scripture (Lev 19:32; Prov 25:6; Luke 14:8).
3. Those rules are commended by many examples of holy men recorded in Scripture (Gen 23:7; 43:33; Job 32:4,6).
4. Such as have failed in the rules of good manners, and rudely carried themselves, are reproved by the Holy Ghost (Job 30:1,12; Luke 14:7).

Neither is it without good reason that this point is so set forth. For

1. *Good manners* are a very comely and seemly thing. But it beseemeth Christians to *do all things decently* (1 Cor 14:40). That *decency* is not only to be applied to the affairs of God's Church, but also to the whole course of our life, in which respect we are commanded to *walk decently* (Rom 13:13; 1 Thess 4:12), that is, to order all our actions and the whole course of our life mannerly.

2. They are a thing of good report, and that both to parents and children: Now we must do *all things that are of good report* (Phil 4:8).

3. They work a kind of delight, and love, and admiration, in those that behold them, as is noted of the Queen of Sheba when she beheld the comely carriage of *Solomon's* servants (1 Kings 10:5): and of the Egyptians when they beheld the orderly sitting of *Joseph's* brethren (Gen 43:33).

4. They are an outward ornament to piety and religion, and make it to be much more respected: in which respect *S. Peter* exhorted believing wives well to order their conversation before infidel husbands (1 Peter 3:1): and *S. Paul* exhorteth all sorts of Christians to *walk decently toward them that are without* (1 Thess 4:12). The Holy Ghost having thus urged the point of *good manners*, we may not think is a mere complemental matter, and a needless point, but a bounden duty.

29. Of the objections against good manners.

1. *Object.* Religion and grace consisteth not in *good manners*: many that have not a spark of God's fear in their hearts, are able to carry themselves in their outward behavior very orderly and mannerly.

Answer. Though grace consist not wholly in it, yet cannot grace well be without it: it is a great ornament and comeliness thereunto. And though mannerliness may be severed from a fear of God, yet God's fear will not be severed from it. Restraining grace may be in him who hath no renewing grace: but renewing grace presupposeth restraining grace, even as reason presupposeth sense, though sense may be without reason. If such as fear not God can carry themselves comely and mannerly, what a shame is it for such as seem to fear God, not to do so? shall not *those* be a witness against *these*?

2. *Object.* Good manners are an hindrance to grace: they who are most diligent in teaching or practicing the one, are commonly most negligent in the other.

Answer. This is a mere cavil. Sure I am that grace is no hindrance to good manners. If any make good manners an hindrance to grace, it is their fault.

3. *Object.* *Good manners* to *grace* are as mint, anise and cumin, to the great and weighty things of the law.

Answer. Grant it to be so: yet seeing both may stand together, why should they be severed? Christ's rule is this, *Those things ought ye to have done, and not to leave the other undone* (Matt 23:23).

4. *Object.* Many that make great shew of religion are very rude, and unmannerly.

Answer. If there be only a shew of religion in them, no marvel that they have no manners. If some examples of such as are truly religious and want good manners should be shewed, their pattern is no precedent, much less can it prove that to be no duty which God's word hath set down for a duty. Many that well perform some duties, much fail in other duties. Who almost followeth God's Word as he should in every thing?

30. Of parents suffering their children to be rudely brought up.

Contrary to parents' care in teaching their children good manners, is dissoluteness: when parents suffer their children to grow up in rudeness, not caring how they carry themselves at home or abroad, toward their parents, or toward others. Rude bringing up maketh children to be of a crooked, perverse, stubborn, churlish, surly, doggish disposition; as on the other side, good nurture in this kind breedeth ingenuity, amiableness, courtesy, and kindness. If such as are rudely brought up be children of professors of the true religion, they bring a stain upon their profession: yea they dishonour God, as if he were the author of unmannerliness and confusion, against which the Holy Ghost protecteth (1 Cor 14:33): and they make themselves and their children a scorn in the eye and mouth of profane persons, who will be ready to point and say, *Behold the children of professors, how rudely they are brought up, and ill taught: they have not so much as good manners in them.*

For avoiding this blemish, schoolmasters and all such as have the charge of training up young children, must be an help to parents in teaching children good manners.

31. Of parents training up their children to some good calling.

The second branch of *good nurture* is a training up of children unto a good calling. This charge [*train up a child in the way that he should go* (Prov 22:6)] directly tendeth to this purpose. This duty hath from the beginning of the world been performed by parents, and their performance thereof commended by the Holy Ghost. *Adam* brought up his sons to several callings: one was a *keeper of sheep*, another a *tiller of ground* (Gen 4:2). The like is noted of *Jacob's* sons (Gen 37:12), *Laban's* (Gen 29:9), and *Reuel's* daughters (Exo 2:16), and many others.

Much good may from hence arise to parents themselves, to their children, and to the people and places where such children shall live.

1. A good calling is an especial means for children to maintain themselves and family, to relieve those that stand in need, to ease their parents, and [if the need of parents require it] to relieve and maintain them.
2. It is that *way* wherein God's Angels have a charge to keep them while they walk in it (Psa 91:11).
3. It is a means wherein and whereby they may be serviceable to the Commonwealth where they live.
4. It is the best place wherein the general duties of Christianity may be most manifested, and best performed.
5. It is the best ordinary means that can be prescribed to keep a child from the vanities of youth, from immoderate pursuit of pleasures, from unlawful games, from idleness, from ill company, and such like evils; which, as they are sins in themselves, so occasions and provocations to other most grievous and enormous sins, and prove to be the very bane of youth.

Object. Many parents have good lands to leave to their children: what need is there of a *calling* to such?

1. *Answ.* Much land may soon be consumed by such as have not skill well to use it.
2. *Answ.* Maintenance is but one end of a calling, and that not the chiefest and most principal.
3. *Answ.* More good may be done by skill in a calling, than by great store of land.
4. *Answ.* We are born for others as well as for ourselves: it is not therefore sufficient to say I have enough to maintain myself.

32. Of parents' care in choosing a fit calling for their children.

The point in general being declared to be a duty, I will add some directions for the better performing of it.

1. Children are to be trained up in those things which are the groundwork of all callings, as *reading, writing, and principles of learning*. Whatsoever the particular calling be, these will be of great use to anyone. Many that have not been taught them at first, would give much for them afterwards. Parents at the first might teach their children those things with much ease and small charge, which afterwards cannot be so well learned, partly for want of leisure, and partly because the parts of those who are grown in years are not so fresh and fit to learn, as in childhood they were. Those things are not to be contemned as small, without which great things cannot stand.
2. The calling whereunto children are trained up must be lawful, approved by God's word, and not against the general rules thereof: so may they keep a good conscience in the exercise thereof.
3. The calling must be fit for the child that is trained up to it. As there are divers callings, so there are divers abilities of sundry children: some are fittest for callings of wit and learning: others for callings that require an able and strong body. Wherein the wise disposing providence of God is much commended: for thus are men much more useful one to another. Now for choice of a fit calling, a child's best *ability* wherein especially it consisteth, whether in the exercise of mind or of body, is duly to be observed: and also his inclination, to what calling he is most disposed.
4. Among fit callings [for there may be many] that which is best and the most excellent is to be preferred. To this purpose not unfitly may I apply that of the Apostle, *covet earnestly the best gifts* (1 Cor 12:31).

On this ground let parents be exhorted to train up such children as they find fit, to the great and weighty calling of the ministry: no calling wherein any may do more good, and wherein [if they be able and faithful Ministers] they can receive more comfort and contentment. This exhortation is the more to be regarded, because in comparison of those who are trained up to other callings, so few are trained up to this.

33. Of parents' faults contrary to their duty of training their children up to a calling.

On the contrary, many parents much offend in not training up their children to a calling as they should. And the offence in this kind is committed many ways. As

1. When parents suffer their children to live like little masters at home, and pass over all their youth in idleness. Thus they prove very drones, and caterpillars in the Commonwealth: if they have a patrimony, they soon waste it: if they have none, they oft prove either thieves or beggars: they are fit for all companies: the readiest prey for the devil that can be: for they are like the *house empty, swept and garnished* (Matt 12:44), which when the evil spirit espieth, he presently entereth into it with seven other spirits worse than himself.

The wise lawmaker among the heathen is said to order that the child which by his parents had been taught no art, should not be forced to nourish them though they were old or poor. This I allege not to justify the law [for it is against the Christian rule of overcoming evil with goodness] but to shew how the very heathen judged the neglect of this duty a great fault in parents.

2. When parents neglect to teach their children in their childhood the general and common grounds of all callings: some upon niggardliness; others upon carelessness. Thus poor men make their children unfit for many means, whereby they might well maintain themselves: and rich men make theirs unfit for magistracy, and for good society. Yea poor and rich are thus noursed up the more in ignorance, and made the more unfit to profit by the preaching of the word, and other means of spiritual edification.

3. When parents bring up their children in unwarrantable and unlawful callings, as to be of popish and idolatrous orders; to attend upon papists; to be stage-players, keepers of dice-houses, &c. Some [which is horrible to think of] train up their daughters to be common strumpets: and some [which is yet more horrible] train up their children to be sorcerers and witches. How can they in these keep a good conscience, when the very works of their calling are sin? Is not this to thrust them headlong into hell? They who thus bind their children to the devil's sacrileges are spiritual murderers of them.

4. When parents have no respect at all to the fitness of the calling: as when they train up children of able bodies, but dull and slow capacity, of a stuttering tongue and other like imperfections, to learning, wherein they prove very dunces, and lose all their time, or are not able to make use of the learning which they have: or when they train up children which have a great inclination to learning, and are very fit thereunto, in some other trade, which, after many years spent therein, they are forced to leave.

5. When parents only seek after the most gainful trade, and never think to educate their children most to the honour of God. How can such expect God's blessing upon the means used for their children's good? Hence is it that among papists so many are trained up to Ecclesiastical orders and functions: and so few among Protestants. For there is very great maintenance and revenues for such among papists: but little in comparison among Protestants.

34. Of parents teaching their children piety.

The spiritual good of children, and that in their childhood, is to be procured by parents as well as their temporal. Wherefore *Parents must train up their children in true piety*. This is expressly commanded in my text under this phrase *admonition of the Lord*. Under the law God did both simply command it (Deut 4:9; 6:7; 11:19; Psa 78:5,6), and that very often, and also ordained divers outward rites (Exo 12:26; 13:14), and caused many visible and extraordinary monuments to be set up (Josh 4:6,7,21), that thereby children might be occasioned to ask of their parents the mystery of them, and that parents from that inquiry of their children might take occasion to teach them the ordinances of the Lord (Deut 6:20).

This express charge of the Lord is further commended by that practice which holy parents from time to time have yielded thereunto: instance the examples of *Abraham* (Gen 18:19), *David* (Pro 4:4), *Bathsheba* (Prov 31:1), *Lois* and *Eunice* (2 Tim 1:5), with many others.

1. *Piety* is the best thing that a parent can teach his child: for as reason maketh a man differ from a beast; and as learning and civility maketh a wife and sober man differ from savages and swaggerers; so piety maketh a sound Christian much more to differ from the most civil and well ordered natural man that can be. Learning, civility, calling, portion, are all nothing without piety. Now it is an especial point of wisdom, to seek the best good that we can, as for ourselves, so also for our children: yea this is an evident sign of a parent's true love of his child.

2. There is a necessity that children be taught piety, because they are not born but made Christians: by nature they are utterly destitute of all piety: for by nature *every imagination of the thoughts of man's heart is only evil continually* (Gen 6:5) and in that respect *man is born like the wild ass's colt* (Job 11:12) so as a man were better be unborn than not taught piety.

3. The charge and office of parents bindeth them to teach their children piety: for they are by God made watchmen over their children: if therefore their children live and die in impiety through their parents' negligence, their blood shall be required at their parents' hands: instance the example of *Eli* (1 Sam 3:13).

Object. This duty appertaineth to Ministers.

1. *Answ.* God hath given an express charge hereof to parents, as we heard before.

2. *Answ.* In the family a parent is all in all over his child: a King, a Priest, and a Prophet. Therefore that which a Minister is to do for matter of instruction in the Church, a parent must do at home.

3. *Answ.* Children have need of daily instruction: the parent's pains in this kind must be added to the Ministers: and both are little enough.

4. *Answ.* Parents having more familiarity with their children than Ministers, must needs better know their capacity, and their disposition: and so may better know after what manner to instruct them: whether to give them milk or strong meat, whether to deal mildly or roughly with them.

5. *Answ.* Instructions from parents are commonly more kindly accepted than from others: and children will the better relish them, when they come from their parents. They say that a plant will best grow in the soil out of which it first sprung: so instructions coming from those who both brought us forth, and first brought us up, are like to do most good.

6. *Answ.* There is no such means to breed love in a child's heart, as to be an instrument of bringing piety thereinto. Now who should more seek the true love of a child than a parent? In this respect a parent is more bound to this duty than a Minister.

7. *Answ.* It is impossible, that a Minister, who, it may be, hath many hundred children under his charge, should well instruct them all: It is therefore requisite, that each parent look to his own children.

As the distinct answers satisfy the objection, so they serve as so many more reasons to enforce the duty: wherefore to proceed in adding other reasons.

4. Great equity there is that parents teach their children piety, because they conceived and brought them forth in iniquity (Psa 51:5). If they suffer them to lie and die in that corrupt estate, they are more cruel than the ostrich and dragon.

5. Children are most properly God's: *born to God* (Eze 16:20,21): he is the most proper parent of them: in comparison of God, fathers and mothers of the flesh are but nurses. They must therefore nurture them in *the admonition of the Lord*.

6. Piety is that, which of all other things, will make the child most obedient, and grateful to his parents: for thus there is a double bond to bind him: 1. his birth, 2. his new birth: especially when the cause of the one hath been also the cause of the other.

7. Nothing can more settle the heart of a wise parent on his death-bed concerning his children, than assurance that piety is planted in them: for then may he with stronger confidence commend them to God's providence, and with greater assurance expect his blessing upon them after he is dead.

8. Parents, by teaching their children piety, are an especial means of propagating true religion from age to age, and from generation to generation. No better means can be thought of. For if all parents were careful of their duty in this kind, as there is a succession of children, and thereby a preservation of mankind, so there would be a succession of those that fear God, and thereby a preservation of true religion. My children that are taught by me, may be fathers of children, and so teach that to their children, which they have learned of me: yea after them may grandchildren prove fathers of other children, and they teach their children the same, and so from age to age others after them. This is the means on our part: and in our time we must do our part: and for those who come after us, leave the issue to God.

Not only the great benefit of this point, but also the too much neglect thereof, in most families, hath moved me the longer to insist on it, and the more forcibly to press it. For the better performing thereof, I will add some directions.

35. Of directing parents how to teach their children true piety.

1. Whatsoever principle of piety, parents do teach their children, they must be sure that it be grounded on God's word: thus much this phrase [*admonition of the Lord*] implieth.

Thus shall parents be sure to feed them with good wholesome spiritual food, such as shall make to their spiritual nourishment, and eternal life. In this respect principles of religion grounded on God's word are called *sound* (2 Tim 1:13), or *wholesome*, or *healthful words*: and that both in regard of their matter and substance, and also in regard of their effect; they cause and preserve good, sound, spiritual health. We know that natural men have a care to give their children such food as is wholesome for their body: [*for will a father that is evil, give his child a stone, or a serpent, and not that which is good?* (Matt 7:9-11)]. Conscience must move religious parents, to have the like care of the souls of their children, as nature teacheth all parents to have of their bodies. If parents be careful to draw those principles, wherein they instruct their children, out of God's word, they shall be sure not to poison their souls with any error, heresy, superstition, or idolatry.

2. When children begin to read, let them read the holy Scripture: so was *Timothy* trained up *from a child* (2 Tim 3:15). Thus will children suck in religion with learning: for there is a secret virtue lurking in the holy Scripture [which is God's own Word] more than in any books of men: so as through God's blessing there may by this means be an inward work of grace in children even in their young years. Besides, no books are more easy than many parts of Scripture; and no histories more admirable and delightful, than the histories of the Scripture. It is the advice of an ancient Father, that young children be made acquainted with the words and names of holy Scriptures and that, instead of tales and fables, choice histories of the Bible be made known to them: and that they be instructed in the Proverbs of *Solomon*.

3. Let children be catechized constantly from day to day: *rehearse them continually unto thy children*, saith the Law. That which is *daily* done, is in Scripture said to be done *continually*: as the sacrifice which was daily offered was called a *continual offering*. Here let this *caveat* be noted, that in giving this spiritual food, parents deal with their children, as skillful nurses and mothers do in feeding infants: they will not at once cram more into their mouths, than their stomach is able to digest, but they will rather oft feed them with a little: so it is not meet, that parents be too tedious; that will but dull a child's understanding, and breed wearisomeness, and make it loath to be again instructed: but *precept upon precept, precept upon precept, line upon line, line upon line, here a little, and there a little* (Isa 28:10). Thus shall they learn with ease and delight: and this being oft performed, in time a great measure of knowledge will be gained thereby. If a vessel have a little mouth, we use not to fill it by pouring whole pail-fulls upon it, for so all may be spilt, and it receive little or nothing: but we let the liquor fall in by little and little, according to the capacity of the mouth; so is nothing lost, and the vessel filled the sooner. Thus are children to be dealt withal.

4. To the set times of catechizing children, let other occasions of teaching them piety be added: as at table, by resembling the spiritual food of their souls, to that corporal food, whereby their bodies are nourished: when they are walking abroad, by shewing them the stars, how they remain steadfast in their course; the trees, how they bring forth fruit in their season; how all things are for the use and benefit of man, and thereupon make spiritual uses: note the direction which for this purpose the Law giveth to parents, *Thou shalt talk to thy children of my words, when thou sittest in thine house, and when thou walkest by the way, and when thou liest down, and when thou risest up* (Deut 6:7).

5. Let parents open to their children the mysteries of those outward rites which God hath ordained in his Church, as of *Preaching, baptizing children, administering the Lord's supper, ceasing from work on the Lord's day*, with the like (Exo 12:26; 13:14). This was expressly commanded under the Law. Visible rites are great helps to the weak understanding of children, when they are plainly opened and applied: yea they are also especial means of keeping in memory the mysteries con-

tained under them: as coarse threads or wires are means to preserve pearls put upon them. So oft as they see the rites they will be put in mind of the mysteries implied under them.

6. To this may be referred a declaration of such great and admirable works as God in former times hath done for his Church: especially such works as have been done in their time: and if any memorials be remaining of them, make them known to children. This direction was also given under the law, concerning the monuments which were set up of the great deliverances that God gave to his people (Josh 4:6,21). In particular when the day of the gunpowder-treason is solemnized, parents ought to teach their children the occasion of solemnizing that day. And as God doth any great works of mercy or of judgment, point them out to children. When there is a great famine, plague, or any mortality, instruct children in the causes thereof: when victory, plenty, peace, or the like, teach children from whence these come. Outward sensible things do best work upon children.

7. Let religious schoolmasters be chosen for children: so likewise other masters to whom children are put forth: and religious houses, where they are placed. *Hannah* commended her first born child to old *Eli*, a good, religious High Priest (1 Sam 1:25). If matters themselves be religious, there is good hope that they will instruct in piety such as are under them: which if they do, what an help will that be to parents? If both parents and masters join therein, it must needs be very profitable to the children. If parents should fail, yet might masters make a good supply.

8. Let parents be to their children a good pattern and example in piety. *I and my house* [saith *Joshua*] *will serve the Lord* (Josh 24:15): he setteth himself first as a guide to the rest. *I will walk in mine house with a perfect heart* (Psa 101:2) saith *David*, whereby he would make himself an example, as to others of his family, so to his children. Example is a real instruction, and addeth a sharp edge to admonition. Much more shall a religious parent do by practice than by precept. For children are much inclined to follow their parents: let *them* go before, *children* will soon follow after. Practice is an evident proof of the necessity of the precept delivered.

36. Of parents' faults contrary to their duty of teaching their children piety.

Many are the aberrations contrary to the forenamed care of teaching piety. For

1. Most parents care only for the temporal and civil good of their children: so their children may be well fed and clothed, and brought up in some profitable calling, whereby they may well maintain themselves in this world, little thought is had, or care taken for their spiritual life in this world, or eternal life in the world to come. Wherein are these parents better than heathen? *Job* was otherwise minded: he was more careful for their souls than for their bodies.

2. Many are so far from teaching piety, as they teach their children profaneness, pride, riot, lying, deceit, and such like principles of the devil. It had been better for such children to have lived among wild beasts, than under such parents. As the children hereby are thrust headlong to hell, so their blood shall be required of their parents.

3. Others think it enough that their children be taught a religion, but what religion it skilleth not. Such are they as having rich kindred but popish, commend their children to the education of such kindred, in hope of some temporal benefit, that their children may reap from them. If they were as careless of their children's bodies, they would be accounted little better than murderers: and is not the soul more precious than the body?

4. So far are many from catechizing their children and that daily, as they teach them not so much as the Lord's prayer, the Belief, and the Ten Commandments. Wherein papists shall rise up in judgment against them, that are very diligent in teaching their children, *Pater noster*, *Ave Maria*, and such like Latin principles, as the children cannot possibly understand.

5. Few use the forenamed outward helps, as the holy rites appointed of God, the great and glorious works of God, his extraordinary works of mercy or judgment, to instruct their children thereby. As they themselves care not to take notice of any such thing, so they care not whether their children do it or no.

6. So much do some prefer a little pelf before the true good of their children, as they care not to what schoolmaster they put their children, be he profane, or popish, or unlearned, especially if he be a kinsman, or one of their friends. Few will so do in case of their health or outward estate: but will rather get the best physician, or the best lawyer that they can. Children oft learn such evil qualities of their schoolmasters as they can never shake off again.

7. Many prove very bad patterns to their children, and give very ill example by profaneness, riotousness, swearing, drinking, playing at unlawful games, &c. These parents as they brought forth their children in sin, so they lead them on forward to hell. Their evil example is not only an hindrance to the good instruction of others, but also maketh all their own counsels [if at any time they do give any good counsel] to be in vain: for the left hand of evil example soon pulleth down more than the right hand of instruction can build again.

To conclude, those parents whose children are not brought up in the instruction of the Lord, shew plainly that they regard neither the salvation or damnation of their souls.

37. Of instructing children so soon as they are capable.

Hitherto of the *Kinds* of nurture. The *Time* thereof followeth.

In handling the *time* of good nurture, I will shew

1. When it ought to be *begun*.

2. How long it ought to be *continued*.

1. Parents ought to begin to nurture their children so soon as they are capable of any instruction. Even as young birds are taught by their dams to fly so soon as their wings can carry them. Train up a *child* [saith *Solomon*] that is, while he is young and tender (Prov 22:6): and again, *He that loveth his child nurtureth him betimes*. Thus was *Samuel* sent when he was very young to be trained up under *Eli*, (1 Sam 1:24) and *Solomon* was instructed by his father when he was *tender* (Prov 4:3) and *Timothy* was taught the Scriptures from a young child, or infant (2 Tim 3:15).

There are both *privative*, and *positive* reasons to press this point. *Privative*, in regard of the mischiefs that may be prevented thereby. *Positive*, in regard of the good that may be gained thereby.

1. Many are the evils which children by nature are prone unto, even as rank ground is subject to bring forth many weeds: for *the imagination of man's heart is evil from his youth* (Gen 8:21): and *foolishness is bound in the heart of a child* (Prov 22:15). If therefore they be not well nurtured betimes, what can be looked for, but the fruits of *evil* and *folly*. But timely nurture will prevent such fruits, and be an excellent preservative against their own natural corruption, against Satan's temptations, and against the allurements of discouragements of the world.

2. Continuance in evil maketh children obstinate, and inflexible therein. *Eli's* sons being suffered to go on in wickedness till they came to ripeness of years, would not afterwards harken to the voice of their Father (1 Sam 2:25). What creature can be tamed, if it be not begun with while it is young?

3. When children first begin to be capable of instruction, they are most pliable to follow the direction of their parents; as is evident by the ordinary course of nature in all things. Clay, wax, and such other things while they are soft receive any impression: twigs while they are tender are bowed any way: birds and beasts are easily tamed when they are young: corn sown betimes bringeth a timely and plentiful harvest.

4. That which in childhood is learned, is longest retained: *Train up a child in the way he should go, and when he is old he will not depart from it* (Prov 22:6). A vessel longest keepeth that savour with which at first it is seasoned: and by experience we may note old men best to remember the things which in their childhood they learned: yea by well educating children from their infancy much labour may afterwards be spared: for constant use of virtue bringeth it unto a law.

Object. To teach children while they are young, is but as to teach a parrot or such like unreasonable creatures: they may learn what is taught them, but they cannot conceive it.

1. *Ans*w. Though children have not so deep an apprehension while they are young, as they have when they come to riper years, yet so soon as they are capable of instruction, they do much better conceive what is taught them, than unreasonable creatures can do.

2. *Ans*w. Though that were granted, yet it would not thereupon follow, that it is better not to be taught while they are young.

For, first it is better that they should be framed and squared to a good course, before they can discern betwixt good and evil, than be suffered to run on in evil, till they get an habit therein; which after it is got, will hardly be cast off. Secondly, by teaching them before they can well conceive, their apprehension is much helped. What may be the reason that children of Kings, and great men are commonly of more understanding at 12 or 14 years of age, than poor and mean men's children at 17 or 18 but that they are sooner, and better instructed? Thirdly, as by age their understanding cometh to more and more ripeness, they will more and more conceive that which at first they did not so well understand. When scholars first learn their Latin rules, they learn them merely by rote, without understanding the meaning of them, yet afterwards come to make very good use of them. Wherefore children are to be instructed betimes even for the benefit that may be after reaped, as corn is sown in winter to receive a crop the harvest following: and to prevent the mischiefs that may fall out, lest they get head over their parents against their mind.

38. Of mothers' peculiar care in nurturing young children.

By the way let mothers especially note this point of *timely nurture*, as a point in peculiar appertaining to them. The grandmother *Lois* (compare 2 Tim 1:5 with 3:15), and mother *Eunice*, first taught *Timothy*. *Bathsheba* taught *Solomon* when he was young (Prov 31:1). Oft doth *Solomon* warn children not to forsake *their mother's teaching* (Prov 1:8; 6:20).

Whereby he implieth that mothers should teach their children especially while they are young: which duty so belongeth to a mother, as *Solomon* layeth the blame, and shame of the neglect thereof upon her (Prov 29:15): on the other side the honour of well nurturing children redoundeth especially to the mother. To this purpose is it, that the particular names of the mothers of the Kings are recorded in Scripture (1 Kings 15:2,10): intimating thereby that mothers were a main cause of the piety, or impiety of such children. *Solomon* and *Absalom* had both one father, but divers mothers. May we not well think that *Solomon's* mother's care to instruct him was an especial means of his piety: and that *Absalom's* mother's neglect of this duty, was some cause of his impiety? It is expressly noted of *Ahaziah's* mother, that she *was his counselor to do wickedly* (2 Chron 22:3), which made him so wicked as he was. Home experience confirmeth as much: for if father and mother be of divers religions, most of the children will follow the mother. For while children are young, their mother is most in their sight: she feedeth, she appareleth them, she tendeth them when they are not well, [when the *Shunammite's* child being ill, said to his father, *my head, my head*, he said to his servant, *carry him to his mother* (2 Kings 4:19)]. Her precepts therefore and practice in that respect are best heeded by the children, and she hath the best opportunity to persuade them to what she liketh best: so as what they learn in their younger years, commonly they learn of their mothers: and that which then they learn, for the most part sticketh most close unto them, and is longest retained by them, as was noted before (see Section 37).

I have not thus in particular pressed this point upon mothers, as if I exempted fathers from all care of nurturing their children in the beginning: for in my text the Apostle nameth *Fathers*: and *Solomon* saith, that his *father taught him even while he was tender*: and *David* felt the smart of neglecting his other children. It is therefore [as hath before been proved] a joint duty belonging to both. Fathers therefore must do their best endeavour, and see that mothers do theirs also, because he is governour over child, mother, and all.

39. Of letting slip the best time for nurture.

Contrary is the negligence of most parents, who let the best years wherein their children are most docile pass over in wantonness, vanity, and folly: and so lose that which can never be recovered again, *most precious time*. Hence is it that when they go about to reclaim their children, they find them exceedingly perverse and head-strong: much like to a strong big arm of a tree, which if a man go about to straighten, he cannot easily make it bow: and though it bow, yet will it not continue to stand as he would have it: nay it may be that it will rather break than bow much. Such a branch was *Adonijah*. It is apparent that in his childhood he was not well nurtured, for *his father would not displease him from his childhood* (1 Kings 1:6).

The father's putting off this duty to the mother, and the mother's putting it off to the father, is a great cause of the neglect thereof. Were both of them persuaded that it belonged to them both, and in that respect would to their power be helpful each to other, children would much better be instructed.

40. Of parents continuing to nurture their children.

As parents must begin betimes to nurture their children, so they must hold on therein, as long as they retain any government over them: yea so long as they remain to be parents unto them. Some difference there may be in the manner of performing this duty: for children are to be used as children: and they who are grown in years, and of riper understanding,

accordingly to be dealt withal: yet still must parents have a care of their well doing. The word used in my text and translated *Children*, is a general word which in Scripture and other writers is used to set forth all sort of children, of what sex, of what age, of what degree soever they be. In handling the duty of children we shewed (see Treatise 5, Section 62), that children owed a subjection to parents so long as they lived together: wherefore by the rule of relation, so long also an authority remaineth in parents over their children, and accordingly they ought to have a fatherly care for their good. On this ground *Eli* did well in admonishing his children after they were married (1 Sam 3:25): his fault was that he went not far enough in doing his duty: somewhat he did, but not all that he should and might have done. *Job* is commended for the care he had over his children when they were grown in years (Job 1:5): for day by day he sent for them and sanctified them: and that after they had several houses of their own, and dwelt apart: and this all their days. For the performance of that which is now urged, parents must so carry themselves from time to time towards their children, as they ever keep the reins in their own hands, and retain a power to curb their children as they see occasion. They may, as their children grow up in years, slacken the reins more and more, but never let them clean go, and cast them loose on their children's neck.

41. Of parents' folly in letting go all their power over their children.

Contrary is their folly who put themselves in their children's power, and let go all their authority over them. Many parents that have thus done, having by woeful experience found the mischief and inconvenience that hath followed thereupon, but all too late. For a mischief is much more easily prevented than redressed. All the power that *David* had could not hold in *Ab-salom* after he was permitted to have horses, and chariots, and men at his command (2 Sam 15:1). If *David*, as he begun, had continued to keep him within a compass, and still held him under, all the treasonable plots which he put in execution, might easily have been prevented. Our times afford too many examples of parents' folly in this kind, and of the mischiefs following thereupon.

Of time of nurture thus far. The means thereof follow.

42. Of adding admonition to instruction.

The means of helping forward the good work of nurture are especially two.

1. Frequent admonition.
2. Due correction.

Both of them are implied in this text: one in the word translated *admonition* (see Treatise 1, Section 120), which [according to the notation of the Greek word] is a putting of a thing into the mind, an urging and pressing of it: the other in the word translated *nurture* (see Treatise 1, Section 119).

Now both these are to be joined together, as being very helpful each to other. For admonition without correction is like to prove but mere vanity: and correction without admonition will be too much austerity.

The duty which the first of these setteth forth, is this,

Parents must oft whet instruction upon their children: they may not think it enough to tell their children what they ought to do, but to instruction they must add admonition: and, as it were, beat into their children's heads the lessons which they teach them: that so they may make a deeper impression in their hearts. Thus shall their instructions be like the *words of the wife which are as nails fastened* (Eccl 12:11), or fast knocked in: they remain firm where they are once fastened, and cannot easily be plucked out: for as many blows do knock a nail up to the head [as we speak] so many admonitions do settle good instructions in a child's heart, and cause that the heart be established in that which is taught, which is a thing to be laboured after (Heb 13:9). The general exhortation of being *instant in season and out of season* (2 Tim 4:2) may be applied to this purpose: but more pertinently that direction which is in particular given to parents of *whetting* God's words upon their children (Deut 6:7).

To this purpose is it that *Solomon* useth to double his instructions, and urge them again and again, as *hear the instruction, forsake not the law* (Prov 1:8): *receive my words, hide my commandments within thee: incline thine ears, apply thy heart* (Prov 2:1,2), &c. yea oft he repeateth the very same precepts.

The apprehension of children is fickle, and their memory weak: if they be but once, or seldom, or slightly instructed, that which is taught will soon slip away, and do little or no good.

For the better performing of this duty, parents must think of the best means they can to fasten their instructions upon their children: and observe their inclination and disposition, and see with what they are most moved. Constant exhortations, and powerful persuasions are comprised under admonition, which in their kinds, as occasion requireth, are to be used.

43. *Of parents' wearisomeness in instructing their children.*

Contrary is the practice of those parents who soon wax weary in instructing their children. The Apostle layeth it down as a general caveat in good duties that we *wax not weary* (Gal 6:9): if in no good thing we must wax weary, shall parents wax weary in doing good to their children? Yet how many be there that having once taught their children, think they have done duty enough in that kind: if their children will take it, they may. They are loath to take too much pains in often urging the points which they have taught them.

Thus that teaching vanisheth away: and so it falleth out, as we say in the proverb, *as good not at all as never the better*. This is one point wherein old *Eli* failed: for he gave very good instruction to his children: but because he there stayed, neither was that accepted of God as a sufficient discharge of his duty, nor were his children any whit bettered thereby. If this were a fault in him notwithstanding his children were come to years of discretion, and to ripeness of understanding, how much greater is the fault in those whose children are but young?

Object. If a child take not instruction at first, he is but of an untoward and perverse disposition: all the pains that can be taken will be lost.

Ans. It may be childishness rather than perverseness, or some imperfection, rather than obstinacy. Considering the necessity of good nurture, no pains may be thought too much. There is more perverseness, and untowardness in such parents as wax weary in doing this duty, than in such children as at first are not wrought upon: for this is a means ordained of God to cure this untowardness.

44. *Of parents reproofing their children.*

The other means of helping nurture is correction.

Which is of two sorts; Verbal by Words, Real by Blows.

The former is *reprehension*: and it must always go before the latter, which is most usually and properly called *Correction*.

Reprehension is a kind of middle thing betwixt admonition and correction: it is a sharp admonition, but a mild correction.

It is the rather to be used because it may be a means to prevent strokes and blows, especially in ingenuous, and good natured children [for a *reproof entereth more into him that is wise, than a hundred stripes into a fool* (Prov 17:10)] and because it may be used, when it is not so meet to use strokes and blows: as when children are grown to man-age.

The many good fruits which the Holy Ghost noteth to proceed from due reproof do shew that it is a duty whereof parents ought to make conscience as they desire to promote the good of their children: and so much the rather because many good fruits redound to the parents that reprove, as well as to the children reprov'd. In regard of their good who are reprov'd, it is said, *Reproofs for instruction are the way of life* (Prov 6:23): they cause *understanding* (Prov 15:32); and make *prudent* (Prov 15:5). In regard of their good who reprove, it is said, *To them that rebuke shall be delight* [that is, much comfort and matter of rejoicing, so as they shall not need to repent what they have done] *and a blessing of good shall come upon them* (Prov 24:25), that is, either a blessing of good men, who will bless, praise and commend them: or a blessing of good things, and that from the Lord who will reward them for this conscionable performance of their duty.

Upon these grounds holy men have not spared to rebuke their children as there was occasion (Gen 9:25; 34:30; 49:4). Though *Eli* did somewhat in this duty, yet because he was not more severe therein, he brought destruction both upon himself and his children (1 Sam 2:23).

The direction noted in Section 40 and 47 and Treatise 4, Section 35 may be here applied.

45. Of parents cockering their children.

Contrary is their too much doting on children, who are loath to give them a foul word. *David* [though otherwise a very wise man] herein manifested much folly, for *he displeased not Adonijah at any time in saying, why hast thou done so?* (1 Kings 1:6) and like enough it is, that also he so cockered his other rebellious son *Absalom*. Note the fearful issue that followed thereupon both to father and children. Though their father would not displease them, yet they cared not to displease their father, yea to grieve his heart, and vex his soul. The like may all foolish doting parents look for at their children's hands. For first parents by neglect of this duty highly displease God: therefore in just revenge will God give their children over to displease and vex them. Secondly, neglect of reproof is a means to make children rude, presumptuous, rebellious, and so careless to please their parents. Yea all things wherein children offend through want of education shall be required at their parents' hands.

46. Of correcting children.

The latter and more proper kind of correction which is by stripes and blows is also a means appointed by God to help the good nurture and education of children. It is the last remedy which a parent can use: a remedy which may do good when nothing else can.

It is by the Holy Ghost both expressly commanded, and also very oft pressed under these and such like phrases, *Chasten thy son* (Prov 19:18): *correct thy son* (Prov 29:17): *withhold not correction from the child* (Prov 23:13): *thou shalt smite him with the rod* (Prov 23:14). Were there no other motive, this were sufficient. God's charge was such a motive to *Abraham*, as at it he would have sacrificed his son (Gen 22:2,3): and wilt not thou at God's command correct thy child?

It is further commended by God's own example, which is not only set forth in some particular instances, but by his general constant dealing with all, and that as an especial token and fruit of his love. For *whom the Lord loveth he chasteneth, and scourgeth every son whom he receiveth. If ye be without chastisement whereof all are partakers, then are ye bastards and not sons* (Heb 12:6,8). Let this example of God be well weighed, for it is of great weight. Who can better tell what kind of dealing is fittest for children than God? Who can better nurture children than God? Who doth more truly aim at, and procure the good of children than God? Yea who doth more tender children than God? If *God the father of spirits* in wisdom and love thus deal with his children, *fathers of the flesh* may not think by the contrary to shew wisdom or love. Their wisdom will be folly, their love hatred. Upon these grounds it is taken for a thing granted, that parents [who tender the good of their children as they should] do chastise their children as need requireth: for it is said, that the Lord correcteth whom he loveth, *as a father the son in whom he delighteth* (Prov 3:12). If parents used it not, this were no good inference to say, *as a father*: again, as a thing without controversy it is said, *we have had fathers of our flesh which corrected us* (Heb 12:9).

The grounds of the equity of this duty, respect partly the children corrected, and partly the parents that correct. In regard of children, it freeth them from much evil, and worketh in them much good.

Correction is as physic to purge out much corruption which lurketh in children, and as a salve to heal many wounds and sores made by their folly. In which respect *Solomon* saith, that *foolishness is bound in the heart of a child, but the rod of correction shall drive it far from him* (Prov 22:15) and again, *The blueness of a wound is a purging medicine against evil: so do stripes the inward parts of the belly* (Prov 20:30). In regard of the inward operation of this physic, correction is further said to preserve a child from death, [*if thou beatest him he shall not die* (Prov 23:13)] and that not only from temporal death [as many children are thus preserved from the Magistrate's sword] but also from external death [*thou shalt deliver his soul from hell* (Prov 23:14)]. Note this ye cockering parents, whose over-much lenity is very great cruelty. For may we not justly count him a cruel parent, that should suffer diseases, boils, sores, and wounds to remain, increase, and fester in his child, and give him no physic, nor apply any plasters, or medicines to him? Nay rather who seeth his son running into a flaming fire, or deep water, and would not hold him back? Even so cruel, and more cruel are they, who suffer their children to run on in evil, rather than correct them.

Object. Who can endure to make his own child smart, and to put him to pain?

Ans. The future fruit is more to be considered, than the present pain. Potions, pills, and corrosives, are fulsome, bitter, and painful; but because there is a necessity of using them, and great mischief is prevented by the use of them, wise parents will

not forbear them for the sensible bitterness, and pain. Fitly doth the Apostle thus answer that objection, *No chastening for the present seemeth to be joyous, but grievous, nevertheless, afterward it yieldeth the peaceable fruit of righteousness* (Heb 12:11). This may be applied to parents' corrections as well as to God's.

The good which correction bringeth to children, is by *Solomon* noted in this and such like phrases, *The rod giveth wisdom* (Prov 29:15): for it maketh children observe, what is good, and what evil; what commendable, and what blame-worthy: and accordingly to do the good, and leave the evil, which is a great point of wisdom.

Object. Instruction will better do this.

Answ. Instruction may give them more knowledge, but it is correction which bringeth them to practice what they know, which is the chiefest point of wisdom (Matt 7:24).

In regard of parents, due correcting of their children both freeth them of many inconveniences, and also bringeth to them much quiet.

1. It spareth them much pains. For many admonitions oft repeated, and inculcated again and again, will not make many children so much to heed wholesome and good advice, as a little correction. They are much more sensible of smart, than of words.

2. It preventeth much grief, shame, and vexation: for *a foolish son is a grief to his father, and bitterness to her that bare him* (Prov 17:25). But *it is the rod of correction that driveth away foolishness* (Prov 22:15), and so preventeth that *grief and bitterness*.

3. It freeth them from the guilt of their children's sin, so as they are not accessory thereto, as *Eli* was (1 Sam 3:13). For correction is the last remedy that a parent can use: if by that he can do no good, it is presupposed that he hath done his uttermost endeavour: in which respect, though the child die in his sin, yet the parent hath delivered his own soul.

The quiet which is brought to parents by correcting their children, is thus noted out by *Solomon*, *Correct thy son, and he shall give thee rest, yea he shall give delight unto thy soul* (Prov 29:17). For children well nurtured, and by correction kept in a filial awe, will so carry themselves, as their parents may rest somewhat secure, and not disquiet themselves [as they do with children set at liberty] yea, as trees well pruned, and ground well tilled, they will bring forth pleasant and abundant fruit; and so their parents will have just cause to rejoice in them.

47. A direction to parents in correcting their children.

For well using this biting corrosive of correction, parents must have respect to the *matter* for which they do correct, and to their *manner* of correcting.

In regard of the matter, these three things must be noted.

1. That they be sure there is a fault committed: that so there be just cause of correcting, else more hurt than good will proceed from thence. If corrosive be laid where there is no sore, it will make one. If correction be unjustly given, it may provoke to wrath, but will do little good. This is it wherein earthly fathers are taxed, and made unlike to God, for that many times they *correct after their own pleasure* (Heb 12:10): which is a point of great injustice.

2. That the fault be made known to the child corrected: and he apparently convinced thereof. Correction must be for instruction, which cannot be, except the child know why he is corrected: for it is all one to him, as if he were corrected for no fault, if he know not his fault. God thus at first proceeded with the serpent, with *Eve*, and with *Adam* (Gen 3:11). Thus Judges proceed in punishing malefactors. Yea thus will men deal with a dog. Should they not much more with a child?

3. That the faults be such especially, as the parents can shew to their children [if at least they be of so much discretion] to be against God's word; as swearing, lying, pilfering, and the like: for 1. these are most dangerous faults, and therefore more carefully to be purged out, 2. the child corrected will thus be the better evicted of his fault, the more condemn himself, and more contentedly bear the correction.

In regard of the manner of correcting, four general, and four particular rules are to be observed.

The general rules are these.

1. An eye must be had to God's manner of correcting his children, and in particular of God's correcting the parent himself: no better general direction can be given: for God's pattern is a perfect rule.
2. Prayer must be made by parents for themselves and for their children: for themselves, to be directed in doing it: for their children, to be bettered by it. Thus will good physicians in ministering physic. In all duties is prayer to be used; especially in this: for a parent is ready, partly through his own intemperate passion, and partly through the child's impatience, to fall into one extreme or other. This is not to impose upon all, whensoever they take up the rod, to go and make a solemn prayer, but to lift up the heart for direction and blessing.
3. Correction must be given in love. *All things must be done in love* (1 Cor 16:14): much more this, that carry a shew of anger and hatred. In love they will give physic to their children, and splinter a joint, if need be. God correcteth his children in love: so must parents, Love will make them do it with tenderness and compassion.
4. Correction must be given in a mild mood, when the affections are well ordered, and not distempered with choler, rage, fury, and other like passions. Disturbed passions cast a mist before the understanding, so as a man cannot discern what is enough, what too much. When passion is moved, correction must be deferred. God correcteth in *measure*.

The particulars are these.

1. Due order must be kept. Correction by word must go before correction by the rod. *I rebuke and chasten*, saith the Lord. Thus a parent will shew that he taketh no delight in smiting his child: it is necessity that forceth him thereunto. Thus a parent sheweth himself like to God, *who doth not punish willingly* (Lam 3:33). Physicians, when they minister strong physic, will give preparative: rebuke may be as a preparative. Good and pitiful surgeons will try all other means before they come to lance and sear.
2. Due respect must be had to the party corrected: if he be young and tender, the lighter correction must be used. *Solomon* oft mentioneth a rod, as meet oft for a child; for that is the lightest correction. So if the child be of a flexible and ingenuous disposition, soon snapped, the correction must accordingly be moderated. If he be well grown, and withal be stout, and stubborn, the correction may be more severe.
3. Due respect must be had to the fault: Sins directly against God, open, notorious, scandalous sins, known sins, sins often committed, in which they are grown up, and whereof they have gotten an habit, are with greater severity to be corrected.
4. A parent must behold his own faults in correcting his child's: so more compassion will be wrought in him.

48. Of parents' too much indulgency.

Contrary to this duty of correcting are two extremes.

1. Too much lenity.
2. Too much severity.

Many so cocker their children, as they will suffer them to run into any misdemeanour, rather than correct them. They cannot endure to hear their children cry: and therefore their children must be pleased in all their humours and evil desires. These parents bring shame to themselves, and mischief upon their children: for God is oft forced to correct such. Heavy are God's corrections: and oft light on parent and child both: as appeareth by the judgments on *Eli* and his sons: for such parents make themselves accessory to their children's sins: yea also to the judgments laid upon their children. God saith of such parents, that *they honour their children above God* (1 Sam 2:29). It is therefore a fond indulgency which maketh parents regard neither God's honour, nor their own or children's safety.

Mothers for the most part offend herein, who are so far from performing this duty themselves, as they are much offended

with their husbands if they do it. And to proclaim their folly to all the world, they cannot commit their children to a tutor or schoolmaster, but with a straight charge, that they correct them not.

1. *Object.* Correction maketh children sots and blocks.

Answer. If God's spirit deserve to have more credence than such foolish women, that objection is most false, for we heard before (see Section 46) how correction giveth wisdom, and driveth out foolishness.

2. *Object.* Mothers may be the more born with herein, because with long trouble they did bear, and with great travail bring forth their children.

Answer. That may be a good motive for them to seek the true good of their children, that so their trouble and travail may not be in vain: but not to uphold them in the broad way that leadeth to destruction.

49. Of parents' too much severity in correcting their children.

They who offend in the other extreme of severity, of the two are the more unnatural parents; they offend directly against the first branch of this text [*Provoke not to wrath*]. Nothing more provoketh than immoderate severity: for

1. It argueth no love in the parent, but rather hatred, at least wrath, and other such like distempered affections.
2. It softeneth not the child's heart, but hardeneth it rather.
3. It maketh him dull, and stupid, and clean perverteth the right and true end of correction.
4. It oft maketh a child think of doing some mischief to his parent or himself.

That parents may the rather take heed of this extreme, I will briefly note wherein excess in severity is shewed.

It is shewed, when correction is given

1. For no fault. In this case, though correction be never so light, it is too severe.
2. For small faults, in wrath and fury, though the stripes be few and light, yet the parent's behaviour is too much severity.
3. To children that are young and tender, or soft, mild and ingenuous, as if they were in some years, the most obstinate and perverse that could be.
4. Too often: for every thing done amiss: whereas parents should seem not to see or hear many things which they see, and hear.
5. Too sorely: so as the child is lamed, or some way so hurt as he shall feel it as long as he liveth.

50. Of parents' care in providing fit callings for their children.

Having laid down such duties of parents as especially respect the childhood of children, I proceed to lay forth such as have respect to their riper years wherein they are to be placed forth.

Here we are to note

1. The *kinds* of those duties.
2. The *means* of performing them.

The kinds may be drawn to two heads.

1. Providing fit places and callings for them to exercise their gifts.

2. Providing fit marriages for them.

We heard before how children were to be trained up, and fitted to some good calling even in their childhood (see Section 31). Now further, when by virtue of good education they are enabled to discharge the functions and duties of a calling, and by years they are well grown up, so as it is time they should be set to some particular calling:

Parents ought to provide fit callings for their children, and fit places for them to exercise the gifts which by nature or education they have gotten. For example, If children have been brought up in learning, parents must use what lawful and honest means they can to settle them in such a place and course as they may profess and exercise their gifts, according to their several kinds, be it Divinity, Law, Physic, or the like: or if they have been brought up in any trade, to provide that they may set up [as we speak] and exercise their trade. The two first children that ever were born of woman, *Cain* and *Abel* (Gen 4:2), were placed forth in several callings; and without doubt their places were so ordered by their parents. The like may be gathered out of these phrases, *Esau was a man of the field*, and *Jacob dwelt in tents* (Gen 25:27). It is noted of *Samuel*, that he made his two sons Judges (1 Sam 8:1). Had they been as faithful in well using their places, as their father was careful in providing them, they might have lived well themselves, and done much good to others. *Jesse* having many sons, had a care hereof: for he sent his three eldest sons to the war (1 Sam 17:13); and placed them in a soldier's course of life: his youngest he made a shepherd (1 Sam 16:11), which was in those days and places a calling of greater reckoning than now it is with us.

1. Thus shall they make use of that ability whereunto by their parents' providence, and their own diligence they have attained: otherwise that ability may soon be lost. Doth not daily experience shew that many who have been well trained up by their parents in learning, so far as they have been fit to have entered into the ministry, for want of place and employment, have in time so forgotten all, as if they had never been trained up in learning: and so in other sciences.

2. Thus come they to do much more good in Church or Commonwealth: till men be placed in distinct callings, they are but sitting and preparing for future times. I deny not but that both Church and Commonwealth may reap much benefit by the pains and labour of the younger sort, who are trained up under others: but most properly are they counted members of the Church and Commonwealth, and actual instruments of the good thereof, who have some particular distinct calling, whereby they do good to others.

3. Thus they come to live of themselves, and to be able to relieve others also. All the time of their education, they are commonly at the charge of others: at least, though by their pains they may gain much, yet the gain returns to others: they themselves, for the most part have but a bare maintenance, meat, drink and cloth [as we say]: little have they to lay up for themselves for the time to come, or to give to others for the present.

4. They thus come to train up others against after times, as they themselves have been trained up: whereby a continual and perpetual succession of all kinds of callings, is from time to time preserved: and thus family, Church, and Commonwealth upheld and maintained. In short time would all callings and functions utterly decay, if a continual supply were not thus made.

51. Direction of parents in providing callings for their children.

Two especial cautions are to be observed by parents in providing callings for their children.

1. That such callings be provided as their children have been trained up unto, and are in some measure fitted and enabled to perform the duties thereof: as to provide a Minister's place for him that hath been brought up in learning and studied divinity: so in other callings such as their children may be their crafts-masters therein. Thus shall their children do the more good therein, both to others and themselves. *Bezaleel* and *Aholiab* were chosen to build the tabernacle because *they were filled with wisdom to work all manner of work* (Exod 35:35): likewise the servants of *Hiram* were chosen to hew Cedar trees for the temple, because, *among the Jews there were not any that could skill to hew timber, like unto the Sidonians* (1 Kings 5:6). *Pharaoh* was careful to have *men of activity rulers over his cattle* (Gen 47:6).

2. That such means be used for providing a calling as parents in using them may with faith call upon God for his blessing. They that by lawful means are brought into a calling whereunto they are fitted, are set therein by God, as is implied by this phrase, *as God hath called every one*, &c. A lawful entrance into a calling is a matter of great moment: he that so entereth

may in a right use thereof cast himself upon God's blessing, and with strong confidence expect the same, saying as the Prophet did, *Lord I have not thrust in myself thou knowest* (Jer 17:16).

52. Of the extremes contrary to a parent's lawful care in providing fit callings for his children.

The extreme in the defect contrary to a parent's provident care in providing a fit calling, is, a careless neglect of children after they are well educated, a leaving them to shift for themselves. It is noted of the ravenous fowls that have sharp talents, that so soon as they perceive their young ones to be able to fly, they will flap and beat them with their wings, and drive them out of their nests, and after that take no further care of them. We may not be like such cruel birds: reason and religion teacheth us otherwise. Good education is a good duty, but not a parent's whole duty: the stay which is here made, may make all the former care and pains to be of little use.

Object. This is to be left to God's providence.

Answer. Means rightly used are subordinate to God's providence, and by them doth God manifest his providence and bring his counsel to pass: to neglect means is to thwart and cross the divine providence. It is therefore well done to rely on God's providence: but ill done to neglect the means of effecting it. God's blessing is best discerned in the use of means.

The extreme in the excess is a preposterous greediness in parents to bring their children to a calling. This is manifested two ways.

1. When they care not how fit their children be for the place, so it be a place of gain and honour. Experience sheweth that this is the bane of Church and Commonwealth. Hereby it falleth out in the politic body, as it would in a natural body; if the hand should take upon it to see, or the leg to hear, or the foot to taste, what could from thence be expected but ruin to the body? Tradesmen oft undo themselves, their families and friends, by undertaking such trades as they have no skill in, or whereof they are not crafts-masters. The more excellent the calling is, the more mischief is done by this greedy preposterousness. This extreme is so much worse than the former, as it is worse to do much hurt, than no good.

2. When they make no conscience of the means which they use to bring their children into callings: but by unlawful means purchase their desires: as, by simony to procure an Ecclesiastical function [whence oft followeth also perjury] or by bribery to procure an office.

These indirect means take away difference betwixt fitness and unfitness of persons: for the unfittest that be may by money purchase a place. Besides, though children be never so fit for these callings, yet there is little hope of any blessing from God, when the first entrance is without him: yea against his will and word. Who can think that God hath placed such an one in his place? if God have not placed him, with what faith can he seek a blessing? with what hope can he expect a blessing? Much terror is by this means brought to many men's conscience: and they are oft in a great strait, not knowing whether it be fittest for them to retain, or relinquish their place.

But by the way to resolve that doubt, if one that hath unlawfully entered be fit for the performance of his place, it is then safest for him to seek pardon for the former offence, and reconciliation with God, and upon true and unfained repentance to hold the place [if at least the law under which he liveth establish him therein] and be so much the more faithful in the discharge of the duties thereof.

53. Of parents' care in providing fit marriages for their children.

God hath further laid a charge upon parents to provide marriages for their children: for thus saith the Prophet in the name of the Lord unto parents, *Take wives to your sons, and give your daughters to husbands* (Jer 29:6): and thus the Apostle, *If any man think that he behaveth himself uncomely toward his virgin, if she pass the flower of her age, and need so require, let them marry* (1 Cor 7:36). This direction was given in times of persecution, when by reason of the present necessity it was better not to marry: if then a parent ought to be careful [*need requiring*] to provide a marriage of his daughter, much more ought he in times of peace. Holy parents commended by the Holy Ghost have been careful in performing this duty, as *Abraham* (Gen 24:4), *Isaac* (Gen 28:2), *Naomi* (Ruth 3:1), and others: yea *Hagar* had learned this duty in *Abraham's* house (Gen 21:21). But the perfect pattern [which surpasseth all other examples] is of God himself (Gen 2:18), who provided a fit match of his *son Adam* (Luke 3:38).

1. Children may not marry without consent of parents [as was before shewed (see Treatise 5, Section 16 and 17)]. Parents therefore must be careful in time to provide for them.

2. Parents are to children in God's place: they must therefore take upon them this care of God.

3. Marriage is the means which the Lord hath sanctified to preserve our bodies chaste and undefiled: as parents therefore desire to keep their children from uncleanness and pollution, they must take care that this means be used. Not only holy Apostles, but also heathen philosophers, and that by the light of nature, have found this to be the fittest course.

4. This also is a means as to increase the commonwealth (Gen 1:28), and preserve an holy seed (Mal 2:15), and to erect new families, so to continue parents' own houses and names.

54. *Direction to parents in providing marriages.*

Two cautions are to be observed of parents in providing marriages for their children.

1. That the match which they provide be meet: so said God when he was about to provide a match of *Adam*, *I will make him an help meet for him* (Gen 2:18). Therefore the match provided must not be too near of kin, of a contrary religion, of too unequal an age, of too great disparity in estate (see Treatise 2, Part I, Section 9 and 10). These things will hinder love, and cause disdain and hatred of one another.

2. Though the match may seem meet in the parent's eye, yet he may not force his child thereto. Could a fitter match have been found out for *Rebekah* than *Isaac*? yet *Rebekah's* friends asked her consent (Gen 24:57). I deny not but parents may use all manner of fair means to move their children to yield to that which they see good for them: but if they cannot move them to yield, to refer the matter to God, and not against their children's minds to force them. When God had made a most meet match for *Adam*, *he brought her to the man*: namely to see how he would like her. For the nearest bond of all is betwixt man and wife; a man *must leave father and mother, and cleave unto his wife* (Gen 2:22); man and wife must always live together: great reason therefore that at the first joining them together there be a mutual liking of one another, lest ever after there be a perpetual dislike: and though the authority of parents ought in this case to be inviable, yet a middle course is so to be held, as the parties may willingly with a mutual consent join themselves together.

55. *Of the extremes contrary to parents' care in providing fit marriages for their children.*

The extreme in the defect is, when parents carelessly let their children pass the flower of their age: and never consider whether need require that they should marry or no. Their children may sit long enough before they seek out a match for them, unless it be brought to them: and when one is offered though it be never so fit, yet except they may make an advantage thereof to themselves, they will hardly yield to it. Thus they make their children to seek out marriages for themselves, and without their consent to make them up: or else to live in discontent, if not in uncleanness. By the carelessness of parents in this respect are children oft made a prey to the devil: whereof at the day of judgment parents shall give an account to God.

The extreme in the excess is, when parents through a covetous desire to get great and rich matches for their children, marry them before they be of years of discretion to like or dislike, to know what is meet or unmeet; or able to perform even the essential duties of marriages (see Treatise 2, Part I, Section 2): seldom do such unlawful marriages prosper.

In a like excess do they offend who for outward advantages match their children to such as by nature are unfit, for marriage, to idiots, to idolaters, to profane persons, or they care not to whom (see Treatise 2, Part I, Section 11 and 12). And if their children like not these matches, they will do to the uttermost of their power what they can to force them thereunto. Many mischiefs ordinarily fall out upon such marriages, as utter dislike betwixt husband and wife, continual complaining one of another, inquiring after divorce, or any other separation, wishing, yea practicing one another's death. To all these mischiefs do parents, the cause thereof, make themselves accessory.

56. *Of parents providing a stock for callings and marriages of their children.*

An especial outward means whereby parents may be the better enabled to provide fit callings and marriages for their children, is, beforehand to lay up some stock, or competent portion for their children. This is comprised under that general provision, whereof he that is careless is counted by the Apostle, *worse than an infidel* (1 Tim 5:8) but more expressly is it noted

in these words, *Parents ought to lay up for their children* (2 Cor 12:14): and commended in *Abraham's* example (Gen 25:5,6).

While children are under their parents they have no means to lay up for themselves: for all their service is for their parents. But in regard of the times wherein we live, it is needful for setting up in a good calling, and for obtaining a fit match, that children have some stock and portion. It lieth therefore upon the parents, and their duty it is to provide it.

Object. Christ forbiddeth to lay up treasures on earth (Matt 6:19).

Ans. If the scope of that place be rightly marked, it will appear that Christ there forbiddeth not simply the thing itself, but

1. The *mind* of him that layeth up: namely when it is filled full of carking, and distrustful thoughts: fearing that in the time to come he shall not have sufficient. To this purpose doth Christ propound God's providence over *fowls* and *lilies* (Matt 6:26,28).

2. The *manner* of laying up, when temporal things are preferred before spiritual and heavenly: therefore he addeth this precept, *but lay up treasures in heaven, &c.* (Matt 6:20).

3. The *measure*, when men never think they have laid up enough: but scrape what they can come by justly or unjustly; and spare more than needs, even things necessary, from themselves and others, to make a great stock and portion for their children. The word of *treasuring up* [which Christ there useth] implieth an immoderate measure.

Among other needful cautions for parents to be observed in laying up for their children, these three are especially to be noted.

1. That justly they come by that which they lay up: and lay nothing towards a child's portion which is any way unjustly gotten, for *the treasures of wickedness profit nothing* (Prov 10:2): they may prove a fire to consume parents themselves, their children, their house, and whole posterity.

2. That they covet not too much to make their children rich, and for that purpose live meanly and basely themselves, yea and deprive themselves of many necessaries. An egregious point of folly is this, which *Solomon* hath much taxed (Eccl 5:12).

3. That all needful duties of charity to the poor, and of justice to the Church and Commonwealth be performed, and pretext of laying up for children hinder none of these.

57. Of the extremes contrary to a parent's providing portions for his children.

The extremes contrary to the forenamed duty are these:

1. When parents live at the uttermost extent of their estate, and from time to time spend all their revenues or all their gains, and so are scarce able to make even at quarter day, or year's end. What stock or portion can they lay up for children?

2. When parents live above their estate, and spend riotously their ordinary gains, or revenues, and for other necessary affairs are forced to run into debt. Many are so far from helping their children in this kind, as they are a main hindrance unto them, urging their eldest son especially who is their heir, to be bound for them, and so lay such a burden on his back, as [to use the common phrase] they make it crack again.

3. When parents have enough for themselves and their children, and yet so covetously dote upon their wealth, as they will not bestow a groat to help them in calling and marriage, but say they keep all for them. What a wretched and foolish disposition is this, that they should still lay up more and more for their children, and yet refuse to bestow any part thereof upon them in their greatest need, when it might redound to their greatest benefit? God oft meeteth with such covetous misers, and crosseth their purposes, by making strangers to enjoy that which they greedily hoarded up.

58. Of parents' last speech to their children.

The last duty which parents owe to their children, is, when they cease to be parents: that is, when they are going out of this world. Their duty at that time in general is to do what lieth in them, that it may go well with their children after their depar-

ture. Both the reasons which are oft urged by the Holy Ghost, to stir up parents to yield obedience to God (see Section 6), taken from the extent of God's blessing [in this kind of phrase, *Blessed shall their children be after them* (Prov 20:7)] and God's promises made to that purpose do prove as much (Deut 5:29).

For the better performing of this duty, three general points, tending both to the temporal, and also to the spiritual good of children, are to be observed: and two particular points most tending to their temporal estate.

The three generals are these.

1. Good direction.
2. Faithful prayer.
3. A wise choice of some friends to be as parents to them.

1. For *direction*. When parents observe their time to draw near, they ought to commend some wise and wholesome precepts unto their children, the better to direct them in their Christian course. So did *Isaac* (Gen 28:2,4), and *Jacob* (Gen 49:1).

Object. These Patriarchs had an extraordinary spirit of prophesying, and by virtue thereof foretold their children things to come.

Answ. They sustained a double person (see Treatise 5, Section 9): one of a *prophet*, another of a *father*: as prophets, they had an extraordinary spirit; as parents, they performed ordinary duty: by their extraordinary spirit, they foretold things to come: the ordinary duty which they performed, was to direct their children how to carry themselves in those times to come. For their prophesies were not only predictions, but also instructions, to direct and teach them what to do. What they did by an extraordinary spirit in extraordinary things, we must do in ordinary duties by the ordinary spirit of understanding and wisdom which the Lord giveth us. But the direction which *Isaac* gave to *Jacob*, when he sent him to *Laban* (Gen 28:2), was no extraordinary prophesy: nor that which *David* when he was old, gave to *Solomon* (1 Chron 28:9): and again, when he lay on his death-bed (1 Kings 2:2,3). Now these things are thus written for our imitation. And great reason there is to imitate those holy men in these things. For

1. The words of a dying parent are commonly most regarded: his last words do make a deep impression [this do the brethren of *Joseph* press upon him (Gen 50:16)]. If ever therefore there be a time seasonable for a parent to give good instructions to his children, then is the time when parents are clean departing from their children.
2. Thus shall a parent manifest his true affection, and earnest desire of his children's good: for now they cannot think that he seeketh his own ease, and profit, more than their good: as at other times some will be ready to say of their parent's instructions and admonitions, *Our parents know what is good for themselves*.

That the last words of parents may be the more seasonably and profitably delivered to their children, they must note, on the one side, what evils their children are most prone unto, what temptations they are most assaulted withal, what snares they are most like to fall into; and on the other side, what virtues and graces are most needful for them, and wherein they fail most, and accordingly they must order and frame their last words. Note for a pattern herein *Isaac's* counsel to *Jacob*, when he sent him to *Laban*, and thought he should never see him again (Gen 28:2): and *David's* to his son *Solomon* (1 Kings 2:2,3).

59. Of parents' last blessing to their children.

2. Concerning the prayers of parents for their children, I noted it before to be a general duty never to be omitted (see Section 4): yet here in particular I mention it again, because a parent's blessing consisteth therein especially: and then is the most proper time for parents to bestow a blessing on their children, as *Isaac* (Gen 23:3), *Jacob* (Gen 48:15), *David* (1 Chron 29:19), and others did. Let parents therefore as they commend their own souls into God's hand, so commend their children unto God's grace and blessing. God's providence is a good inheritance: many children do thereby exceedingly prosper, though they have but small outward means; whereas others that have great means used for their good, come to ruin; God's curses following them. Now no such means can be thought of to procure God's blessing, or to withhold his curse, as the faithful prayers of parents for their children; especially when parents are leaving their children, and going to God.

60. *Of parents' care to commend their children to some faithful friends.*

3. The third general point of making choice of some faithful friends to commend their children unto, is especially in behalf of such as are not of sufficient age and discretion to look to themselves, or to those weighty affairs which belong unto them. The friends, which in this case are made choice of, ought to be such as the parents themselves by good experience have found to be honest, wise, faithful, and loving to them and theirs; whom parents are to set in their own place for the good of their children. This means did *David* use when he was old in the behalf of his son *Solomon* (1 Chron 22:17; 28:21). Many children have found much help thereby. Such may make a good supply of the departure of parents. These are so much the more needful, by how much the more unstable, and unbridled youth is; and by how much the less able children are to help and guide themselves.

61. *Of parents' neglect of their children for the time to come.*

Contrary to a parent's providence for the good of his children after his departure, is the carelessness of parents for the time to come. They think the world is gone with them when they are gone, and therefore they will take no thought for the future times that shall be after them; as if it were enough for everyone to look to his own time. There may seem to be more self-love in such parents than love of their children, in that their care determineth with their own time, and extendeth not itself to the time and continuance of their children. Hence is it, that not a word of direction and exhortation cometh out of their mouths to their children when they are departing, no blessing that they will leave behind them, no friend shall be deputed by them, to be as parents to their children. Let God provide, say they. But where there is a referring of matters to God's providence, without the use of those means which God hath warranted and commended by his word, there can be little hope that God should take care of that which is so commended to him. Such men do not in faith depend upon God's providence, but make the very name thereof a pretext to cast off that care, which God as a bounden duty requireth of them. As there is little love of their children in such parents, so there is less zeal of God's glory: for a parent's care of his children's welfare, especially of their continuing to fear and serve the Lord after their own departure out of this world, is an especial means of preserving God's fear in the world, and propagating it from age to age: so as this neglect is a greater fault than many are aware of.

62. *Of parents making a Will before they die.*

The two particular things to be observed by parents for manifestation of their provident care over their children for the time to come, even after their departure, especially in regard of their temporal estate, are these,

1. That they make a Will.

2. That they leave their estates to their children.

1. It hath been an ancient commendable practice both among God's people, and others also, that have been guided with common civility, when they who have any estate, wax old, or sick, and have any occasion of expecting death offered unto them, to make their last Will and Testament. This is set forth in the Old Testament under this phrase [*Put thy house in order*]. A duty it is expressly commanded by God (2 Kings 20:1): and that not without good reason. For

1. A parent's Will is an especial means to settle peace among children after his departure, and to make them content with that allowance which he hath set out unto them, because by the Will they know it was their father's pleasure they should have such and such a portion. If controversies should arise, yet a Will is a means for the law speedily to determine the same without any tedious and chargeable suits: for the Apostle taketh it for a ruled case, that *no man disannulleth or addeth any thing to a man's testament* (Gal 3:15).

2. After a parent hath made his Will, he may the more quietly settle himself for heavenly contemplations, and preparations to death: and think of such good instructions as are most fit to give as his farewell to his children: and the more willingly expect the moment of his dissolution: and the more patiently submit himself to the very stroke of death.

In performing this duty, a man must both observe a fit time, and also take good advice. The fit time is while his understanding is good, and his memory perfect: so as he may call to mind his debts, what he oweth, and what is owing to him: as also what goods he hath to bestow, and with discretion and wisdom order his estate. And because through the cavils which many

unconscionable lawyers and others are like to make, his true meaning may be perverted, it is meet to have the advice of such as can in distinct words and phrases so express his meaning, as they shall be free from exception. Matters of weight are wisely to be managed.

63. *Of neglecting to make a Will.*

Contrary is the daily practice of too many parents who are not willing to make any Will at all: or else on vain hope that they may live longer, and when they are sick, upon conceit that they may recover, or at least longer continue to enjoy the use of their understanding and memory, put off the making of their Will till it be too late: and so die without Will, or make such a Will as ministereth more matter of suit, than if they had no Will at all; either because doubt is made whether he that made it had his understanding and memory or no: or because his Will is so abrupt and ambiguous, as his meaning cannot be known. The mischiefs that follow these neglects, are many. As

1. Discredit to the party deceased.
2. Contentions among his surviving children.
3. Wasting a great part, if not his whole estate, in suits of law.
4. Defeating many creditors of their due debt.

The reason which maketh many to put off the making of their Will is a foolish conceit, that if a man's Will be once made, then he must needs die out of hand. But what ground have men for any such conceit? If sickness grow upon a man, so long as his Will is unmade his mind is unsettled, his mind being unsettled, the physic that is ministered to him cannot so kindly work; so as his death may be the more hastened for not making a Will. Besides, if his speech fail before his understanding, the thought that then he shall die without a Will may so perplex him, as his departure will be very unquiet and troublesome.

64. *Of parents leaving their estate to their children when they die.*

It was before shewed that parents were to lay up a portion for their children against their entrance into a calling, and marriage (see Section 56): There is a further duty required when they are going out of the world, namely that *they leave their whole estate to their children*. [Where I say *whole*, I exempt not works of charity, nor payment of debts, which is a point of justice, but I include more than is given as portions or stocks in their lifetime.] That estate especially which parents have received from their progenitors are they most bound to leave unto their children. It is expressly recorded that *Abraham gave all that he had to Isaac* (Gen 25:5). God's Law did provide for this among the Jews: for a man might not sell his land to cut it off from his posterity (Lev 25:23). This was it that made *Naboth* refuse to sell his vineyard to *Ahab* as his answer implieth, *God forbid that I should give the inheritance of my fathers unto thee* (1 Kings 21:3): because it was the inheritance of his fathers, that is, he had received it from them, he thought it unlawful to deprive his children of it. This phrase [*if children, then heirs* (Rom 8:17)] taketh it for a granted truth that children have a right to their parents' estate: and if they have a right thereto, they may not be defeated thereof.

God giveth wealth unto parents but for their life time: in which time they are but as guardians unto God's children, and are accountable to God: so as they have not an absolute power to do with it what they will, but according to the directions of the great Lord and Master they must use it, reserve it, and leave it. For this end parents must order their manner of living according to that portion which the Lord hath appointed unto them, and by his providence bestowed upon them; they must [as it is said in the proverb] *cut their coat according to their cloth*. Of the two it is much better for parents to live under, than above their means. Provided that they neglect no duty of charity, or justice: nor through miserableness and niggardliness carry themselves unbecoming the place wherein God hath set them, and estate which he hath bestowed upon them. He that liveth somewhat under his means, hath opportunity to lay up portions for other children [if he have many] and to reserve his inheritance entire to his eldest [beside many other good works of charity as God shall offer occasion] which he that liveth above his means cannot do.

65. *Of the inconveniences which improvident parents bring their children unto after their death.*

Contrary to this branch of a parent's providence, are many courses of improvident parents: For

1. Some parents lavish and bezel out all their estate in their own life time, making it to determine in their persons. Unworthy they are to receive any inheritance from ancestors. Their fault is double.

1. In spending prodigally above their estate.

2. In wronging their children, and depriving them of their right: for particular persons succeeding one another are but as divers links of a continued family, which are by God's providence added one to another: this chain is not to be broken at any man's pleasure; but for the preservation thereof, that which hath been received of the predecessors, must be left to the successors.

2. Others leave their estate to their children, but so encumbered with debts, bonds, recognizances, and statutes, as their children were better be without it, than have it. For the having it maketh them live at an answerable rate, and bringeth many burdens upon them: besides, the debts wherein they stand obliged make them as *servants to their creditors* (Prov 22:7): and in time they must be forced to sell all, or as captives lie in prison.

3. Others though they deal not so hardly with their children, yet they deal too hardly by peeling and polling their inheritance as much as they can: they will not forbear to make any present gain that they can, though it tend never so much to the prejudice and damage of their children after them: as they who cut down all the timber and wood that they can, and take out all the heart of their land.

4. Among these may be reckoned such parents as by mere negligence suffer things to go to decay for want of timely reparations: whereby it cometh to pass, that such damages as in the parent's time might have been prevented with laying out a few shillings, cannot be renewed with many pounds.

5. Such also as care not in their life time to clear the titles of those things which they leave to their children: but leave all things so unsettled and litigious, as it oft costs children more in suit of law to maintain the inheritance which their parents leave them, than the inheritance is worth: and yet after all their pains and cost lose the inheritance too: whereas the parent that knew more than the child can, might with small pains and charge have well settled and cleared all.

These are mischiefs that many children have been brought into by the improvidence of their parents: which are the rather to be made known, that such as come after, may prove the more provident for their children.

66. Of parents' impartial respect to all their children.

Hitherto of parents' duties. The persons to whom those duties are to be performed, are distinctly to be considered.

The parties to whom parents are to perform all the forenamed duties are expressed under this word [*children*] which hath not any special respect to priority of birth, to constitution of body, to affection of parent, or any such thing, as if first born, proper, beautiful, darling, or the like children were only meant, but all that are begotten and born of parents, all their children are meant. Whence I observe, that

Parents ought to have an impartial respect to all their children, and perform duty indifferently and equally to all. We have for proof hereof God's pattern, who accounteth all his children *dear* or *beloved children*. The Greek word translated *dear* is very emphatical: it is properly attributed to an only child: the seventy that translated the Hebrew Bible into Greek, do with this word interpret that phrase, *Only Son*: for where in Hebrew it is thus said to *Abraham, take thy son, thine only one*, they thus translate it, *take thy son, thy dear one*, or thy beloved one (Gen 22:2). Other Greek authors do so attribute the same word to an only child, yea also and to an only eye: as when a man hath but *one eye* they call it a *beloved eye*. This word then sheweth that God so respecteth all his children, as if all were but one, all a first born, all a darling child. So *rare* a virtue this impartial respect is [*rare* in the excellency of it, *rare* also in the scarcity of it] as throughout the Scripture I can scarce find a perfect pattern thereof among the sons of men. Many may be given of the contrary, as we shall after hear. But the more rare it is, the more we must labour after it, that so may resemble God's fatherhood.

1. All our children come from our own substance and bowels. Why then should we respect one child above another, more than we do one eye, or one ear above another? We are as tender over one as over another, though it may be we have more use of one than of another.

2. All our children are alike committed to us by God: the same precepts and directions given for all alike: the like account to be given for all. If a King should commit many of his children to one nurse, would not he be offended [and that justly] if she should put such a difference betwixt them, through a foolish partiality, as to respect some, and neglect others?

67. Of parents preferring a dutiful child before a disobedient child.

Object. What if one child be more pious to God and parent, another more rebellious, may not a parent respect *that* more than *this*?

1. *Answ.* He may take notice of their different carriage and accordingly reward the one, and punish the other, and yet carry an equal desire of doing good to both of them alike: for the punishing of the rebellious child is a parent's duty; an evidence of love, and a means of doing him good.

2. *Answ.* It is no partiality to like grace and goodness in a child, and for grace and goodness' sake to love his child so much the more, as also for impiety and obstinacy in rebellion to have his heart the more alienated from his child: this is rather a virtue in a parent. Partiality is when on by and under respects one child is preferred before another.

68. Of the prerogative of the first born son.

1. *Quest.* May not a parent prefer his first born child, and heir before his other children?

Answ. We must put difference betwixt a father's disposing his estate upon his children, and the ordering of his affection towards them. A parent's affection, and care of good education, and desire of true good, and faithful prayers to God, may be as great towards his younger children, as towards his eldest son and heir, and yet may he bestow the greatest patrimony upon the heir: which is no partiality.

2. *Quest.* Is it then just and equal that the eldest son should have a greater patrimony than any of the rest?

Answ. It is most just and equal. For

1. God hath so appointed it: yea he made this to be one of the prerogatives of the first born, to have a double portion on (Deut 21:17). Upon this ground *Joseph*, who was the first born of the true wife, had a double portion; and as a testimony thereof his posterity made two tribes.

2. The laws of all nations do order as much.

3. Our law giveth the whole inheritance of freeholds to the eldest son: in which respect it is due unto him. For in civil and temporal matters this rule is true, *we live by law*. I take it to be a matter of conscience for a parent to leave that to every child which by law is due to him. Neither is it without good reason that the law ordaineth that a parent's whole estate of freehold land should descend: for

1. There is an excellency in the first born, as is evident by *Jacob's* speech to his eldest son, *thou art my first born, my might, and the beginning of my strength, the excellency of dignity, and the excellency of power* (Gen 49:3). And thereupon God took the first born as peculiar to himself (Exod 13:2).

2. Houses and families by this means are upheld and continued from age to age. How needful it is for the establishment of a Commonwealth that families should thus be continued, is evident both by experience to all such as have but half an eye to see wherein the stability of a Commonwealth consisteth, and also by the many laws which God ordained among the Jews for this purpose: as

1. That no land should be quite cut off from a family (Lev 25:23).

2. That if any through poverty were forced to sell his land, the next of kin was to buy it (Lev 25:25).

3. That if a man that had sold his land, could by no means redeem it again, at the year of Jubilee he was to have the possession of it again (Lev 25:28).

4. That if daughters were heirs they should not marry out of their father's tribe: and this reason is given, *that every man may enjoy the inheritance of his fathers* (Num 36:8).

Object. By leaving the whole inheritance to the eldest, he may be made a gentleman, and all the other beggars.

Answer. In this respect parents ought to be so much the more provident for their other children, in training them up to callings, or laying up portions, or settling other estates upon them beside the main inheritance, or in taking order that competent portions be raised out of the inheritance of the eldest son, in case God take them away before they have otherwise provided for the children.

Out of this answer may a third reason be gathered, to shew that it is a behoveful law for the Commonwealth that the heir should have all the land. For this law maketh parents more careful in training up their younger sons to sundry callings which are profitable to a Commonwealth. If every child should have a part of his father's lands, they would all so depend thereupon, as none of them would exercise themselves to such callings as are means of men's maintenance.

69. Of parents' partiality towards some children.

Contrary to the forenamed duty of a parent's equal respect to all his children, is partiality in fathers and mothers, manifested sundry ways. For

1. Many parents have their darling children, to whom so much affection is shewed, as in comparison none is shewed to others. When some are hugged in the bosom, others are neglected as if they were none of their own, but basely born. The unnaturalness of the eagle is noted in this kind, that she flaps and drives out of the nest one of her young ones, and feedeth only the other as her own. From such partiality in parents proceed many mischiefs: as these,

1. They give occasion to such as observe it, to suspect that those children who are so little respected, are none of their own.

2. They cause envy, malice, and much contention to arise among children. *When Joseph's brethren saw that their father loved him more than all them, they hated him, and could not speak peaceably unto him* (Gen 37:4).

3. They provoke God to inflict some judgment on those children that are so cockered, and preferred before the rest: that so they may the better see their folly.

This sin of parents' partiality is so much the greater, when upon outward respects they prefer the wicked and ungodly children before pious and gracious children. *Isaac* herein much failed, for *he loved Esau* [a profane wretch (Heb 12:16)] *because he did eat of his venison* (Gen 25:28).

2. Other parents so set themselves to raise their house, as all their care is to advance their eldest son, by education, by liberal allowance, and by leaving all they have to him: and in the mean while neglect their younger children. Though [as was noted before (see Section 68)] the main inheritance may justly without shew of partiality be left to the heir, yet to be careful only for him, and to neglect the other, favoureth rank of partiality. It is most agreeable to natural reason, that as life is given to all children, so means of maintaining life should be given to all.

3. In the number of partial parents may that be reckoned, who unjustly disinherit their first born. For the inheritance of right belonging to them, and they not deserving to be disinherited, assuredly it is some by respect or other which maketh parents prefer the younger before the elder: and this is plain partiality. This kind of partiality is commonly in such parents as have had children by several wives. Sometimes dislike of a former wife maketh a father dislike the children he hath by her, and through dislike to disinherit the heir by her. God gave the Jews an express law against this kind of partiality (Deut 21:15).

Sometimes again a gripulous seeking of advantage to themselves maketh parents to disinherit the right heir: as when a man after he hath buried the mother of his first born, hearing of another woman which is of great wealth, maketh suit for her. She refuseth because he hath an heir of a former wife. He to remove that block entereth covenant to make the son which he hath by her [if he have any] his heir: hereupon the marriage is consummate: his second wife bringeth forth a son: he for his covenant sake disinherits the first heir. An unjust, and unlawful practice.

70. Of the causes for which the first born may be disinherited.

Quest. May not then a first born son be disinherited?

Ans. Yes, The Scripture noteth two causes wherein the first born may be put from the inheritance.

1. If he be illegitimate: for such an one hath no good title: *The son of the bondwoman shall not be heir with my son*, saith *Sarah* (Gen 21:10), and that justly. To like purpose say the sons of *Gilead's* wife to *Jephthah*, *Thou shalt not inherit in our father's house, for thou art the son of a strange woman* (Judg 11:2). Just was that blame which *Jotham* laid upon the men of *Shechem* of making *Abimelech* the base son of *Jerubbaal* King (Judg 9:18): and just was God's vengeance upon them for that wrong done to *Jerubbaal's* legitimate children.

2. If he be notoriously wicked. Thus *Reuben* for committing abominable incest lost his birthright (Gen 49:4; 1 Chron 5:1).

Many particular crimes are reckoned up by the civil lawyers, which would be too long here to recite.

71. Of the duty of fathers and mothers in law.

The extent of this title [*Fathers*] is in the last place to be considered. Not only natural parents themselves, but also all that are in their place are comprised under it. As they who are in the place of parents,

1. By the bond of marriage.
2. By propinquity of blood.
3. By voluntary appointment.

The first sort are fathers and mothers in law: who are so reckoned either by the marriage of parents themselves, or by the marriage of their children.

That man or woman which is married to a parent that had children before their marriage, is in the place of a natural parent: thus *Joseph* was a father to *Jesus* (Luke 2:48), and *Keturah* a mother to *Isaac* (Gen 25:1). So again the natural parents of the son that hath married a wife, or of that daughter that is married to an husband, are in the place of parents to the wife of their son, and to the husband of their daughter. Thus *Jethro* was a father to *Moses* (Exod 18:1), and *Naomi* a mother to *Ruth* (Ruth 3:1).

All these are to account their children in law [that is, the children of their husband and wife, or the wives of their sons, and the husbands of their daughters] as their own natural children, and according to the age and place of these children to perform the forenamed duties, and every way to seek their good [except in such duties as after a peculiar manner belong to natural parents, as *nursing* to a natural mother, *leaving the inheritance* to a natural parent].

For a pattern hereof take the forenamed examples of *Joseph* and *Naomi*. What natural parents could do more for their own children than *Joseph* did for *Jesus*, and *Naomi* for *Ruth*? The history noteth how *Joseph* took care to have his wives' children circumcised, and presented in the temple (Luke 2:21,22): how he fled from place to place to preserve the child's life (Matt 2:14): how perplexed he was when he thought the child was lost (Luke 2:48): how he trained him up in his own house (Luke 2:51). The history also noteth how *Naomi* brought *Ruth* her son's wife into her own country, and retained her with herself (Ruth 1:22), and directed her whither to go (Ruth 2:22), and what husband to have (Ruth 3:1), and became a nurse to her child (Ruth 4:16).

1. Marriage maketh man and wife one flesh: in which respect they ought to have one mind, and the same affections, as mutually each to other, so jointly to the children of each other. On which ground also the husband and wife of a child, being one flesh with the child, ought as the child to be respected. On this ground God counteth the Saints his *dear children* (Eph 5:1), because they espoused to his natural son (2 Cor 11:2).
2. To respect the children of an husband or wife as their own, is a great evidence of entire love to the husband and wife. And

to respect the husband and wife of a child is a great evidence of love to the child itself. If the world's proverb hold true [*love me and love my dog*] how much more true is this Christian rule, *love me and love my child*: or *love me and love mine husband*: or *love me and love my wife*.

3. This also is an especial means to kindle and preserve mutual love betwixt man and wife, who have children of former husbands and wives: as also betwixt parents and children.

72. *Of the perverse carriage of fathers and mothers in law to their children.*

Contrary is the carriage of most fathers and mothers in law: especially of those who are married to husbands or to wives that had children before marriage: so far they are from performing the forenamed duty, as rather they envy at the prosperity of their husbands' and wives' children: and secretly endeavour to hinder it in what they can: and cunningly seek to alienate the natural parents' affection from them: whence fearful tragedies have been made, and lamentable mischiefs have followed. What other reason can be given hereof but a plain instigation of the devil, who thus laboureth to disunite those whom God hath joined together? For avoiding this snare note the mischiefs that follow from thence.

1. Such parents sin against God's ordinance: and as *Eve*, lean more to Satan's suggestion than to God's direction.

2. They alienate the hearts and affections of one from another: not only from their children, but from themselves.

3. They provoke their children in law to contemn and despise them, and to yield no duty unto them.

Hence note into what an hell unkind fathers and mothers in law do cast themselves. If this were duly weighed, I think they would be otherwise minded. But the god of this world doth so blind their eyes with self-love, and with envy, that they cannot see the mischiefs whereinto they implunge themselves.

This is a point the more to be weighed, because the fault here taxed is so common, and hath in all ages been too common. What grievous complaints have in former times been made, and still are made by children against fathers, and mothers in law? Whence also direful imprecations have followed. Let widowers and widows that have children seriously think of it beforehand: and be the more circumspect in taking a second or third husband or wife: and after they are married let them take heed of Satan's snares: and let conscience of duty more prevail with them, than corruption of nature.

73. *Of the faults of parents to their children's husbands and wives.*

Many parents to the husbands and wives of their children do also much transgress and swerve from their duty: for

1. They will shew much more respect to their own children than to the children of their husbands or wives: as by coming to their daughter's when their husbands are abroad, and never but then: and sending for their sons to their house, but not for their wives.

2. In all differences they will take part with their own children, though it be in the worse part, and shew great partiality.

3. They will oft give very ill counsel: advising their sons to keep their wives short: advising their daughters not to be too subject to their husbands, yea privily to purloin from their husbands.

4. If they live with their children, they will so pry into every thing that their children's husband or wife doth, and shew such suspicion and jealousy in every thing, as they cannot but cause much discord: and hence it oft cometh to pass, that either parents and child, or husband and wife must be parted: they cannot all in peace live together.

These faults I thus note, that they may the more carefully be avoided.

74. *Of their duty who are instead of parents to orphans.*

The next sort of those who are instead of parents, are those who in blood and kindred are next to parents: as grandfathers, grandmothers, uncles, aunts, elder brothers, or sisters, their husbands or wives, and cousins. These commonly are counted to be in the place of parents, when God taketh away natural and immediate parents from their children: so as they are par-

ents to orphans.

The duties which were prescribed to natural parents appertain to them [except before excepted (see Section 71)]. Their duty is to see these orphans well educated, well placed in some good calling, well married, and [if the orphans be left destitute of means] well provided for.

Mordecai is a worthy precedent and pattern for this kind of parent. *He brought up Esther his uncle's daughter* [for she had neither father nor mother], *he took her for his own daughter* (Esth 2:7): when she was taken from him, *he went to know how she did, and what should become of her* (Esth 2:11): and he gave her advice from time to time how to carry herself (Esth 2:22; 4:13). Let such as are parents to orphans take this example as a direction, and as a motive to perform the other duties prescribed to natural parents as need requireth, and occasion is offered.

God by his providence taking away natural parents committeth their orphans as a charge to the next of kin: that as their natural parents brought them forth, these should bring them up: therefore for their recompence let them look to God, [who taketh upon himself to be a father of the fatherless (Psa 68:5)] and for their encouragement remember the reward which *Mordecai* received of the Lord: yea also let them remember the blessing that God bestowed upon *Esther*. God doth oft so bless the means used for the education of orphans, as they who take the care thereof have no cause to repent their pains and cost, but rather have much matter of comfort, joy and thanksgiving.

75. Of the common neglect of orphans.

Too too common is the contrary disposition of most kinsmen, and kinswomen; they think they are bound to none but their own children, and if they have no children, to none at all. Many are of *Ruth's* kinsman's mind, they fear *to marry their own inheritance* (Ruth 4:6). Though they be themselves exceeding rich, and spend much in apparel, pastimes, and housekeeping, yet they can suffer the orphans of their poor kindred to want, and to beg for need.

This is it that maketh the loss of natural parents to be so much the greater. And herein many Christians are more inhuman than the heathen: which the Apostle implieth, where he saith, *they are worse than infidels* (1 Tim 5:8): for orphans' next of kin are to be reckoned among those whom the Apostle termeth a man's Own.

76. Of the duties of guardians.

The last sort of those who are in place of parents, are such as have the charge of children committed to them by voluntary appointment of parents, or are chosen by children themselves, or by the Magistrate when parents are dead, or lunatic, or any other way impotent, and unable to train up their own children.

Of these care and conscience is rather required, than cost and charges: for commonly both their charges are allowed, and their pains recompenced.

They who by reason of the death or impotency of natural parents have the charge of children committed to them, are commonly called *Guardians*: of whom two general duties are required.

1. That they look to their pupil's good education.
2. That they preserve their patrimony and inheritance.

For *their education*, the directions given before to natural parents are to be observed by them.

For *preservation of their patrimony*, they must do for their pupils what they would do for their own children; and so carry themselves, as with good conscience they may give that account to their pupils, or any other, which the Law requireth.

The two forenamed duties, are the main ends for which guardians are chosen: in performing whereof, if they be faithful, great redress will be made of the untimely death of parents; and notwithstanding parents die before their children be of discretion to manage their estate, yet will their houses and families be maintained, and young heirs kept from cunning-catchers and cheaters.

It is noted of *John* who had the mother of *Jesus* commended to him, that *he took her to his own home* (John 19:27): whereby is implied his provident care for her good.

77. Of the fraud of guardians.

Contrary is the practice of most guardians, who take pupils for their own advantage, and make a prey of them. The heathen could say, that guardianship is to be performed for the benefit of the pupil, and not of the guardian. Yet among Christians is the forenamed fault of guardians.

1. There are few children [that have not natural parents to look to their good education] but are exceedingly neglected therein, and brought up very rudely and licentious: yea many times too sparingly and niggardly for diet, apparel, and other needful things, though they have sufficient to discharge all that shall be laid out upon them.

2. The main estate and patrimony of many pupils is much impaired: and if they have lands, as much waste is made upon them as possibly can be: and when a reckoning is to be given, it shall be a large, unjust, and most unconscionable reckoning: if the guardian can but get a general release, it is all that he careth for.

3. Marriages are after a sort forced upon many pupils: and such matches put upon them as they cannot like; yea such as are no way fit for them, neither for estate, nor years, nor proportion of body, nor qualities of mind. Little do these guardians think of that account whereunto they shall be brought another day before the Lord, who styleth himself the *helper of the fatherless* (Psa 10:14), and who beholdeth mischief to requite it. Fearful is that judgment which the Lord hath threatened against those that oppress the fatherless (Exo 22:22). Let not therefore unjust guardians think, that the gain they get wrongfully from their pupils shall prosper: but rather let them look for God's curse upon their own children, and goods.

If such as parents themselves have upon their death-beds committed their children unto, in confidence of their faithfulness, shall deal deceitfully with their pupils, their sin is doubled, and trebled. For

1. They violate the bond of friendship, faithfulness, and trust reposed upon them.

2. They sin directly against justice.

3. Most monstrously they transgress the rules of charity.

78. Of the duty of schoolmasters and tutors.

Among those who are by voluntary appointment set in the place of parents, are *Schoolmasters* and *Tutors* to be reckoned. The authority and charge of a parent is for a time committed to them: therefore for that time they ought to perform a parent's duty.

Their duty is appropriated to education: it appertaineth not to them to maintain the children committed to them: they are rather themselves by their pains that way maintained.

All the duties which were before comprised under *nurture*, belong to *schoolmasters* and *tutors*. More particularly they are to instruct children in three things.

1. In learning.

2. In civility, and good manners.

3. In true piety, and religion.

I shall not need to speak more of these points than hath before been delivered (see Section 28 and 34): only to provoke them to be diligent in well nurturing children in those three points, let the benefit of good schoolmasters and tutors be well noted.

Schoolmasters commonly cast the first seed into the hearts of children: they first season them: as the seed is, such will the crop be: as the first seasoning is, so will the savour continue to be. If they sow no good seed at all, what harvest can be looked

for? If they sow a corrupt seed of rudeness, licentiousness, profaneness, superstition, and any wickedness, the crop must needs be answerable thereto. But if they sow the good seed of learning, civility, and piety, there is great hope of a good crop. Hence it followeth that they are of great use, and may bring much good, not only to the children themselves, and their parents, but also to the Church and Commonwealth. *Julian* the Apostate was not ignorant hereof: and therefore endeavouring to root Christianity out of the world, he suffered no man that professed himself a Christian, to teach a school: but instead of Christian schoolmasters, he set up in every part of his dominions, heathenish schoolmasters.

Tutors, to whose government young scholars, that are sent to the Universities, are committed, have to deal with children in their riper years; even when the time of settling them in a course is come: the very time wherein much good may be done to children, or else wherein they may be utterly perverted. There will be little hope of bowing them, and drawing them into another course after they be freed from the government of a tutor. Tutors therefore, as they have need of great wisdom, so of good conscience, that they may have the greater care of their pupils, and take the greater pains in teaching them the three forenamed points, *learning*, *civility*, and *piety*. A good tutor may do much to repair the negligence, and amend the defects of a schoolmaster: but there remain none to redress the failings of a tutor: children for the most part are past redressing, when they cease to have a tutor.

79. Of the negligence of schoolmasters and tutors.

The vices contrary to the forenamed duty of schoolmasters, are these.

1. *Unskillfulness*. Many that are more fit to be taught than to teach, take upon them this weighty calling. Some have not sufficient learning: some again are rude, and know not themselves good manners: and some know not the first principles of the oracles of God. No good can be expected from these.
2. *Covetousness*. All that many seek, is to multiply the number of their scholars, and to get as much as they can for boarding, and teaching: they aim more at their own gain than at their scholar's profit. Children are not like to thrive well under them.
3. *Negligence*. Many are loath to take the pains of a schoolmaster, and thereupon come as little into the school as they can: take every small occasion to be gone again: care not how much their children play: if they be able to hire a poor usher, all the burden shall be cast upon him. Little is that fruit that can be looked for from them.
4. *Want of piety*. Many skillful and painful schoolmasters, under whose teaching children come forward exceeding well in learning, think it nothing appertaineth to them to teach the grounds of religion, so as they altogether neglect piety. Assuredly they want it themselves: for were their own hearts seasoned with true piety, their consciences would move them to teach it to their children. The things of the kingdom of God are like unto *leaven*, which seasoneth the whole batch of dough with that season and savour which itself hath. When children spend almost all their time with their schoolmasters, of whom should they learn it, if not of them? What blessing can be hoped from the pains of such schoolmasters?

I might to these add the over-much remissness of some [whereby children get too great an head] and the too great severity of others, either in frequency of correcting, as if they delighted therein; or in the measure thereof, as if they had to do with beasts, whereby they affright children, make them dull, yea and impudent also. But these extremes were before handled (see Section 48 and 49).

The common fault of tutors is altogether to neglect their pupils. Many think a tutor to be a meretitular matter: no more to be required of them but to bear the very name; and to undertake that the College be discharged for their pupils' diet. This conceit, and the practice answerable thereunto, is the blemish and bane of the Universities. Many children well trained up in schools, utterly lose the benefit of all their former education when they are sent to the University, because their tutors altogether leave them to themselves: and so they are made a prey to idle and lewd companions. By reason hereof many parents are utterly discouraged to send their children to the University.

The Seventh Treatise

Duties of Servants

1. *A resolution of the Apostle's direction to servants.*

Ephesians 6:5-8. *Servants be obedient to them that are your masters according to the flesh, with fear and trembling in singleness of your heart, as unto Christ. Not with eye-service, as men-pleasers, but as the servants of Christ, doing the will of God from the heart. With good will doing service, as to the Lord, and not to men. Knowing that whatsoever good thing any man doth, the same shall he receive of the Lord, whether he be bond or free.*

The third and last couple of a family are masters and servants.

The direction which the Apostle giveth to servants, is in this text set down.

Therein he 1. declareth their duties, 2. addeth motives to perform them.

I. In declaring servants' duties he noteth 1. the *kinds*, 2. the *manner*, 3. the *extent* of them.

1. The kinds of servants' duties are noted in two words, *obey* (v. 5), *serve* (v. 7).

2. The manner is set down *affirmatively* (vv. 5,7), *negatively* (vv. 6,7).

1. *Affirmatively* by shewing what graces are requisite: to which purpose he reckoneth up four particulars.

1. *Fear and trembling.*

2. *Singleness of heart.*

3. *Conscience to Christ.*

4. *Good will.* Under which are comprised 1. cheerfulness, 2. readiness, 3. diligence, 4. faithfulness.

2. *Negatively*, by shewing what vices are to be avoided, and these are two especially,

1. *Eye-service*, which is opposed to *doing of things as Christ's servants, from the heart.*

2. *Men-pleasing*, which is opposed to *doing the will of God.*

3. The extent of servants' duties is noted in these four phrases, 1. masters *after the flesh* (v. 5), 2. *as to Christ* (v. 5), 3. *as servants of Christ* (v. 6), 4. *doing God's will* (v. 6).

II. The motives which the Apostle useth are partly *implied* and *expressed*.

They are *implied* three ways.

1. By declaring the place of a master [*as to Christ*].

2. By noting out the honour of their service [*as servants of Christ*].

3. By shewing the ground of servants' subjection [*God's will*].

The motive expressed is the *recompence* which servants shall have for their pains largely laid forth (v. 8).

Therein these distinct points are noted in order.

1. The assurance thereof [*knowing*].

2. The ground thereof, taken from a general rule [*whatsoever good thing any man doth*].

3. The particular application thereof [*whether bond or free*].

4. The kind thereof [*the same shall he receive*].

5. The author and giver thereof [*of the Lord*].

2. Of the lawfulness of a master's place and power.

In handling servants' duties I will proceed according to the order propounded. In the first place therefore I will note out the *kinds* of servants' duties.

For finding out the kinds, I will observe the method followed in handling children's duties. Note then

1. The *fountain* of servants' duties.

2. The *streams* that issue from thence.

The *fountain* resteth partly in the *opinion*, and partly in the *affection* of servants.

In their *opinion* they must be informed and resolved that the place of a master and a servant is lawful and warrantable: that God in general ordained degrees of superiority and inferiority, of authority and subjection: and in particular gave to masters the authority which they have, and put servants in that subjection wherein they are. Till the judgment be resolved hereof, nor reverence, nor obedience will be yielded as it ought. For reverence hath reference to eminency and superiority: and obedience to authority and power. Who will reverence or obey him whom he taketh to be his equal? This was the ground of the conspiracy of *Korah, Dathan and Abiram*, that they thought *Moses and Aaron took too much upon them, and lift themselves up above the congregation of the Lord* (Num 16:3). Wherefore I will here note the grounds of a master's authority, and servants' subjection.

1. *God hath given express commandment* unto masters to govern their servants: and unto servants to be subject to their masters. In the fourth commandment God giveth a charge to masters over their servants, to see that they do no manner of work (Exo 20:10). And the Angel biddeth *Hagar humble herself under her mistress' hands* (Gen 16:9). And here servants are commanded to *obey their masters*.

2. Many directions are given both to masters and servants in regard of their different places how to carry themselves one to another. Read for this purpose the many laws which *Moses* prescribed to both: the many counsels which *Solomon*, in his Proverbs especially, giveth also to both: and particularly the directions of this and other Apostles.

3. Saints in all ages have been set in these places: some in the places of masters, and some in the places of servants: and according to the place wherein God hath set them, they have performed their duty: masters the duties of masters, and servants the duties of servants.

4. The many parables which Christ useth taken from the power which masters have and exercise over their servants, and the subjection which servants yield to their masters, shew that the authority of the one, and subjection of the other, are things without question granted and not denied.

5. God hath made many promises of reward both to masters, and servants, that conscionably perform the duties of their

place: and hath made many threatenings against the one and the other that are negligent therein.

All these grounds are so clearly and plentifully noted in the Scripture, that any one who is any whit acquainted therewith may know them to be so. Were there no other arguments than this text which I have in hand, it were enough to confound all gainsayers: and to move such as believe the rather for their faith and profession sake to serve their masters after the flesh.

3. Of the Anabaptist's arguments against the authority of masters, and subjection of servants.

Contrary to this first ground of servants' subjection is the opinion of Anabaptists, who teach that all are alike, and that there is no difference betwixt masters and servants. Their reasons, whereby they would make shew to prove their unreasonable opinion, are these.

1. *Object.* Masters are either infidels or Christians, and so servants either one or other. If masters be infidels, and servants Christians, how unmeet is it that Christians should be subject to infidels? and if master and servant be both Christians, they are brothers: but brothers are equals, and neither subject to other.

Answer. Rule and subjection are matters of outward policy, they tend to the outward presentation of Church, Commonwealth, and family, in this world: but faith, piety, and such graces are inward matters of the soul, tending to a better life.

These being thus different, one that is more excellent in the one, may be inferiour in the other. Yea though there be an equality in the one, namely, in spiritual things, yet there may be a disparity in the other, namely, in civil and temporal matters. And though Saints may be far inferiour to infidels in outward estate, yet they are not a whit the less glorious before God. The honour proper and peculiar to Saints is inward, not visible to the carnal eye of a natural man.

2. *Object.* It is against nature for one to be servant, especially a bond-servant to another.

Answer. To grant that it is against that absolute and perfect nature wherein at first God created man, and that it came in by sin, yet is it not against that order and course of nature wherein God hath now settled man. God hath turned many punishments of sin to be bounden duties; *as subjection of wife to husband, and man's eating bread in the sweat of his brow.*

3. *Object.* It is the prerogative of Christians to be *all one* (Gal 3:28) but subjection of servants to masters is against that prerogative.

Answer. That prerogative is merely spiritual: for *in Christ all are one*, as they are members of Christ, which is a spiritual body: not as they are members of a politic body. A politic inequality is not against a spiritual equality.

4. *Object.* This subjection is against the liberty that Christ hath purchased for us, and wherewith he hath made us free (Gal 5:1).

Answer. It is not. For that liberty is from the curse and rigour of the moral law: from the ceremonial law and the rites thereof: from Satan, sin, death, and damnation: but not from those degrees which God hath established betwixt man and man, for the good of mankind.

5. *Object.* We are expressly forbidden to be *servants of men* (1 Cor 7:23).

Answer. *To be a servant* in that place is not simply to be in subjection under another (see Treatise 1, Sections 124-126), and to do service unto him, but to be so obsequious to a man, so addicted to please him, and so subject to his will, as to do whatsoever he will have done: to regard nothing but his pleasure: to prefer it before God's word and will. It is not therefore the thing itself, but an excess therein which is there forbidden.

4. Of a servant's fear of his master.

The other part of that fountain, from whence the duties of servants flow, resteth in the affection: and it is in one word *fear*: which is an awful dread of a master. An *awe* in regard of his master's place: a *dread* in regard of his master's power. An *awe* is such a reverend esteem of his master, as maketh him *account his master worthy of all honour*: which *S. Paul* expressly enjoineth servants to do (1 Tim 6:1). A *dread* is such a fear of provoking his master's wrath, as maketh him think and cast every

way how to please him. This is it which the Apostle here intimateth under these two words, *fear* and *trembling*. In both these respects *S. Peter* commandeth servants to be *subject in all fear* (1 Peter 2:18).

So proper is this *fear* to a servant in relation to his master, as where it is wanting, there is a plain denial of his master's place and power; which God intimateth under this expostulation, *If I be a master, where is my fear* (Mal 1:6)? that is, you plainly shew that you account me not your master, because in your heart there is no *fear* of me.

This fear will draw servants on, cheerfully to perform all duty: the more it aboundeth, the more desire and endeavour there will be to please, and to give good contentment [and this is a point commanded to servants, *to please well in all things* (Titus 2:9)] yea it will glad the heart of a servant to see his service prosper well: hereof we have a worthy pattern in *Abraham's* servant (Gen 24), whose care to do his business, as his master would have it, and prayer for God's assistance therein, and thanks for God's blessing thereon, sheweth an awful respect which he bare to his master.

Again, on the other side, this fear will keep men from offending their masters [which was one reason that moved *Joseph* not to yield to his mistress (Gen 39:8)] and in this respect it may prevent many mischiefs which their master's offence and wrath might bring upon them.

One especial means to breed and preserve this fear in servants, is, a due consideration of the ground of their master's place and power: which is God's appointment: God hath placed them in his stead, and in part given them his power: they are the deputies and Ministers of God, and therefore in Scripture the title [*Lord*] is after a peculiar manner given to them. What maketh subjects stand in awe of inferiour Magistrates? Is it not because they bear the King's person, and have authority and power given unto them of the King?

5. Of the extremes contrary to servants' fear of their masters.

Two extremes are contrary to this servant-like fear.

1. In the excess a *slavish fear*: when they fear nothing but the revenging power of their master: the staff or the cudgel, as we speak: so they may avoid that, they care not whither their master be pleased or no. This maketh them oft to wish that their masters had no power over them: or that they were dead. This was that fear which possessed the heart of that unprofitable servant, who said to his master, *I knew thee that thou art an hard man, and I was afraid* (Matt 25:24,25). Such servile servants will never be profitable.

2. In the defect, a light esteem and plain contempt of masters. That this is contrary to fear is evident by that opposition which God maketh betwixt them in these words, *If I be a master, where is my fear, O ye that despise my name* (Mal 1:6)? As if he had said; Hereby ye shew that ye fear me not as a master, because ye despise me. This sin of despising masters is expressly forbidden (1 Tim 6:2): and for it was *Hagar dealt hardly withal* (Gen 16:6). When masters are poor, mean, weak, aged, or otherwise impotent, then proud servants are prone to despise them: which argueth a base mind, shewing that they respect their master's power more than his place: the poorest and weakest have the same place and authority over servants, that the richest and strongest have; all bear God's image alike: but disdainful proud servants shew that they regard not God's image at all.

6. Of servants' reverence in speech.

The two main *streams* which issue out of the forenamed *fountain*, are *reverence* and *obedience*.

Reverence is manifested in *speech* and *carriage*.

In speech by *refraining* and *well ordering* speech.

Servants' reverence in restraining speech is manifested three ways.

The general points which were before delivered of the reverence of wives to their husbands (see Treatise 3, Section 13), and of children to their parents (see Treatise 5, Sections 4 and 5), may be applied to servants: and pressed upon them as an argument from the less to the greater thus, If wives [who in many things have a joint authority with their husbands] and children [who are not in so servile a degree subject to their parents, as servants to their masters] must manifest their inward fear of their husbands and parents by outward reverence, much more must servants to their masters. To declare the force of this

consequence so much the more, let it be noted that the Apostle addeth another kind of word here, than he did before, either in wives' or children's duties, namely *trembling* (see Treatise 1, Section 124).

1. By sparing to speak, without just cause in their master's presence or audience: This phrase [*they stand continually before thee and hear thy wisdom* (1 Kings 10:8)] spoken of *Solomon's* servants, sheweth that they were slow to speak and swift to hear in their master's presence.
2. By forbearing to reply when they observe their masters unwilling that they should speak any more. Thus did *Peter* forbear when his master gave him this short answer, *What is that to thee* (John 21:22)?
3. By attending to that which their masters shall deliver to them: for servants ought to shew such a respect to their master's speaking to them, as *Samuel* did to God, when he said, *Speak for thy servant heareth* (1 Sam 3:10). The titles of *Lord* and *servant* do shew, that this speech is taken from the duty of servants. The notation of the Greek word used by the Apostle, and translated *obey*, implieth as much (see Treatise 1, Sections 96 and 124). This reverence did *Abraham's* servant shew to his master, when he gave him a charge about choosing a wife for his son (Gen 24:9).

Servants for well ordering their speech unto their masters must observe five cautions.

1. That they have just occasion to speak: and that is either when their masters require them to speak [as the disciples (Matt 16:14)] or when they see it behoveful for their masters that they should speak. In such cases *speech* argueth reverence, as well as *silence* in other cases.

Quest. In what cases may it be behoveful for masters that their servants speak to them?

Answ. 1. When they know any thing that may be profitable for their masters, they ought to declare it, though they be not asked: as that maid which told her mistress *Naaman's* wife (2 Kings 5:3), that there was a prophet in Samaria that could deliver him of his leprosy.

2. When masters through ignorance, passion, or such like cause, refuse to do that which their servants know to be good for them, they ought to persuade their masters to do it; as *Naaman's* servants persuaded their master to wash himself in Jordan as the prophet advised him (2 Kings 5:13).

3. When servants are not fully instructed in those things which they ought to do for their master, they ought to ask of him what is to be done, as the disciples who said to their master, *where wilt thou that we prepare for thee to eat the Passover* (Matt 26:17)?

4. When some scruple ariseth in their minds about any charge that their master shall give them, they may inquire of their masters, as *Abraham's* servant when he said, *what if the woman will not come with me* (Gen 24:5)?

5. When their master unjustly suspecteth any evil of them, they may speak to clear their own innocency, as *David* did to *Saul* (1 Sam 24:10).

A second caution for servants well ordering their speech is,

That the very form and manner of their speech when they have just occasion to speak to their masters, do savour of reverence: for which purpose let these particulars be noted.

1. That servants give reverend titles to their masters.

It was in an honourable respect of their master that the servants of *Naaman* called him *Father* (2 Kings 5:13). In Scripture one of God's titles is attributed to masters, as *Lord* (see Section 4).

2. That their words be few, no more than must needs, even when they have occasion to speak: as may be gathered out of the forenamed examples alleged to shew when servants might and ought to speak.

3. That all their words spoken to their master be meek, mild and humble: note for this purpose how the children of the

prophets framed their speech to their master (2 Kings 6:2).

1. They humbly beg leave for themselves to go to Jordan.

2. They entreat him to go, in these words, *vouchsafe I pray thee to go with thy servants*.

3. When one of them had lost the head of his hatchet, as if he durst not be so bold as to speak to his master to get it him again, he referreth the thing to his good pleasure, saying, *Alas master it was but borrowed*.

A third caution is,

That they observe a fit season to speak to their master: as when he is at leisure to hear them: [thus it is noted of the disciples that when their master was *alone* they propounded their questions unto him (Mark 4:10)] or when his mind is quiet, not troubled with passion [thus when *David* observed that *Saul's* mind was somewhat pacified towards him, by that speech he used, *Is this thy voice my son David* (1 Sam 26:17), then he took occasion more freely to speak to him].

A fourth caution is,

That they give a ready and present answer to their master. This is oft commended in *Peter*, that when Christ propounded any question to his disciples, he would presently and readily answer (Matt 16:16; John 6:68).

A fifth caution is,

That all their speeches and answers to their master be true, not daring to tell a lie unto them: this argueth a very reverend respect of a master. When *Eli* demanded of *Samuel* what the Lord had said to him, *Samuel told him every whit and hid nothing from him* (1 Sam 3:18). And when *David* bid the woman of Tekoah not to hide the thing that he should ask her from him (2 Sam 14:18,19), she told him the whole truth. There is a double bond to tie servants hereunto.

1. Their conscience towards God, who is a God of truth.

2. Their respect to their masters with whom they ought to deal faithfully.

Lastly, a servant's reverence ought to be manifested by his speech of his master even behind his back: speaking good of him, and no evil: this part of reverence also did *Abraham's* servant shew to his master (Gen 24:35). Thus shall they shew themselves good, true-hearted, faithful servants, and not parasites.

7. Of the vices contrary to a servant's reverence in speech.

Offences contrary to the forenamed *reverence* of servants to their masters are these.

1. *Sauciness* and boldness in servants when they have no more respect to their master's presence than to any others, but are full of prate, and loud in speech before their master, or in the room next to him, where they may be heard as well as if they were in the same room: much offence is thus oft times given to masters.

2. *Importunity* in speaking, and replying again and again, though their masters do not only shew their dislike thereof, but also expressly charge them to speak no more. Scolding maids that will have the last words of their mistress much offend herein. This is directly against the Apostle's prohibition to servants, that they *answer not again* (Titus 2:9).

3. *Impatience*, when they cannot endure to hear their master make an end of his speech, but either they will interrupt him, or fling away.

4. *Stoutness*, when [as *Solomon* noteth] *though they understand, they will not speak* (Prov 29:19): though they know very well that it is their master's pleasure they should speak, yea though they are bidden to speak, yet their stout stomach, and sullen heart will not suffer them to speak: no though it be never so behoveful for their masters: if they know that their master goeth on in a course very prejudicial to him, yet will not they tell him of it: nay if their master unjustly suspect any evil of them, they will let him abide in that jealousy rather than speak to clear themselves: and if their master do not expressly ap-

point them from time to time what to do, they will never ask: nor if they be doubtful of that which he giveth them in charge, will they further inquire to be resolved thereof. This kind of silence, in these and such like cases, argueth more doggedness than dutifulness.

5. *Disdain*, when they scorn to give the title *master* to him that is set over them, because he is a poor and mean man (see Section 5).

6. *Arrogancy*, when their words are high and lofty against their master, pretending that they are as good as he, though for a time they be under him. Clerks, prentices, waiting women, and such like, being born of gentlemen, and men of good degree, are for the most part guilty of this fault: the reason is, because their birth and parentage maketh them forget their present place and condition; or else [which is worse] maketh them willfully presume above it.

7. *Muttering* and murmuring upon every occasion of discontent: whereby it cometh to pass that they oft provoke much wrath [for *grievous words stir up anger* (Prov 15:1)].

8. *Unseasonable interruption* of their master: speaking to him when he is seriously occupied in some weighty business [as they who told Christ of his mother and brethren when he was preaching (Mark 3:32)] or unseasonably speaking unto him while he is in passion, whereby they oft bring much mischief upon themselves.

9. *Answering their master at their own leisure*, suffering him to call, and call again and again. This doth *Job* complain of, saying, *I called my servant and he gave me no answer* (Job 19:16).

10. *Flapping their master in the mouth with a lie*: like *Gehazi*, who, when he had lewdly fetched money and apparel of *Naaman*, and his master asked him where he had been, said with a fair face, *Thy servant went no whither* (2 Kings 5:25). Let the judgment executed on him make all servants take heed of the like sin. For *lying* is in itself an heinous sin: yet so much the more heinous when it is told to one that hath authority over us, and by reason thereof standeth in God's place.

Lastly, *evil language of their master behind his back*. This is a sin, though that which is spoken to a master's disgrace be true: for the infirmities of a master ought rather to be covered, than revealed and laid open by a servant. How monstrous a sin is it then, to raise slanderous reports against a master which are untrue? This was *Ziba's* sin against *Mephibosheth* his master (1 Sam 16:3).

Hitherto of servants' reverence in speech to their masters.

Their reverence in carriage followeth.

8. Of servants' reverend behaviour to their masters.

For manifestation of a servant's *reverence in carriage* towards his master, three things are especially required.

1. Dutiful obeisance.

2. Respectful behaviour.

3. Modest apparel.

I. Such dutiful and submissive obeisance and courtesy, as beseemeth their sex and place, and that according to the most usual custom of the country and place where they are, must servants perform to their masters, as they have occasion to go to them, to come from them, to receive any charge of them, or to bring any message unto them. Where *Isaac* saith in his blessing given to *Jacob*, *Be lord over thy brethren, and let thy mother's sons bow down to thee* (Gen 27:29), by that phrase of *bowing down*, he noteth the condition of a servant, and withal implieth a servant's duty: on this ground, when the children of the prophets saw that the spirit of *Elijah* rested on *Elisha*, they taking it for an evident sign that God had made him a governor and master over them, *they came to meet him, and bowed themselves to the ground before him* (2 Kings 2:15).

II. Answerable to a servant's obeisance must be his whole behaviour before his master, seasoned and ordered with such modesty and humility, as may manifest an honourable respect to his master: as

1. To *stand* in his master's presence; which testifieth a readiness to perform any service which his master shall appoint him to do: this was one thing noted, and commended by the Queen of *Sheba* in *Solomon's* servants: she saw their *standing*, and said, *happy are these thy servants that stand before thee* (1 Kings 10:5,8). Whereas it is said that she saw also their *sitting*, that phrase sheweth a seemly order which they observed even when they were out of his presence, by giving and taking their right and due place.

2. By uncovering their heads in their master's presence: this in our days, and in the parts of the world where we dwell, is in the male kind a sign and token of subjection.

3. By sobriety and modesty both in countenance, and in the whole disposition of body, especially when servants are in their master's presence: for to compose countenance and whole body soberly, because of the presence of one, argueth a reverend respect of that person, for whose sake that sobriety is shewed.

III. The apparel also which servants wear must be so fashioned and ordered, as it may declare them to be servants, and under their masters, and so it will argue a reverend respect of their masters. One end of apparel, is to shew a difference betwixt superiours and inferiours, persons in authority and under subjection. It pleased the Holy Ghost to note this particular [*and their apparel* (1 Kings 10:5)] as an observable point in *Solomon's* servants.

9. Of the faults of servants contrary to reverence in carriage.

The carriage of many servants towards their master is clean contrary to the forenamed reverence. For

1. Some through rudeness, and want of good bringing up, come to their masters, and go from them, as to and from their fellows: no testimony of reverence by any obeisance: they know not how to give it: whereby they dishonour their parents, and manner of education.

2. Others, if at first coming to their master they give some salutation, yet, through too much familiarity with them, all the day after they will carry themselves fellow-like, scarce uncovering their heads in their master's presence, not enduring to stand long before him, but either setting themselves down, or slinking away when they should be in presence. Doubtless from this overmuch familiarity arose this proverb, *Good morrow for all day*. This unmannerly familiarity is commonly in such servants, as have poor and mean masters: for rich and great men's servants can be so full of courtesy, as not a word shall be spoken by their masters to them, or by them to their masters, but the knee shall be bowed withal: they can stand hour after hour before their masters, and not once put on their hat: if they be walking after their master, their master shall not turn sooner than their hat will be off, and that so oft as he turneth or speaketh to them. Why should rich masters have so much reverence shewed to them, and poor masters none at all? Do not the poor bear God's image as well as the rich? Doth God's word make any difference betwixt rich and poor? Doth it say, *Serve rich masters with fear and trembling*? Surely it is the corruption of man's heart, which maketh this difference. Servants naturally more regard their master's outward ability, than inward authority: the honour which the world conferreth on men, more than the honour which God conferreth: for God hath given as much honour and authority to a poor master as to a rich, in that he is a master.

Servants commonly most fail in this duty of reverence towards their masters there where they should most of all shew it, namely, in the courts of God, and assembly of God's people, where the very Angels are present to behold our seemly carriage: thus they cause the ministry of the word to be evil spoken of, and thereby make their sin so much the more heinous.

3. Exceeding great is the fault of servants in their excess in apparel. No distinction ordinarily betwixt a man's children and servants: nay none betwixt masters and their men, mistresses and their maids. It may be while men and maids are at their masters' and mistresses' finding, difference may be made: though even then also, if they can any way get wherewithal, they will do what they can to be as brave as they can. But if once they be at their own finding, all shall be laid out upon apparel, but they will be as fine as master or mistress: if not so costly, yet in shew as specious and brave. New fashions are as soon got up by servants as by masters and mistresses. What is the end of this, but to be thought as good as master or mistress? If the Queen of *Sheba* were now living, she would as much wonder at the disorder of servants in these days, as then she wondered at the comely order of *Solomon's* servants. Let these proud servants look to it: for if God have threatened to *visit princes' children that walk in strange apparel* (Zeph 1:8), can servants that so walk think to go scot-free?

Thus much of servants' reverence.

Their obedience followeth.

10. Of servants' obedience.

No inferiours are more bound to obedience than servants: it is their main, and most peculiar function, to *obey their masters*. It is therefore here in my text expressly mentioned [*servants obey your masters*] and all other duties are comprised under it. The reason alleged to move wives and children to obey, ought much more to move servants (see Treatise 3, Section 17 and Treatise 5, Section 11).

They who are contrary minded, who are rebellious, and disdain to be under the authority of another, and are ready to say of their master, *we will not have this man to reign over us* (Luke 19:14), are fitter to live among Anabaptists, than orthodoxal Christians. For to what end is the lawfulness of authority acknowledged, if subjection be not yielded unto it? of the two a man were better be blinded with error, than not obey the truth which he knoweth.

In handling this point of obedience, I will follow the same order, which I did in laying forth the obedience of wives and children, and consider

1. The parts of servants' obedience wherein it consisteth.
2. The extent thereof, how far it reacheth.

The parts are two, one negative, another affirmative.

The *negative* is to abstain from doing things of their own head, without or against their master's consent.

The *affirmative* is readily to yield to do that which their masters would they should do.

11. Of servants' forbearing to do things without their masters' consent.

Servants ought to forbear doing of things on their own heads without or against consent of their masters, because while the time of their service lasteth, they are not their own, neither ought the things which they do, to be for themselves: both their persons and their actions are all their masters: and the will of their master must be their rule and guide [in things which are not against God's will]. The rite used under the law of *boring a servant's ear*, implied as much. *David* therefore alluding unto that rite, saith to God [both of himself, and also of Christ, whom under a type he prefigured] *mine ears hast thou bored* (Exo 21:6); and from thence inferreth that he would do the will of God. We have a notable pattern hereof in *Abraham's* servant (Gen 24:5), who in a business committed to his charge propounds such scruples as came into his head to receive direction from his master therein, lest he should be forced to do something of his own head without particular warrant from his master.

This general will the better be cleared, if it be exemplified in some particulars. Take therefore these instances gathered out of the Scriptures of things which servants may not do without their master's consent.

1. Servants may not go whither they will. The phrase which the Centurion useth [*I say to one go, and he goeth* (Matt 8:3)] implieth, that except his master bind him go he ought not to go.
2. They ought not to do their own business and affairs. It is noted of *Jacob* being *Laban's* servant, that, though he had stocks of his own, yet he fed his master's flocks, and committed his own to his sons (Gen 30:35,36).
3. They ought not to do what business they list themselves. *Ahimaaz* had a great desire to carry the news of *Absalom's* death to *David* (2 Sam 18:19): yet without the leave of *Joab* his captain and master he would not do it. The good mistress *giveth the portion to her maids* (Prov 31:15), namely, the portion of work: that therefore must they do which she giveth them to do. The servants of the Centurion did every one as by their master they were enjoined (Matt 8:9): and the servants that had talents committed to them looked each of them to their own talent (Matt 25:16,17).
4. They ought not to marry while the time of their covenant for service lasteth, unless their master give consent thereto. The

law of God thus setteth forth the lawful marriages of servants, *If his master have given him a wife* (Exo 21:4): whereby is implied, that if a servant marry, it must be with his master's consent.

Object. The Apostle, without exception of servants' faith, *to avoid fornication let every man have his wife, &c.* (1 Cor 7:2).

Answer. He there sheweth what means the Lord hath sanctified to every one to avoid fornication, but he doth not thereby give liberty to every one headily to use that means against that order which God hath set down.

2. That precept is given to such as are *in their own power*: for of children he saith, that parents must see what is meet or not meet for them (1 Cor 7:36).

3. That which servants are to gather from thence is, if need so require, to make known their desire to their master, and to use all the good means they can by themselves or others to obtain their master's consent.

5. They ought not to dispose their master's goods at their own pleasure, no not for charitable uses. The steward which wasted his master's goods was justly put out of office for it (Luke 16:1,2). Yea he is called *unjust* for disposing some of them for his own future maintenance (Luke 16:8); therefore it was a point of justice and unlawful.

Object. The Lord commended him therein.

Answer. He commended his wisdom, not his injustice: his provident care for the time to come, not the means of providing for himself. In regard of his general providence he is commended: in regard of the particular means by deceiving his master, he is called *unjust*.

6. They may not before their covenanted time be expired go away from their master. When *Jacob* after long service had a mind to be gone, he asked leave, and because his uncle and master would not willingly let him go, he tarried still (Gen 30:26).

Object. Afterwards *Jacob* privily stole away from his master (Gen 31:20).

Answer. 1. His covenanted time was out. 2. He had an express warrant from God to be gone. 3. His manner of going away is not to be justified, and in that respect it is no good pattern.

12. Of the unlawful liberty which servants take to themselves.

Contrary to the forenamed limitations of servants' liberty are these, and such like lewd and licentious pranks as follow.

1. When servants watch their times to go whither they list, and their master not know it: as when their masters are seriously employed, or abroad, or in bed. Thus that lewd servant *Gehazi* watched his time to run after *Naaman*, thinking that his master should not know it (2 Kings 5:20).

2. When being bound to their master's service, they do their own business, and seek their own profit; and that without their master's leave. This aggravated *Gehazi* his privy stealing and withdrawing himself from his master, that he went to receive gifts for himself. Many such lewd servants there be, that knowing such and such friends of their master, who will be ready to do any kindness for them, will use their master's name to borrow money, or get some other favour, and never let their masters know of it.

3. When servants will choose their own work, and do that which liketh themselves best, or else do nothing at all. Thus where many servants be in one house together, if they be not in such places as they like themselves, they will mumble, and grumble, and do nothing well.

4. When servants, especially maid-servants, that are bound, do purposely marry to free themselves: because our laws do free a maid that is married from her service to master and mistress.

5. When they are liberal of their master's goods in giving them away. Some think that because they are of the house, they may dispose the things of the house upon charitable uses. But pretence of charity is no excuse for injustice. Servants may

give notice to their masters or mistresses, that there are in the house such and such things meet to be given away, or that there are such and such poor folks that stand in great need: but privily without any consent at all, they may not give away any thing of their masters.

6. When upon discontent they run away from their masters. The two servants of *Shemei* which run from their master are taxed for it by the Holy Ghost (1 Kings 2:39). *Onesimus* that run from his master is sent back again by *S. Paul* (Phile 12): and *Hagar* is sent back by an Angel (Gen 16:9).

Object. What if master and mistress be sharp, rigorous, and cruel.

Ans. An Angel from heaven giveth one answer, [*Submit thyself under her hands* (Gen 16:9)]. And an Apostle giveth another, *Be subject with all fear to the froward: for conscience toward God endure grief, suffering wrongfully* (1 Peter 2:18,19).

These faults are thus noted, that servants taking notice of them, may the more carefully avoid them.

13. Of servants' obedience to their masters' commandments.

The affirmative and active part of servants' obedience, consisting in a ready yielding to that which their masters will have done, hath respect [as the like kind of children's obedience] to the *commandment, instruction, reproof, and correction* of their master.

I. A master having power to command his servants, it is a duty of servants to obey their master therein. The particular work which appertaineth to a servant by virtue of his place is to have an eye to his master, to see what he requireth at his hands. *David* thus describes the property of good servants, *Their eyes look to the hand of their master* (Psa 123:2). That *looking*, as it implieth an expectation of release and succour, so also a readiness to receive and execute any thing from them that they would have done. The Centurion commendeth this duty in the example of his servants, who every one of them did what their master commanded them to do (Matt 8:9). It is further commended in the examples of *Abram's* servant (Gen 24:9), *Elijah's* servant (1 Kings 18:43), and many others. Note how far the Lord Christ exacteth this duty of servants; Though a servant hath been all day plowing [a laborious and wearisome work] yet when he cometh home, his master commanding him to dress his supper and wait, he must do it (Luke 17:7,8). By all these proofs it appeareth, that if a master bid his servant, come, go, do this, or that, he must obey.

The contrary hereunto is the highest degree of disobedience, as when servants refuse to be at their master's command, and to do what they charge them to do: as *Ziba*, who being commanded to saddle his master's ass, went away and did it not (2 Sam 19:26): and *Job's* servant, who being called would not answer (Job 19:16). Of all other offences this doth most provoke masters: for it is a plain contempt of their authority.

14. Of servants hearkening to their masters' instructions in matters of their calling.

II. As a master hath power to command, so his duty it is to instruct his servants in the way of righteousness, and in that civil course of life wherein he is to walk. The duty then of servants it is, in both to hearken and be obedient unto them.

1. Such servants as are under masters to learn their trade, are bound many ways to hearken to them.

1. That for the time they may do the better service to their masters.

2. That by learning a trade or skill in any good calling they may be the better able when the time of their service is out to maintain themselves, to teach other servants which shall be under them, and to do the more good in the place where they shall live.

3. That thus they may the better discharge a good conscience in that particular place wherein God hath set them.

Contrary is the idle, sluggish, dull disposition of many servants, who by reason of their carelessness and untowardness in doing that which they are taught, vex and grieve their masters, yea and make them weary of instructing them. Many prentices spend all the time of their prenticeship without reaping any good at all: they never prove their craft's masters: so many in the country live under good husbands, many clerks under good lawyers, many maids under good housewives, and that

many years together, yet through their negligence get no good at all, whereas if they would have been attentive and careful, they might have learned much. Enemies these are to their masters, to themselves, to the city and country where they live, and to their friends and parents, especially if they have any alive.

15. *Of servants hearkening to their masters' instructions in piety.*

Such servants as have religious masters who are careful to instruct their household in the way of righteousness, ought to be obedient to their instructions: so were *Joshua's* servants [or else could not *Joshua* have undertaken for them as he did (Josh 24:15)] and the servants of that ruler of whom it was said that *himself believed and all his house* (John 4:53): and the servants of *Lydia*, and of the jailer, concerning whom it is said, *she was baptized and her household* (Acts 16:15): *he believed in God and all his house* (Acts 16:34). Under these words *house* and *household*, none doubteth but that *servants* are comprised.

Now then if the servants of these had not hearkened and yielded to the instructions of their master and mistress, would they have believed in him in whom their masters believed, or been baptized when their mistress was? The like may be gathered out of this phrase, *The Church in their house* (Rom 16:5): for thereby is implied that all in the house were of the same faith that their master and mistress were. It is expressly noted of the soldier that waited continually on *Cornelius* (Acts 10:7), that he was *a devout man*, whereby it is presupposed that he hearkened to his master's instructions: for it is noted of the master also, that *he was a devout man and feared God*.

The benefit which redoundeth to servants by obeying such instructions, is unspeakable: much more good may be got by following the spiritual directions of religious masters, than the witty and commodious directions of the wisest statesmen, and the skillfullest artists, or tradesmen that be: so as theirs is a double bond to bind servants to obey this kind of instructions:

1. The bond of duty.
2. The bond of profit and benefit to themselves.

16. *Of servants' faults contrary to obedience in matters of religion.*

Notwithstanding the forenamed duty be so behoveful to servants, yet of all other duties is it by many least thought to be a duty, and most neglected, the clean contrary for the most part being practiced as may appear by these particulars.

1. Many servants are of so impious a mind, as of all masters they will not serve such as are religious, and make conscience to instruct their servants in the way to salvation: they had rather serve profane masters, mere worldlings, and very papists. For why? any thing better agreeth to corrupt nature than to be kept within the bounds of religion: few like the straight gate and narrow way that leadeth to life: for the god of this world so blindeth men's eyes, that they cannot see the blessing of life at the end of this way, they only see the straightness of it: or if they should see it afar off, yet they so savour the things of the flesh, and of this present evil world, as they would not regard that which is so far off. Now religious masters will endeavour what they can to keep all their servants in that narrow way; but irreligious masters will suffer them to follow the sway of their own corruption, to swear, to profane the Sabbath, and spend that whole day in sleeping, sporting, eating and drinking: to go to bed without prayer, or catechizing, or reading the word of God, and so to rise again and go about their business: to which holy duties, such devout masters as *Cornelius* was, will hold their servants.

2. Others that are placed by their friends under such devout masters, or not knowing beforehand the disposition of their masters, have themselves covenanted with them to be their servants, after they have been a while in the house, think their master's house a prison to them, muttering and murmuring against their straight keeping in, as they deem it: and being called in to any religious exercise, they will be ready to say, *I was not hired for this, neither am I bound to you herein, set me about your work and I will do it*.

3. Some again are the more negligent and dissolute in their business, because their masters are religious. It is a common complaint, that profane, worldly masters shall have more service than religious and godly masters, yea though *these* give better wages, diet and lodging than *those*. Many think the fault hereof to be in the master: but assuredly for the most part the fault is the corrupt disposition of servants, that esteem pleasure in sin, and liberty thereunto more than wages, diet, and lodging: whereby they shew themselves impious against God, ungrateful to their masters, injurious to themselves. Let this perverse disposition be noted, that the rule of the Apostle very pertinent to this point, may be the better observed, *They that have believing masters let them not despise them, but rather do them service, because they are faithful and beloved* (1 Tim

6:2).

17. Of servants' obedience to reproof and correction.

The same directions may serve for yielding to reproof and correction: for they may both be brought to one head: and in the general they do both agree. For reproof is a verbal correction, and correction is a real reproof.

The obedience which servants in regard of these must shew to their masters is twofold.

1. Patiently to bear all manner of reproof and correction.
2. Readily to amend that for which they are justly reprov'd or corrected.

For the first of these, servants have an express precept, enforced by many reasons in these words, *Servants be subject to your masters with all fear not only to the good and gentle, but also to the froward* (1 Peter 2:18). *For this is thankworthy if a man for conscience toward God endure grief, suffering wrongfully. For what glory is it if when ye be buffeted for your faults ye take it patiently? but if when ye do well and suffer for it, ye take it patiently, this is acceptable with God.* Here we see,

1. That correction is patiently to be borne by servants: if correction, than much more reproof.
2. That though correction be unjustly inflicted yet it is patiently to be endured: therefore much more when it is deserved.
3. That *buffeting* and that of a froward master is to be borne: therefore much more lighter correction of a good and gentle master. *Joseph* patiently endured *fetters*, and *iron chains* (Psa 105:18), and *imprisonment* inflicted upon him most unjustly (Gen 39:20), even for his faithfulness to his master. Great was the recompence which God made unto him: and assuredly God will recompence all the wrong, pain, and grief, that in this case shall be endured for conscience sake. For the Apostle saith, that this is *thankworthy*, that is, worthy of praise and commendation, and so worthy of recompence and reward. Again he saith that it is *acceptable to God*, so as God will recompence it, though men may account it but baseness and blockishness: yea though unjust masters may thereupon take occasion the more to trample upon, and insult over their servants.

To these motives I may add the rule of our Christian profession [which is also intimated by the Apostle in these words, *Even hereunto were ye called* (1 Peter 2:21)]. For our Christian calling requireth all men to *give place unto wrath* (Rom 12:19): to *turn the other cheek when one is smitten* (Matt 5:39): to *overcome evil with goodness* (Rom 12:21). If all Christians must shew such patience to all men, even their equals (1 Peter 2:21) how much more servants to masters? The Apostle commendeth to servants the example of Christ in this case: *he was reviled* and much *he suffered*, and that most injuriously, and yet patiently did he bear all: if servants thus suffer with him, they also shall reign with him.

18. Of the extremes contrary to servants' patient bearing of reproof and correction.

Patient bearing of rebuke and blows, seemeth *an hard saying* to most servants: they cannot endure to hear it: for their mind and carriage is clean contrary thereunto.

1. Some being but reprov'd, though justly, are ready to answer again, and to chop word for word: a sin expressly forbidden. It seemeth by the Apostle's express mentioning of it, that *answering again* hath been an old evil quality in servants.

Object. If a master unjustly reprove his servant, and the servant answer not again, he wittingly suffereth his master to continue in his error, and so maketh himself accessory to his master's sin.

Ans. There is difference betwixt a spiteful, revengeful contradicting of that which is spoken, and an humble, mild, reverend, seasonable apology for that which is unjustly censured. *This* is lawful: but *that* is forbidden.

2. Others scorn to be corrected: which disdain they manifest many ways: as

1. By muttering, and saying *they came not for that end*. But though that were not the main end of their subjection, yet is it a means to keep them under subjection: and therefore to be endured by them.

2. By running away, as *Hagar* (see Section 12).

3. By struggling and striving with their master or mistress: and taking the staff or wand by the end: or by holding the hands of those that correct them.

Object. Shall I suffer myself wrongfully to be beaten, when I can help myself and hinder it?

Answ. 1. Servants may not be their own judges whether their correction be just or unjust: for men are so prone to sooth themselves and to extenuate the evil actions which they do, as if they be not corrected till they think it just, they would never be corrected.

2. To endure punishment [that I may use *S. Peter's* word] is not otherwise *thankworthy*. If justly thou be punished, thou hast but thy desert. If forcibly so as thou canst not resist, necessity maketh thee bear it. The sturdiest thieves that be, being pinned, suffer themselves to be turned over, because they see a necessity. But Christ [whose example in this case is set before servants (1 Peter 2:21)] could have freed himself but would not (Matt 26:53). If servants endure for conscience sake, they will not resist, though they be able.

3. Others if they be smitten by master or mistress, will give as much as they receive, they will smite again: a practice unbecoming any Christian, but most unseemly for Christian servants: who manifest thereby a despite of God's image and power in their masters.

4. Others are so possessed with a devil, as they will seek all the revenge they can, if they be corrected: whence it cometh to pass that some hot, heady, hardy youth, stick not to challenge their masters into the field: and others, more maliciously minded, secretly endeavour to take away the life of their masters. Many that have not the opportunity to practice such villainies, do notwithstanding in their hearts with their master's destruction, and make most fearful imprecations against them; whereby they make themselves guilty of blood before God.

19. *Of servants amending that for which they are justly reprov'd or corrected.*

More than patience is required of them that are deservedly rebuked or corrected for their faults: namely repentance, and amendment (see Treatise 5, Sections 33 and 34). Thus shall the smart and pain which servants endure, be as good physic unto them, and turn to their good. True amendment of former faults may make one a better servant than he was before he committed those faults: witness that which *S. Paul* saith of *Onesimus*, *in time past he was to the unprofitable, but now profitable to thee and me* (Phile 11).

Contrary is their disposition, who notwithstanding all rebuke and correction go on still in their evil and lewd courses: and continue to provoke their master more and more, and so make them add blow unto blow, and stroke unto stroke, till they have no hope of them, but are forced to put them out of doors. This cometh either from a scornful, disdainful stomach [for *a scorner heareth not rebuke* (Prov 13:1)] or from a base, servile, stupid, blockish, brutish nature, that is not moved with any smart or pain, like a rusty jade that will not stir though he be whipped or beaten never so much. *Solomon* implieth thus much by putting into one leash an horse, an ass, and a fool (Prov 26:3): meaning by a fool a scornful, blockish servant: to whose back a rod is as a whip to an horse: of such a fool he saith, that *an hundred stripes* enter not into him (Prov 17:10): and again, *Though thou shouldest bray a fool in a mortar among wheat with a pestle, yet will not his foolishness depart from him* (Prov 27:22).

But what shall we say of such as for rebuke and correction are the worse? What, but that shame, beggary, and some ignominious death or other is like to befall them.

Hitherto of the kinds of servants' duties. The next point respecteth the manner of performing them.

20. *Of serving with trembling.*

The *manner* how servants ought to perform their duties is noted in four phrases:

The first whereof is this, *with fear and trembling*.

Fear is both as a *fountain* from whence all other duties flow: and also as a *sauce* to season them all.

Commonly the season and savour of waters cometh from the fountain: which *S. James* implieth, where he saith, *no fountain doth yield salt water and fresh* (James 3:12), for if the fountain be salt, the streams issuing from thence will be salt: and fresh, if the fountain be fresh: so if fear be feared in the heart of servants, all their obedience and submission will be seasoned therewith. Let therefore servants here learn by their manner of performing all their duties, to declare that there is a true servant-like fear seated in their hearts. Hereof I shall need say no more than what hath been before delivered (see Section 4).

The other word *trembling* added to fear, addeth emphasis, shewing that it is no small fear that is required of servants (see Treatise 1, Section 124): and it giveth them to wit that their masters having a power to punish them, they must so carry themselves as they provoke not their master to wrath, but be very careful and circumspect to avoid his displeasure, that they give him no just occasion of offence. This care had that servant of *David* which first espied *Absalom* hanging in a tree, and told *Joab* thereof (2 Sam 18:12): he so feared the displeasure of the King his master, as to gain a thousand shekels of silver he durst not kill *Absalom*. The like is noted of *Obadiah*, who was afraid to tell his master *Ahab* where *Elijah* was (1 Kings 18:19), lest his master might have thought he had mocked him, if the Spirit had carried *Elijah* away.

This trembling fear is needful in regard of the small love that servants commonly bear to their masters. There are not those motives to stir up love in servants to their masters, as in children to their parents: except therefore through awe and dread they be kept in compass, they will exceedingly transgress: and because this is so needful, servants must labour to nourish it, as a means to keep them from over-much boldness.

Contrary on the one side is a proud despising of a master's authority [saying, if not with their mouths, yet in their heart, as *Gaal of Abimelech*, who is he that we should serve him (Judg 9:28)? or as those that despised the government of Christ their master, *we will not have this man to reign over us* (Luke 19:14): and again, *let us break his bonds asunder, and cast away his cords from us* (Psa 2:3)] and on the other side a wretched carelessness, not fearing any punishment before they feel it: like to many desperate thieves that no whit fear the power of the Judge, but desperately say, *we have but one death to pay*. The authority of God himself is despised, and his revenging hand is lightly regarded by such proud and desperate servants: so as their sin is no small sin.

21. Of serving with sincerity.

The second branch concerning the *manner* of servants performing their duty is in these words, *in singleness of heart*, so as all must be performed with an honest and upright heart: *whatsoever ye do, do it heartily* (Col 3:23), saith the Apostle to servants in another place. Thus did *Joseph* in singleness of heart serve his master; instance his refusing to abuse his mistress in a private chamber when she desired it, and no other body was in the house. Happy were it for masters to have such servants: then might they take no more care than *Potiphar* did, but put all that they have into their servant's hands (Gen 39:6). Neither would this rare virtue in servants be only profitable to their masters, but also very comfortable to themselves, and bring them much peace of conscience.

Contrary is hypocritical service: when servants have *a heart, and a heart*, making shew of one heart outwardly, and have another, even a clean contrary heart within them (Psa 12:2). Such an one was *Gehazi*, who *came in and stood before his master* (2 Kings 5:25), as if he had performed some good service for his master, when he had most highly dishonored him: and such an one was *Judas* who carried as fair a face to his master as any of the disciples, and yet was an errant traitor: for when he was thought to go out to buy provision for his master, he went to betray him (John 13:29).

All eye-service is contrary to the forenamed singleness of heart: when servants are diligent so long as their master's eye is on them: like little children that will do any thing their mother will have them do, while her eye is upon them; but nothing, when her back is turned. The world is full of such eye-serving servants, who while their masters are present, will be as busy as bees: but if he be away, then either idling at home, or gadding abroad, or nothing but wrangling, and eating, and drinking with the drunken (Matt 24:49); like that lewd servant whom Christ noteth in the parable. Let the judgment denounced against him be noted of such servants.

22. Of serving for conscience sake.

The third branch of the *manner* of servants performing their duty is in these words, *as unto Christ, as the servants of Christ, doing the will of God, as to the Lord*: all which do set forth a good conscience, or such service as is performed *for conscience*

sake, or *for the Lord's sake*, which is all one: because the conscience hath an eye only to the Lord, to his will, and to his ordinance. Though there were no other motive in the world to move them to obey their masters, yet their conscience to God would move them. Such was *Joseph's* manner of serving his master, as the reason which he himself rendereth to his mistress sheweth, *How can I do this great wickedness, and sin against God* (Gen 39:9)? The prayer which *Abraham's* servant made to God (Gen 24:12,27), and the thanks which he rendered to him for blessing his journey, shew, that he served his master for the Lord's sake. It is more clear than needs be proved, that such was *Jacob's* service to his master. This is the rather to be noted of Christian servants, because herein lieth the greatest difference betwixt *believing servants*, and others: others may serve with fear and trembling, in singleness of heart, and with good will; but only Saints do service as to Christ for conscience sake: If this be not that which *only* they aim at, yet assuredly they do *chiefly* and *principally* aim at it: which maketh them not to content themselves with doing the thing, but to endeavour to do it after the best manner that they can, so as God may best accept thereof: whereby as they approve themselves to God, so they do much good to their masters, and bring much comfort unto their own souls.

Contrary is the mind of most, who do all the service which they do on by-respects: they may perform much duty, and it may be do much good to their masters; and thereupon they may get good wages at their master's hands, and extraordinary recompence also, and live in much quiet under them: but no reward can they look for at God's hands: so as I may say to such servants, as Christ said to those who did all to have glory of men, *They have their reward* (Matt 6:2).

23. Of servants' willingness to perform their duty.

The fourth branch respecting the *manner* of servants performing their duty, is noted in this phrase, *with good will*. This *good will* of a servant to his master, hath respect partly to the disposition of the servant, and so it implieth *willingness* and cheerfulness; and partly to the benefit of the master, and so it implieth *faithfulness*.

Of *willingness* to do that duty which belongeth to a servant, Christ Jesus [who *took upon him the form of a servant* (Phil 2:7)] hath made himself a worthy pattern. *I delight to do thy will*, saith he to him that sent him (Psa 40:8): and again, *My meat is to do the will of him that sent me, and to finish his work* (John 4:34). Doth not a man eat his meat willingly, with delight and cheerfulness? even so did Christ the work of him that sent him. So cheerfully did *Jacob* serve his uncle *Laban*, that *seven years seemed to him but a few days* (Gen 29:20).

Object. The reason thereof was *the love he had to Rachel*.

1. *Answ.* This was *one* reason, but not the *only* reason: had he not borne *good will* to his uncle and master, as well as *love* to his wife, the time might have seemed tedious enough: but both meeting together, made the time pass away the better.

2. *Answ.* If the love he had to *Rachel* made him do his service so cheerfully: then if servants love God, for whose sake they ought to do their service, it will cheerfully be done.

1. That which the Apostle applieth to *giving of alms* (2 Cor 9:7) may be extended to all manner of duties which God requireth, *God loveth cheerfulness*: that work therefore which is not seasoned therewith God regardeth not.

2. As *cheerfulness* maketh God the better to like the work, so it maketh the work much more easy to him that doth it. Our common proverb noteth as much, *Nothing is hard to a willing mind*.

3. Let there be cheerfulness in a servant's mind, and he is as free as his master: for such a servant is *the Lord's freeman* (1 Cor 7:22) and when he cannot be made free of his master, he doth after a manner make his service free.

Have an eye to God, to his acceptance, and remuneration, and it will quicken thy spirit. Man's reward maketh poor men glad of work, and cheerful in doing their work: it is as sugar to sharp wine. Tradesmen, physicians, lawyers, all sorts of men, are by gain drawn on with great willingness to take great pains. Should not God's recompence of our pains make us much more willing? Surely it would, if we had such an eye of faith as *Moses* had, thereby to see the recompence of reward which he saw.

Contrary is heaviness of spirit, and discontentedness of mind, when servants do their service loweringly, grudgingly, by compulsion [as bears are brought to a stake] and of necessity, as slaves in a galley. Such service must needs be untowardly done: but though outwardly it be well done, yet can the doer have little comfort therein, because God accepteth it not.

24. *Of servants' quickness and diligence in their service.*

Servants, in testimony of their willingness and cheerfulness, must be both quick and diligent in their service: for these are effects of willingness. *Quickness* hath respect to the time of doing a thing. *Diligence* to the pains that is taken about it.

He that is *quick* in his service taketh up no more time about one thing than must needs; but is ready to do one thing after another; and thus doth much more service. It is expressly noted of *Rebekah*, that she *hasted*, and let down her pitcher (Gen 24:18,20): and *hasted* and emptied her pitcher, and *ran* again to the well. And *Abraham's* servant having made what speed he could to the place whither he was sent, *would not eat till he had told his errand* (Gen 24:33): after he had told it, if he had not sped, he would not have delayed time, but have gone again forthwith (Gen 24:49): when he had well dispatched all, he would not stay upon any complements, but *hasted* away to his master (Gen 24:56). *Ahimaaz* strove with *Cushi* who should soonest bring their message to their master (2 Sam 18:23): and *Ahimaaz* outstripped *Cushi*, for he had a very willing mind to do the business. The manner of charge which *Elisha* gave to his servant, implieth all the speed he could make: it was this, *Gird up thy loins, go thy way: if thou meet any by the way, salute him not: and if any salute thee, answer him not again* (2 Kings 4:29).

He that is *diligent* in his service, will not only be quick for the time, but also hold on, and employ all the labour and pains that he can for the well effecting of that which he is to do. That gentle charge laid upon all men, in particular appertaineth to a servant [*In the sweat of thy face thou shalt eat bread* (Gen 3:19)] and that which *Solomon* noteth [*whatsoever thine hand findeth to do, do it with thy might* (Eccl 9:10)]. Great was *Jacob's* diligence [for he saith of himself in doing his master's business, *In the day the drought consumed me, and the frost by night, and my sleep departed from mine eyes* (Gen 31:40)]. Great also was the diligence of those shepherds, that *kept watch over their flock by night* (Luke 2:8): and of those servants, that by their pains doubled the talents which were committed to them (Matt 25:16,17). As diligence is by these and many like examples commended unto us, so is it further set forth by the many promises which are made unto it, as, *The hand of the diligent maketh rich* (Prov 10:4): *The recompence of a man's hands shall be rendered unto him* (Prov 12:14): *the hand of the diligent shall bear rule* (Prov 12:24): *In all labour there is profit* (Prov 14:23).

The work which servants are by their master appointed to do, is to them the work of God: whereupon the Apostle saith to servants as well as to others, *as God hath called every one, so let him walk* (1 Cor 7:17): but the work of God is to be done with all diligence: for *Cursed is he that doth the work of the Lord negligently* (Jer 48:10).

Contrary is the idleness, laziness, slothfulness, and sluggishness of servants. These are faults too too common. *Solomon* much inveigheth against these vices, setting them forth in their kind, and setting down the many mischiefs that follow thereupon.

Thus he deciphereth them; *The slothful man saith, there is a lion in the way* [that is, he pretendeth unlikely danger]. *As the door turneth upon the hinges, so a slothful man upon his bed. The slothful hideth his hand in his bosom, it grieveth him to bring it again to his mouth* (Prov 26:13-15). *Yet a little sleep, a little slumber, a little folding of the hands to sleep* (Prov 24:33).

These are the mischiefs which he noteth to come from idleness and sloth, *poverty* (Prov 10:4), *servitude* (Prov 12:24), *fruitless wishes and desires* (Prov 13:4), *hunger* (Prov 19:15), *beggary* (Prov 20:4), *death* (Prov 21:25). And to shew what small joy or comfort masters may have in slothful servants, he compareth them to vinegar and smoke, which are as irksome to the teeth and eyes as can be: *As vinegar* [saith he] *is to the teeth, and smoke to the eyes, so is the sluggard to them that send him* (Prov 10:26). And because many idle packs think and say they do no hurt, he further saith, that *He that is slothful in his work is brother to him that is a great waster* (Prov 18:9): in which respect Christ styleth a slothful servant, *a wicked and unprofitable servant* (Matt 25:26,30): and giveth him the portion of those who do much hurt.

How lightly soever many servants esteem idleness and sloth, the truth is, that it is a plain theft. For the best service that servants can do, is due to their master: and they ought to be as diligent in their master's work, as if it were their own. So as it is not enough to avoid idleness in doing nothing at all, but they must take heed that they be not slothful in doing something: for *as good not at all, as never a whit the better*.

I have the further pressed this point, because it is noted as a blemish in such servants as profess religion to be most lazy and negligent, least sedulous and diligent. Much of that time which they should spend about their master's business [which is their particular calling] they spend in prating about state, and Church business [matters not belonging to them]. Thus they

make their masters weary of their service; and by reason thereof they are oft shifted from house to house, and as *rolling stones, gather no moss*: they neither learn skill, whereby they may, when they are of themselves, maintain themselves, and do good to others: nor lay up any stock or portion, as others which are diligent do: yea they get such an habit of idleness, as they can never shake it off again: for they who are slothful being under masters, seldom prove diligent when they are for themselves. In these is *Solomon's* proverb verified, *The talk of the lips tendeth only to penury* (Prov 14:23).

25. Of servants' faithfulness.

It was before noted, that the *good will* here required of servants to their masters had respect to the profit and benefit which servants by their service might bring to their masters (see Section 23): and in that respect it compriseth *faithfulness* under it, *faithfulness* [I say] whereby servants do well discharge that trust which is committed to them. Expressly it is commanded to servants, *To shew all good faithfulness* (Titus 2:10), and *it is required in stewards that a man be found faithful* (1 Cor 4:2). The phrase which is used of *Moses*, *He was faithful as a servant* (Heb 3:5), sheweth that faithfulness by a kind of propriety appertaineth to a servant: and where Christ coupleth these two, *good* and *faithful*, he giveth us to understand that a servant's *goodness* consisteth in his *faithfulness* (Matt 25:21).

Great is the benefit that by servant's faithfulness will redound both to master and servant.

The benefit which cometh to the master, *Solomon* noteth in this proverb, *As the cold of snow* [is very acceptable, comfortable and profitable] *in the time of harvest* [when men are even sweltered with heat] *so is a faithful messenger to them that send him: for he refresheth the soul of his master* (Prov 25:13): and again in this, *A faithful ambassador is health*, that is, he bringeth safety to his master (Prov 13:17).

The benefit which redoundeth to the servant himself by his faithfulness Christ noteth in this his approbation, and remuneration thereof, *Well done thou good and faithful servant, thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things, enter thou into the joy of thy Lord* (Matt 25:21). Every servant shall be called to his account: if not by his master on earth, yet by his master in heaven: he will say to every one, *Given an account of thy stewardship* (Luke 16:2): now then if servants have not been faithful, what other discharge can they look for, than that which the wicked, slothful, and unprofitable servant [who hid his talent in a napkin] received, namely this, *Cast ye the unprofitable servant into outer darkness, there shall be weeping and gnashing of teeth* (Matt 25:30). Let all unfaithful servants note this: for to faithfulness is contrary all unfaithfulness, as negligence, deceit, thievery, treachery, and such like vices. Much damage, disgrace, and vexation is brought by such servants to masters: and better it had been that they never had come into a man's house.

But that the point of faithfulness may be the better discerned, and observed, I will exemplify it in seven particulars whereabout it ought especially to be exercised, which are, 1. the *goods*, 2. the *businesses* and affairs, 3. the *counsels* and secrets, 4. the other *servants*, 5. the *children*, 6. the *bedfellow*, 7. the *person* of their master or mistress.

26. Of servants' faithfulness about their masters' goods.

Two things are required of servants to testify their faithfulness about their master's goods.

1. A safe-keeping of them.

2. An increasing of them.

1. Whatsoever is committed by masters unto their servants, they must so carefully preserve, as it be not lost, spoiled, or impaired under their hands, whether they be things within doors, or without. I may to this purpose not unfitly apply that charge unto servants which in another case the Apostle gave to *Timothy*, *Keep that which is committed to thy trust* (1 Tim 6:20): the metaphor is taken from servants, and so sheweth what is their duty. Great was *Joseph's* faithfulness in this kind, which made his master *put all that he had into his hand* (Gen 39:4). So great was *Jacob's* faithfulness, that in twenty years his master's ewes and she-goats, being under his hand, cast not their young, nor the rams were devoured (Gen 31:38,39): if any thing were torn of beasts, he brought it not to his master, but bare the loss of it himself. If servants espy any damage or hurt done by others to their master's goods, they must redress it, if they can, or at least make it known to their masters, that he may give order for the redressing of it: as the servants of him that sowed good seed among which tares were sowed, mentioned in the parable (Matt 13:27).

Masters that put servants in trust, securely go about other affairs, and look not themselves to those goods which are under their servant's custody, which is to be presupposed they would do, if they trusted not their servants. Great reason therefore it is that servants be careful of those things which are so committed to them.

2. They ought further to do what lieth in them to advance their master's estate, and to increase his stock. *The little which Laban had was by Jacob's faithfulness in this kind increased unto a multitude* (Gen 30:30). The talents which were committed to the two faithful servants were by their industry increased to as many more (Matt 25:16,17). So as it is not sufficient for servants not to impair their master's estate, but they must better it: for he that kept safe his master's talent, and gave him his own again, was counted an unprofitable servant, and received the doom of wasters.

Most masters take servants for their advantage and benefit, for it is but little ease for a master to provide diet and lodging for many servants, and to give them wages, if they reap no profit and benefit by them.

27. Of servants' carelessness over their masters' goods.

Contrary to servants' *fidelity* in safe keeping their master's goods committed to their charge is *carelessness* and negligence in suffering loss and damage come to their masters: as in the fields, when they look not to his fences and gates: or neglect his cattle so as they be stolen, or suffer diseases to grow upon them, or give them not fodder and water in due season. Or in the house, when they leave doors or windows open, and thieves come in and take away, or hook out their master's goods: or carelessly leave the fire, or let candles burn so as the house may be set on fire: or suffer household-stuff, and apparel to lie till it be moth-eaten or otherwise spoiled: or suffer any thing in the house to be broken: or victual to lie in corners moulding, or to be cast up and down for dogs and cats. When Christ so increased the bread and fish, wherewith many thousands were fed, that many fragments were left, he bid his disciples gather up what remained, and rendered this reason, *that nothing be lost* (John 6:12). The damage which may come by servants' carelessness, may be more than ever they can be able to make satisfaction for: and therefore they ought the more carefully to prevent it.

28. Of servants' fraud.

Contrary to the other branch of servants' *faithfulness* in increasing their master's estate, is all manner of theft and fraud, whether it be by retaining that which is due to their masters, or by purloining from them that which they have. The Apostle expressly forbiddeth servants to *purloin* (Titus 2:10). The word translated *purloin*, is the same whereby the fraud of *Ananias* is set forth, who *kept back* part of the price of a possession which they sold (Acts 5:2): so as thereby is forbidden not only open and manifest stealth, as pilfering money out of their master's purse, chest, or counter; or conveying away their corn, wares, or any other goods: but also putting more into the account of expenses than hath been expended, or into the account of debts less than is due [as the unjust steward, who for a debt of an *hundred* measures of oil put in *fifty*, and for an *hundred* of wheat put in *fourscore* (Luke 16:6,7)] or spending more than needs, or bringing in ill company into the house when their masters are absent, and entertaining them on their master's cost, or concealing part of the price which hath been taken for any wares, or borrowing money in their master's names, or taking greater fees than their masters wot of, or receiving bribes or gifts which their masters refuse [as *Gehazi*] or hiring others to do their work upon their master's cost, or inveigling away their master's customers, or purloining away other men's goods committed to their master's trust [as tailor's servants, who thereby both much discredit their masters, and also hinder their custom].

Object. What if masters detain their servants' wages? may they not by privy means right themselves?

Answ. A master's sin is no warrant to make servants answer sin with sin. The law is as open for servants as for masters: if not, God's ears are open for their complaints: he can and will redress all, or here or hereafter. Note *Jacob's* example (Gen 31:42). Many make this a just pretence: but whether it be just or no, it is not safe to open this gap of deceit.

These and such like kinds of deceit are the more heinous sins because of that trust which master's repose in servants: for they violate both the bond of justice, and of fidelity also. If a servant embezzle or defraud his master of any of his goods to the value of forty shillings, he is adjudged a felon by our statute law.

29. Of servants' faithfulness in the businesses which they are to dispatch for their masters.

In the businesses which masters commit to the care of their servants to be dispatched by them, they must do their best endeavour that all may prosper under their hands: as it is noted of *Joseph, he was a prosperous man* (Gen 39:2): we have not

only a pregnant proof, but also an excellent direction for this point, in the example of *Abraham's* servant, who was very faithful in dispatching the business of fetching a wife for *Isaac* (Gen 24): therein let the particulars be noted.

1. He feared God: the whole carriage of that business testifieth as much. There is a double bond to tie servants hereunto: one in respect of themselves, that in the thing which they do they may be accepted of God: another in respect of their masters, that their master's business may prosper under their hands: God prospereth such as fear him, in all things they take in hand: instance the examples of *Jacob* (Gen 30:27), *Joseph* (Gen 39:2), and *David* (1 Sam 18:14).

2. He called upon God to prosper his endeavours (Gen 24:12): now prayer is the best means that possibly can be used to obtain any blessing from the Lord. Without it all our endeavours are vain [*It is in vain to rise up early and sit up late, and to eat the bread of carefulness, except God's blessing accompany all* (Psa 127:2)].

3. He gave thanks when he saw the Lord begin to prosper that he took in hand (Gen 24:27): thanksgiving for the beginning of a blessing, is an effectual means for continuance of that blessing: yea it is also an effectual means to move God to prosper other things that we take in hand: so as, if servants desire to prosper in all the affairs which they undertake for their masters, they must render thanks for the first success which he hath given, and so for the second, third, fourth, and for every success.

4. He took all the opportunities he could: when he saw a maid to inquire of, he ran to her, and inquired what was behoveful for his master (Gen 24:17,23): when he had ground to think she was the maid, he presented gifts to her (Gen 24:22): so soon as he was brought to the house, he falls upon the matter for which he came, even before he did eat any thing (Gen 24:33): after matters to his liking were concluded, he maketh no tarrying, but with all speed carrieth the maid to *Isaac*. In a word, he omitted nothing that in the uttermost of his wisdom he conceived to be behoveful for that matter: more he could not have done, if the matter had wholly concerned himself. I shall need no further to urge this point, than by setting this pattern before servants.

Contrary is their disposition who care not whether the things which they do for their master prosper or no: if they have taken any pains therein, so as their master cannot say they have altogether neglected it, there is all that they care for. If it succeed not well, they will say they are not in God's place to make every thing which is done to prosper. But though the whole blessing rest in God, yet hath he sanctified means for obtaining his blessing [as faith, prayer, thanksgiving, and the like] which because they use not, they fail in this point of faithfulness. Nay further, they use those things which do mainly hinder and keep away God's blessing, and instead thereof bring a curse upon all they do, as profaneness, uncleanness, drunkenness, and all manner of riotousness, yea despising God's word and holy ordinances, reproaching his Saints, taking his name in vain by swearing, forswearing, and blaspheming, lying also, backbiting, pilfering, and other like vices. These irreligious and wicked servants, as they sin against God and their own souls, so also against their master: it is not for masters' profit to keep such servants.

30. Of servants' faithfulness in keeping their masters' secrets, and concealing their infirmities.

By reason of that near bond which is betwixt master and servants, and their near and continual abiding together, and the many employments which masters have for their servants, servants come to know many of their master's secrets: *faithfulness* therefore requireth to keep them close. Provided that they be not such secrets as tend to the dishonour of God, or to the danger of the Commonwealth and Church, no nor of a private person: for *Jonathan* is commended for discovering the mischief which *Saul* had secretly intended against *David* (1 Sam 20:12).

For proof of the point, note what *Solomon* saith, *He that is of a faithful spirit concealeth a matter* (Prov 11:13): namely, a secret matter. Note also how faithful *Jeremiah* was in keeping *Zedekiah's* counsel (Jer 38:27): though the Princes inquired after it, yet would he not reveal it to them.

To this head is to be referred a faithful concealing of masters' infirmities: for the best that be are subject to many: and servants which are under their master's roof continually waiting on them, cannot choose but espy many: if herein servants be not faithful, masters were better be without servants in their houses.

Contrary to keeping close the secrets of masters, is blabbing abroad all such things as servants know concerning their masters: which is too common a fault: for when servants of divers houses men or maids meet together, all their talk for the most part is of their masters and mistresses, whereby it cometh to pass that all the secrets of an house are soon known about the whole town or city. *Solomon* styleth such an one a *tale-bearer*: *A tale-bearer, saith he, revealeth secrets. or, he that revealeth*

secrets is a tale-bearer (Prov 11:13; 20:19): for many of *Solomon's* proverbs are convertible, they may be turned either way. Now note how *Solomon* noteth out the mischiefs that tale-bearers work: *The words of a tale-bearer are as wounds*, [they wound the precious name and credit of a man] *and they go down into the innermost part of the belly* (Prov 18:8), that is, they do, as it were, strike through the very heart of a man. Again he noteth them to be the cause of all strife, and to raise discord betwixt *chief friends* (Prov 16:28): and in that respect fitly resembleth them to *wood* which is the very fuel of fire (Prov 26:20). What enemies then are such servants to an house? They are even as treacherous spies, the most dangerous enemies that be. Thus we see that this is no light sin: yet is it so much the more odious when masters' and mistresses' infirmities [the publishing whereof may much impair their credit] are made known.

31. Of servants' faithfulness in helping one another.

Where many fellow servants are together, *faithfulness* requireth that one be helpful to another in what they may; as by good example, good counsel, encouragement in good courses, dissuasion from lewd and wicked practices, peace and unity, with the like. The Lord Christ expressly calleth such an one a *faithful servant*, and pronounceth him *blessed* (Matt 24:45,46).

Example and advice of one's equal prevaieth much with another, so as a fellow servant may in this kind do more good than the master himself: and if by his means he bring his fellow servants to be faithful, his own faithfulness is doubled and trebled; and his master receiveth a double and treble benefit thereby: namely the benefit of this good servant's faithfulness, and the benefit of all the other servants' faithfulness whom he hath made faithful.

Contrary is their practice who by their ill example corrupt their fellows [as that evil servant, who, when his master was away, *did eat and drink with the drunken* (Matt 24:49), that is, did cause others to be drunken with him] or by ill counsel draw one another on to evil [as the sons of *Jacob*, who when they saw *Joseph* afar off, said one to another, *Behold this dreamer cometh, come now and let us slay him* (Gen 37:18), &c. and as they, who, when they saw their master's son, said among themselves, *This is the heir, come let us kill him, and let us seize on his inheritance*] or are ever quarreling with their fellows, and smiting them [as that forenamed evil servant whom the Lord threateneth to cut off] or dissuade one another from obedience and subjection [as they who said, *Let us break their bonds asunder, and cast away their cords from us* (Psa 2:3): and as *Sheba*, who said, *we have no part in David: every man to his tents O Israel* (2 Sam 20:1)]. These faults are very rife among servants: whence it cometh to pass that there are so few good, and so many bad servants: too true is this proverb, *One scabbed sheep mars a whole flock*. Let there be in a great family one servant that is profane, proud, riotous, stout, rebellious, or otherwise vicious, and all will soon be like him.

Among other parts of unfaithfulness in this kind one of the most monstrous [which yet is too, too frequent] is to allure one another to uncleanness, and men and maids to defile one another. We shewed before (see Section 11), that it was unlawful for servants during the time of their service to marry without their master's consent: how abominable then is it to defile one another? The sin is doubled being betwixt servants: for as it is a beastly sin in itself, so in the forenamed respect it is greatly dishonourable to their master and his house: besides that the maid so defiled is oft disabled to do her service well: nay many times the charge of the child lieth upon the master. Thus shame and dishonour, grief and vexation, loss and damage all meet together, the more to gall and pierce him to the very heart. Is not this then a great part of unfaithfulness? Deserveth it not to be severely punished, and that openly, and publicly with shame and smart too, that others may take warning thereby? Many use means to escape the revenging hand of man: but though they escape man's hand, they shall be sure to meet with God's heavy vengeance: *whoremongers God will judge* (Heb 13:4). Daily experience sheweth what misery such wretches bring themselves unto, and how God meeteth with them, and that most fearfully.

32. Of servants' faithfulness about their masters' children.

Great faithfulness may servants manifest to their masters in and about their children: as while they are young and not able to look to themselves, to be tender over them, and well to tend them: maids especially neatly to handle and look to them, and cleanly to bring them up: and they that have a particular charge of them, to seek their good in every thing they can, and give them their due portion: and [because children are much in servants' company] to use in their hearing such speech as may minister grace to them, and to teach them good things, and [when they grow to some ripeness of years] to bear a reverend respect to them, and esteem them their betters because they are their master's children. It is noted of *Abraham's* servant, that he called his master's son, *Master* (Gen 24:65).

Children are dear to parents: the honour and kindness done to them they account as done to themselves: this kind of faithfulness therefore must needs be highly esteemed by masters in their servants: and assuredly it is a great means to work a

good respect in masters towards them.

Yet *contrarily* do many servants carry themselves towards their master's children, as is apparent by these particulars.

1. Some in their carriage are very hoggish and churlish to their master's children when their parents are out of sight.
2. Others are very careless of them, and tend them very sluttishly, not caring how they go: whereby they oft procure great displeasure from their master and mistress.
3. Others get from their master's children what they can: and deprive them of their allowance, turning it to their own gain.
4. Others exceedingly corrupt their master's children with their filthy and corrupt communication: teaching them to swear, blaspheme, and use all manner of unclean speeches: thus is that proverb verified, *evil communications corrupt good manners* (1 Cor 15:33). Children oft times in their young years learn such ill language and behavior of lewd servants, as their parents can never get them to leave again: so as they may curse the day that ever such servants came into their house.
5. Others allure them to stage plays, to dice houses, and other like places, which are the very bane of youth: and draw them to spend in riot such allowance as their parents allow them, yea and beyond that allowance, so as they run in debt, and get such an habit of spending, as at length they make away their whole estate.
6. Others inveigle their affections: and oft draw them to folly and uncleanness. This filthy kind of unfaithfulness is so much worse than that which was before noted betwixt fellow servants (see Section 31), by how much nearer and dearer children are to their parents than servants to their masters.
7. Others that dare not commit this abominable wickedness, stick not to do that which is little better, namely to draw them on to be contracted, yea and married to them often times, and that privily without consent of their parents: whereby parents' affections are oft so alienated from their children, as they will not acknowledge them for children, but clean cast them off. These are the fruits of this lewd kind of unfaithfulness in servants.

33. *Of servants' faithfulness in regard of their masters', or mistresses' bed-fellow.*

So faithful ought servants to be to their masters and mistresses, that if one of them should labour to use a servant in any manner of deceit to the other, the servant ought not to yield. As if a master should move his maid privily to take away jewels, plate, money, linen, or any such thing as is in her mistress's custody. It skilleth not that the master hath the chiefest power over all the goods: a secret taking of them away without the privity of the mistress in whose custody they are, is in the servant deceit, and a point of unfaithfulness. Much less ought any servants be moved by their mistress privily to take away their master's corn, wares, or any goods for her private use. Of the two this is the greater part of unfaithfulness.

If such deceit ought not to be used about any goods, much less about the body of master or mistress. As if a master should allure his maid to commit folly with him, or a mistress her man, both their conscience to God, and also their faithfulness to their master or mistress should make them utterly to refuse it, and to give no place to any such temptation. *Joseph* is propounded as a pattern herein (Gen 39:7): and against the suggestion of his mistress he rendereth the two forenamed reasons: his conscience to God in these words, *how can I do this great wickedness and sin against God?* His faithfulness to his master in these, *He hath not kept back any thing from me but thee, how then &c.*

To this head may be referred servants' faithfulness in making known to their master the sin of his wife, and to their mistress the sin of her husband, especially if it be such a sin as may tend to the ruin of the family, and that by the knowledge thereof, the party that is not blinded and besotted with the sin, but rather free from it, may be a means to redress it. Thus *Nabal's* servants made known to *Abigail* the churlishness of *Nabal* towards *David's* servants (1 Sam 25:14): by which means the mischief intended against the house was prevented. Thus if servants know that their master intendeth some mortal revenge against another, to tell his wife thereof in time, may be great faithfulness: or if they know their mistress hath appointed to go away privily from her husband, to tell him of it, is a part of faithfulness. This may be applied to many other like cases.

The contrary is yielding to masters or mistresses in any point of deceit one against another: whereunto servants are too prone, because they think to be bolstered out by the authority of the party that setteth them on work to deceive. But no authority can be a warrant for any deceit, or wickedness.

34. Of servants' faithfulness about their masters' persons.

Masters and mistresses are flesh and blood as well as servants, and so subject to weakness, sickness, old age, and other distresses, wherein they may stand in great need of servants' help: servants therefore must be faithful in affording them the best help that they can. *Saul's* servants did a part of faithfulness to their master, when, he being vexed with an evil spirit, they inquired after means to ease him (1 Sam 16:16). So did *David's* servants, when he being bed-ridden, they sought out one to cherish him (1 Kings 1:2). It was a point of faithfulness in *Naaman's* maid, to tell her mistress of a means whereby her master might be cured of his leprosy (2 Kings 5:3): and in his servants, to persuade him to use the means prescribed by the prophet (2 Kings 5:13).

Contrary is a servant's ungrateful and inhumane leaving of his master in his time of need, as the servants of *Job* did: for when the hand of God lay heavy upon him, and all his good were taken from him, and his body full of sore boils, *they that dwelt in his house, and his maids counted him for a stranger: and he was an alien in their sight: he called his servant, and he gave him no answer* (Job 19:15,16). So did *Ziba* leave *Mephibosheth* in his greatest need (2 Sam 19:26): and the Disciples fly from their master Jesus Christ (Matt 26:56). But what shall we say of those that take occasion from their master's impotency to murder him themselves, as *Rechab* and *Baanah* (2 Sam 4:6); or to betray him to his enemies, as *Judas* betrayed the Lord Christ (Matt 26:15)? what, but that such traitorous servants may look for such ends.

35. Of the means to make servants faithful.

Among many other means to make servants faithful to their master, and careful to perform other duties sincerely, willingly, cheerfully, and diligently, as hath before been noted, this is one of the most general, namely, that *servants*, in all things they do for their master, *make their master's case their own*, and so do for him as they would for themselves, or as they would have their own servants do for them. The general rule of the law is, *Love thy neighbour as thyself* (Lev 19:18); and *whatsoever you would that men should do to you, do you even so to them* (Matt 7:12). If thus every man must respect another, yea though he be a stranger, then much more must servants respect their master, because all that they can do is after an especial manner as a debt due to their masters: in which respect Christ saith, that *when they have done all that is commanded, they have but done their duty* (Luke 17:10).

This I have the rather noted, because the practice of most servants is contrary thereunto. For while they work for their masters, they will cry out that they are over-burdened, and tired with that work which they will easily go through withal when they work for themselves. They that while they work for their master, must be called to it again and again, and forced to stand to it, and to hold out till it be done, what pains will they take, how early will they rise, how late will they sit up, how diligent will they be for themselves? When journeymen receive increase of wages according to the work which they do, they will dispatch more than apprentice that hath but cloth, food, and lodging. Again, many that in their master's goods are very lavish, and wasteful, when they come to be for themselves are very sparing, saving, and provident. What do these things argue but that servants do not bear to their masters that mind which they should: they do not for them as they would do for themselves. Very requisite it is therefore that the forenamed general rule be observed.

Hitherto of the several kinds of servants' duties, and of the manner of performing them. It remaineth to speak both of the extent of their duties, and also of the restraint of that extent.

36. Of servants' endeavour to make their judgment agree with their masters.

The same extent and restraint that was before noted in laying forth the duties of other inferiours (see Treatise 3, Section 63 and Treatise 5, Section 35), is here also to be observed in the duties of servants: for therein they all agree. The same rules therefore that were before set down, may here again be applied. I refer the reader to those places for a more large amplification of the generals: and here I will content myself with adding such particular proofs as are most proper and pertinent to servants.

The extent of servants' duties is in my text only implied under this indefinite article [*Obej*] [which being not restrained to any particulars, must be extended to *every thing*] but in other places it is expressly laid down in these general terms, *Obej in all things* (Col 3:22), *Please well in all things* (Titus 2:9). It is not therefore sufficient that servants perform their duties well in some things, they must do it in all things, yea in things that may be against their own mind and liking, if their master will have it so. For this end let servants note these two rules.

1. That they *labour to bring their judgment to the bent of their master's judgment*, and to think that meet and good which he doth. Thus the servant of the Levite which thought it meetest to turn into one of the cities of the Jebusites to lodge there (Judg 19:11,12), because the day was far spent, when he saw his master to be of another mind, yielded to him. So did those servants yield to their master, who at first thought it unmeet that he that had ten talents should have one piece more (Luke 19:25); and those servants also, that at first thought it meet that the tares should be plucked up from the wheat (Matt 13:28). This rule is to be observed in the particular points before delivered, as the work which servants do, and the manner of doing it, their apparel, their allowance, yea and in the correction which their master giveth them, and the rest.

Contrary is that great conceit which many servants have of their own judgment, wit, and wisdom, thinking themselves wiser than their masters; as *Gehazi*, who opposing his own wit to his master's wisdom, said, *Behold my master hath spared Naaman this Syrian, in not receiving at his hands that which he brought: but as the Lord liveth, I will run after him, and take somewhat of him* (2 Kings 5:20). This was also a fault in the children of the prophets (2 Kings 2:16), that would not rest on *Elisha's* judgment, but importuned him against his mind to send some to seek the body of *Elijah*. This self-conceit is the cause of many mischiefs: as of discontentedness at the work their master appointeth them, and at the allowance of meat and drink which they have; of much liberty they take to themselves, or pride in apparel, and other vices before noted: if the fore-named rule were duly observed, many of those mischiefs would be avoided, and much better obedience yielded.

37. Of servants yielding to do such things at their masters' command, as they cannot think to be most meet.

The second rule which servants must observe is this, that

Though they cannot in their judgment think that fit to be done which their master will have done, yet upon his peremptory command they must yield to the doing of it. It appeareth by *Peter's* answer to Christ that he did so, for being commanded to let down his net for a draught, thus he answereth, *Master, we have toiled all the night, and have taken nothing* [here he sheweth that his opinion was that it would be in vain to let down their nets] *nevertheless at thy word I will let down the net* (Luke 5:5) [here is his obedience against his opinion]. More clear is the example of *Joab* for this purpose: when the King commanded him to number the people (2 Sam 24:2), he declared that he thought it a very unmeet thing to do, by this phrase, *Why doth my Lord the King delight in this thing?* yet against his judgment he yielded to the King's peremptory command, for it is said, that *the King's word prevailed against Joab*.

Object. This is no fit example, because *Joab* sinned in obeying.

Answ. *Joab* cannot justly be charged with sin, because it was not simply unlawful to number the people. *David's* sin was not in the act of numbering the people, but in his mind which moved him to do it: for there was no just cause to do it: only pride and curiosity moved him, as may be gathered out of his own reason in these words, *that I may know the number of the people*. To do such a thing only to know it, was *curiosity*. But why would he know it? surely on a proud conceit that he had so many worthies, so many captains, so many men of war.

Out of *Joab's* example servants may here learn in humility and reverence to render some reasons to move their master not to press upon them that which they think to be unmeet; but yet if their master will not hearken to their reasons, but stand upon his authority, *his word must prevail*.

Contrary is their peremptoriness, who by no means will be drawn to do any thing at their master's command, which they themselves think not most meet to be done. Such an one is that fool whom *Solomon* thus describeth, *Though thou shouldst bray a fool in a mortar among wheat with a pestle, yet will not his foolishness depart from him* (Prov 27:22). These fools bring much mischief upon their own pates in disobeying their masters: for exceedingly they provoke his wrath who hath power to take vengeance of them. Neither let them think to receive comfort in their suffering, because they refuse an unmeet thing, for *meetness* is not a sufficient warrant against *unlawfulness*. To disobey in a thing which lawfully may be done, is unlawful: if therefore the pretext be only an *unmeet thing*, meetness is preferred before lawfulness, and unlawfulness less accounted of than unmeetness.

38. Of servants forbearing to obey their master against God.

That the extent of servants' obedience be not too far stretched, the Apostle setteth down an excellent limitation thereof: and that in these four phrases, *As unto Christ, As the servants of Christ, Doing the will of God, As to the Lord*; all which do shew

that the *Obedience which servants yield to their master must be such as may stand with their obedience to Christ*. So that if masters command their servants never so peremptorily to do any unlawful thing, that is, any thing forbidden by God's word, they may not yield to it. The midwives of the Hebrew women did well in refusing to do any thing to help forward the murderous practices of the King of Egypt in slaying all the male-children of the Hebrews: it is expressly said, that *they feared God and did not as the King commanded them* (Exo 1:17): so as their disobedience in this kind was a token of their fear of God. In this case *Joseph* is commended for not hearkening to his mistress (Gen 39:9): and the servants of *Saul* for refusing to slay the Lord's priests at their master's command (1 Sam 22:17). Thus if a master should command his servant to kill, to steal, to forswear himself, to lie, to use false measures and weights, to go to Mass, or do any other unlawful thing, he ought not to obey him.

Again, if masters forbid their servants to do that which God hath commanded them to do, they must, notwithstanding their master's prohibition, do it. The rulers of Israel forbid the Apostles to preach, yet because Christ had commanded them to preach, they would not forbear (Acts 4:19): nor would *Daniel* forbear to pray to God (Dan 6:10), though the King and nobles by express decree forbade him. So if a profane or popish master shall forbid his servant to go to Church, or to hear the Word, or to take the sacrament, or to dwell with his wife if he be married, or to make restitution of that which he hath fraudulently gotten, or any other bounden duty, herein they must say, *we ought to obey God rather than men* (Acts 5:29). For when masters command and forbid any thing against God, they go beyond their commission, and therein their authority ceaseth.

Contrary to this restraint is both a parasitical pleasing of masters: and also a base fear of them. It is the property of a parasite to say what a master will have him say, and deny what he will have him deny, and so to do what he will have him to do. *Doeg* that fawning dog at *Saul's* word slew all the Lord's priests (1 Sam 22:18): and *Absalom's* servants at his word killed *Amnon* (2 Sam 13:28,29): for all the reason which they had to commit that murder was this speech of their master, *have not I commanded you?* So prone are servants to sooth their masters, as there is no sin so horrible which at their master's command they will not be ready to do. Thus is that verified which the prophet long since foretold, *like master like servant, like mistress like maid* (Isa 24:2). It is also the property of base fearful servants to do nothing but what their master will have them do, and to forbear any duty, though never so necessary, that he forbiddeth them to do. What duty more necessary than prayer? We are commanded to *pray continually* (1 Thess 5:17): yet the servants of *Darius* were content to forbear that duty thirty days together, because it was against the decree of their Lord and King (Dan 6:7). The like is noted of the people in Christ's time, *they durst not make open profession of Christ for fear of the Jews* (John 7:13; 9:22). So in our days many servants there be that dare not make profession of the Gospel, nor go to Church, nor read the word, nor perform other holy religious duties, which they know to be bounden duties, for fear of their masters. Had not then the Apostle just cause to strike so much upon this string as here he hath done, expressly forbidding *eye-service, man-pleasing, and doing service to men*, namely in opposition to God?

39. Of servants choosing good masters.

As a just consequence following from the forenamed extent and restraint of servants' duties, I may further gather these two lessons for servants.

1. It is very behoveful that servants make choice of good masters: at least if it be in their power to choose.
2. It is behoveful that they continue and abide under good masters: at least if they continue servants, and abide under any masters.

That these consequences justly follow as aforesaid, is evident: for seeing servants are bound to obey in all things which are not *against God*, and must obey in nothing but what is *in the Lord*, it is very requisite that servants be under such masters as bear the image of God in the inward disposition, and grace of their heart, as well as in their outward function and place: and will go along with God in using their authority, commanding nothing but what a servant may do with a good conscience, and without transgressing against God: and forbidding nothing that God hath bound a servant to do. There will be comfort in serving such masters: and our obedience to them will be obedience to God. Such masters therefore must be chosen. Yea and with such must servants abide, [if not with the very same, yet with such as they are, of the same disposition] for if they go to other, their former comfort will be taken away, and their servitude will seem so much the more miserable, by how much more knowledge and experience they have had of the benefit of their former liberty [for we may well call service under unconscionable masters *servitude*, and in opposition thereunto, service under religious masters, *liberty*]. He therefore that hath a master that is faithful, due respect had to his authority, must love him as a father, and so abide with him.

For choice of good masters, note what is recorded of many of the Egyptians and other people (Exo 12:38): they left their own country, and went out with the Israelites: what should move them but conscience of the true God whom they knew that Israel served? Now many of these went out as servants, as may be gathered from those many laws which were made in the behalf of servants that were strangers, and in special that were Egyptians (Lev 25:45; Deut 5:14; 12:18; 23:15; 23:7). The knowledge which *Ruth* had that *Naomi* her mother in law served the true God (Ruth 1:16), moved her to leave her own country, and to go as a servant with *Naomi*.

For abiding with good masters we have a worthy pattern in the twelve Disciples. When many of Christ's Disciples at large, *went back, and walked no more with him* (John 6:66) Christ asking the twelve whether they also would go away, *Peter* in the name of all the rest answered, *Lord to whom shall we go? Thou hast the words of eternal life.*

Contrary is the mind and practice of many servants: they never inquire after the religious disposition of their master, nor care though he be popish, or profane, so they may have good wages, diet and lodging: and yet by this means, if at least there be any spark of God's fear in their heart, they cast themselves upon many sore temptations, and bring themselves into many hard straits, and dangerous snares. And, if God open their eyes to see that wretched condition whereinto they have plunged themselves, they will be forced to cry out and complain as *David* did, when he was in foreign countries where he could not freely serve his God, *Woe is me that I sojourn in Mesech, that I dwell in the tents of Kedar* (Psa 120:5).

Much more contrary is their mind and disposition who refuse to serve religious masters, and shun them most of all: or being in their service are never quiet till they be out of it again. Of these we spake before (see Section 16).

Hitherto have we dealt about servants' duties. The reasons which the Apostle rendereth to enforce those duties remain to be declared.

40. Of the first motive, the place of masters.

The first reason which the Apostle useth to enforce servants' duties is implied under this phrase, *as to Christ*, it intimateth the *place* of a master, which is to be in *Christ's stead*. In this respect the title *Lord* is given to a master. The word which the Apostle useth in Greek is that which in the new testament answereth to that proper Hebrew name of God *Jehovah*, and it setteth forth the absolute sovereignty of God, and power over all creatures: which power because the Father hath given to his son as mediator (Matt 28:18); God-man, he is called the *one* or *only Lord* (1 Cor 8:6): and because masters by virtue of their office and place bear Christ's image, and stand in his stead, by communication of Christ's authority to them they are called *Lords*, yea also *God's* (Psa 82:6) [for that which a Magistrate is in the Commonwealth a master is in the family].

Hence it followeth that servants in performing duty to their master perform duty to Christ, and in rebelling against their master they rebel against Christ; as the Lord said to *Samuel* of the people's rejecting his government, *they have not rejected thee, but they have rejected me that I should not reign over them* (1 Sam 8:7). Is not this a strong motive to provoke servants to all duty, and to restrain them from rebellion? if it be well weighed what Christ is, it cannot be but a weighty reason. For though masters should neither reward their good service, nor revenge their ill service, yet will Christ do both.

41. Of the second motive, the place of servants.

The second reason is implied under this phrase, *as servants of Christ*: it noteth the place of a servant: which though it may seem to be a mean and base place, yet is it indeed an honourable place. Men count it an honour to be servants to a King: but Christ is higher than all Kings. On this ground the Apostle saith, *Art thou called being a servant? care not for it: and that upon this reason, He that is called in the Lord being a servant, is the Lord's freeman* (1 Cor 7:21,22). This reason is to be noted against the conceit that most have of a servant's place, that it is so mean and base as there can be no honour nor comfort in doing the duties thereof. But that is a foolish, and unjust conceit: look to Christ the highest master, and there is as much honour, and comfort in doing the duties of the lowest servants' place, as of the highest masters.

42. Of the third motive, God's will.

The third reason is implied under this phrase, *doing the will of God*, which declareth the ground of servants' subjection. God in his word hath plainly made it known that it is his pleasure that they who are under the authority of masters should obey them, therefore as servants would please God, they must obey: if they refuse to obey, they thwart the *will of God*. This also is a motive of moment: for God's will is that mark which every one ought to aim at, and it is much urged by the Holy Ghost, as

a general reason to all duty in these and such like phrases, *This is the will of God* (1 Thess 4:3), *So is the will of God* (1 Peter 2:15): upon which ground we are exhorted to *understand* (Eph 5:17), and to *prove what is the will of God* (Rom 12:2).

Good reason there is to press this reason: for

1. God's will is the very ground of goodness: things are therefore good because they are agreeable to God's will: God's will giveth the very being to goodness.
2. God's will is a rule to square all our actions by, even as the King's statutes and proclamations are to his subjects.
3. It is a perfect rule [*the law of the Lord is perfect* (Psa 19:7)] so as we may be sure not to swerve, if we hold close thereunto.
4. It is a sufficient rule, it will give every one [and among other, servants] direction how to carry themselves in every thing they take in hand, yea in every thing that appertaineth to them. For, *God's word is given to make us perfect, thoroughly furnished unto all good works* (2 Tim 3:17).
5. It is a good warrant to justify us in all our actions: so as, going along with it, we need not care what any man can say against us. If a man be sure that he have statute law, or the King's proclamation on his side, he is bold.

From this reason which is of such weight, I gather two propositions to add force to this motive.

1. That servants obey their masters, is no arbitrary matter, but a necessary duty: not left to his will whether he will do it or no, but a thing whereunto he is bound: and that not only by civil constitutions of men, but also by a divine institution of God: so as it is not only a matter of civil policy, but also of conscience, to be done for conscience sake.
2. That no creature can dispense with servants, so as they should be exempted from doing their duty to their master. If they could, they were greater than God, and their will above God's will. Among creatures, masters themselves are to be reckoned: now because it is God's will that servants should be in subjection, their masters cannot exempt them from it. Masters may let them go free: but retaining them as servants, they cannot exempt them from a servant's subjection. Wherefore though masters be careless in exacting duty, yet let servants be conscionable in yielding duty, because it is God's will.

43. Of the fourth reason, the reward of good service.

The fourth reason is plainly and largely expressed in these words, *Knowing that whatsoever good thing any man doth, the same shall he receive of the Lord, whether he be bond or free.* The general sum whereof is a *Declaration of the reward of good service.* To which purpose saith the Apostle to servants in another place, *Of the Lord ye shall receive a reward* (Col 3:24).

This first is to be noted to add force to the former reasons. For if any ask, what if masters stand in Christ's stead, what maketh that to the purpose? surely it maketh much to move servants: because masters stand in his room who will reward that which is done for his sake.

If again they ask, what benefit is it to be Christ's servant? it may be answered, *very great:* for Christ will reward all his servants.

If further it be asked, what is gotten by doing God's will?

Ans. Even that which all aim at, reward for service. As this addeth weight to all the other reasons, so is it in itself a weighty reason, as weighty as any can be to our corrupt nature. Hope of reward is it which maketh all sorts of people to take the pains which they do in their several places. But having before handled this general point of reward (see Treatise 1, Section 127), I will here more distinctly shew what kind of reward it is wherewith the Lord will recompence the good service of faithful servants.

God's reward is both of temporal and eternal blessings.

The temporal blessings which heretofore God hath bestowed on faithful servants, and which on that ground other like ser-

vants may expect, are these especially.

1. He will move masters to respect such servants, as he moved *Ahash-verosh* to recompence the fidelity of *Mordecai* (Esth 6:3).
2. If masters fail therein, he will move strangers to recompence them: as he moved the jailer to favour *Joseph* when his master had cast him in prison (Gen 39:21): and *Pharaoh* to advance him to great dignity (Gen 41:40).
3. To draw the hearts of their masters and others the more unto them, he will make the things which they take in hand to prosper. Thus did he bless *Joseph* (Gen 39:2), and *Abraham's* servant (Gen 24:56).
4. In dealing for themselves he will bless their labours, as he blessed *Jacob's* (Gen 30:43).
5. He will, when they come to keep servants, provide such servants for them, as they were to their masters. In Egypt God blessed *Joseph* with a faithful servant (Gen 43:23). *David*, who ventured his life to save his father's sheep (1 Sam 17:34), had many servants that ventured their lives for him (2 Sam 21:17; 23:15).

To this purpose may be applied that proverb which Christ oft useth, *with what measure ye mete shall it be measured to you again* (Luke 6:38).

The eternal reward is expressed in this phrase, *the reward of the inheritance* (Col 3:24), for that inheritance is meant which Christ mentioneth in this clause, *Come ye blessed of my Father, inherit the kingdom prepared for you from the beginning of the world* (Matt 25:34), and *S. Peter* in this, *an inheritance incorruptible, and undefiled, and that fadeth not away, reserved in heaven* (1 Peter 1:4). What can be more said? What shall not be undergone for this reward? How willingly do prentices pass over their prenticeship in hope of a temporary freedom of an earthly city? Many years' service were but as a few days to *Jacob* because he liked his reward (Gen 29:20). But behold here a greater reward, which we must needs like much better. If this be not sufficient to move servants to all duty, I know not what can be sufficient.

The Eighth Treatise

Duties of Masters

1. *Of the heads of masters' duties.*

Ephesians 6:9. *And ye masters do the same things unto them: forbearing threatening: knowing that your master also is in heaven: neither is there respect of persons with him.*

In the last place the duties of masters are declared by the Apostle, and that in this verse, where he noteth,

1. The *kinds* of their duties.
2. A *reason* to enforce the same.

The *kinds* are set forth generally [*do the same things*] and particularly [*forbearing threatening*].

The *reason* is taken from that subjection wherein masters are to an higher master [*knowing that your master also*]. And it is amplified,

1. By the equal subjection of masters and servants to that master [*your also*].
2. By the place where that master is [*in heaven*].
3. By his property, in this phrase [*neither is there respect of persons with him*].

Because the several duties of masters are here but pointed at, and infolded under general terms, I will [as in former treatises hath been done] propound a distinct order, whereby we may the better find out their duties, and handle them one after another.

All may be drawn unto these two heads.

1. Care in choosing good servants.
2. Conscience in well using them.

For well using their servants, masters must have an eye to their place, and authority: and in respect thereof,

1. Wisely maintain their authority.
2. Rightly manage the same.

The well managing of their authority is *generally* noted in this phrase, *do the same things*: but more *particularly* in another place referred to these two branches 1. justice, 2. equity (Col 4:1).

Of these in order.

2. Of masters choosing good servants.

The first thing that a man, who taketh upon him to be a master, must take care of, is to entertain good servants into his service. *Mine eyes* [saith *David*] *shall be upon the faithful of the land, that they may dwell with me: he that walketh in a perfect way he shall serve me* (Psa 101:6). What doth this phrase [*mine eyes shall be upon the faithful*] imply, but that he will diligently and carefully inquire after such: yea *mine eyes* [saith he] not another man's eyes: he would not put all the trust upon others: he would himself make what proof and trial he could. Such an emphasis hath this phrase [*mine eyes*] where *Job* saith; *whom I shall see for myself, and mine eyes shall behold, and not another for me* (Job 19:27).

1. Servants are of all other things [except wife and children] of best and greatest use. If then men be careful in well choosing other things, as houses, land, household-stuff, horses, and all manner of cattle [as men are very circumspect therein] should they not be much more careful in well choosing servants?
2. Thus will masters shew that they seek, and aim at the good of their family: yea and in their family at the good of Church and Commonwealth: for good members of a family are likeliest to prove profitable to Church and Commonwealth.
3. When good servants are chosen, there is hope of receiving the more good from them, and doing more good unto them. They will be pliable to all good admonition, docible by all good instruction, serviceable in all things they take in hand.

Object. A master may make a bad servant to become a good one.

Answ. There is a great hazard and venture therein, especially if they be grown to ripe years: no creature is easily tamed, or brought from the natural course he hath taken, after it is grown up: a bough that hath grown crooked many years together will hardly be made straight. It is not in man's power to make a bad servant good: neither can man expect God's blessing therein, when he observeth not a right course warranted by God.

Quest. What course is fittest for choice of servants?

1. If they be young, see how they have been from their infancy educated. Great is the benefit of good education: and much

good may be expected from thence: for it is the means which God hath sanctified for good.

But if they be grown to ripe years, choose such as fear God, such were they upon whom *David* cast his eyes (Psa 101:6).

On this ground did *S. Paul* advise *Philemon* to take *Onesimus* again (Phile 10), because grace was then wrought in his heart.

1. God's fear is the ground of all good obedience and faithfulness: note the examples of such good and faithful servants as are commented in Scripture, and you shall find them all to fear God.

2. Such will not only be diligent in their work, but they will also faithfully call upon God to prosper those things which they take in hand in their master's behalf, instance the example of *Abraham's* servant (Gen 24:12).

3. God will have such respect unto those servants which fear his name, as for their sakes to bless their master's house. Thus was *Potiphar's* house blessed for *Joseph's* sake (Gen 39:5).

2. Make some trial of their fitness to that calling, work and service whereunto thou shalt put them. From such there may be hope of profit and benefit by their service. *Laban* made trial of *Jacob* a month before he covenanted for any long continuance (Gen 29:14).

3. Take such especially as are of mean and poor estate, and know not how to maintain themselves but by service. Thus will a double work of charity be done therein: and thus mayest thou look for better service: for commonly such are most industrious, and most obedient to their masters.

Object. When men have taken all the care they can in their choice, they may be deceived.

Answ. 1. Then much more likely is it, that if they be careless therein, they shall be deceived.

2. Diligent, and wise search, is a means to find out the disposition and ability of servants.

3. If having used the means men be deceived, they may have the more comfort in bearing the cross, because they have not wittingly or carelessly pulled it upon themselves.

3. Of masters' carelessness in choosing servants.

Contrary is their carelessness, who are ready to receive any into their house, even atheists, papists, swearers, swaggerers, profane wretches, unclean persons, and such like, against whom *David* protesteth, he would not have *him that worketh deceit to dwell in his house; nor him that telleth lies to tarry in his sight* (Psa 101:7). They who entertain such, make their houses to be cages of unclean birds, seminaries of wicked persons, and unprofitable members: for one scabbed sheep is enough to infect a whole flock. No marvel though many mischiefs fall upon such a family: for a man were as good bring so many snakes and adders into his house, as such persons: yea with them is brought God's curse. Can any good then be looked for? Such foolish masters regard neither themselves, nor their household: no nor yet Church or Commonwealth. If none would entertain such, it might be a means to make them alter their condition.

Many are not only careless in choosing good servants, but also except against such as are religious; thinking it a matter of reproach to entertain them. By which conceit they oft put away God's blessing from their house.

Others so stand upon a great portion of money with a prentice, or a clerk, or other servant, as they will take none but rich men's children. Whence it cometh to pass, that this point [which is a great point] of charity is neglected: persons most unfit for service are entertained, and such many times as scorn to do service. Thus their masters grow weary of them: the servants lose their time: never prove to be their crafts-masters: and their parents repent the giving of such a portion with them.

4. Of masters maintaining their authority.

After that masters have chosen good servants, their duty is well to use them: which by reason of the difference betwixt masters and servants cannot be well done, except masters wisely maintain their authority. A master therefore must be able *well to rule his own house* (1 Tim 3:4): this is a duty which the Apostle in particular requireth of a bishop, who is master of an

house, but it appertaineth in general to all masters of families. Women also who by virtue of their places are mistresses, are commanded *to guide the house*, or to rule, and perform the part of a mistress therein (1 Tim 5:14). It was the centurion's commendation, that having servants under him, he had them at his command (Matt 8:9).

A like duty to this was enjoined to an husband in relation to a wife (see Treatise 4, Section 4). Some of the reasons, directions, and other points there handled, may be here applied. Read it therefore.

1. God's image and authority, which a master carrieth, is thus preserved.
2. Thus shall a master have much better service done. Not one servant of a thousand, that is not kept under authority, will do good service.

For this end three things are to be observed.

1. That masters carry themselves worthy of their place, and worthy of that honour which is due to them: which may best be done by making themselves a pattern of such good things as in their places appertain to them. *I and my house will fear the Lord*, saith *Joshua* (Josh 24:15): he would not only put them to it, but he also would do it, he would go before them. *I will behave myself wisely, I will walk within my house with a perfect heart*, saith *David* (Psa 101:2).
2. That masters keep their servants in awe and fear. Children must be *kept in subjection*: much more servants (1 Tim 3:4).
3. That masters do the things which they do in their carriage towards their servants with authority: *command, forbid, rebuke* [to use the Apostle's phrase] *with all authority* (Titus 2:15). The manner of speech which the centurion used to his servants [*go, come, do this* (Matt 8:9)] savour of authority. So the Church taking upon her the person of a mistress, useth a word of authority, *I charge you* not to do this (Cant 3:5).

5. Of masters making their authority to be despised.

The aberrations in the defect contrary to the forenamed duty and point of wisdom, are many: as

1. When masters carry themselves basely and abjectly before their servants: being light in their behaviour, foolish in their carriage, given to drunkenness, uncleanness, lewd company, and other vices. *Nabal* was such an one: for his servant could say of him, *He is a son of Belial* (1 Sam 25:17). *David*, though he did not give himself over to such foul sins as these are, yet he oft failed in an unseemly carriage before his servants, as when *he changed his behaviour, and feigned himself mad, and scrabbled on doors, and let his spittle fall down upon his beard* (1 Sam 21:13): and again, when he gave such reins to his passion, for the death of his traitorous son *Absalom*, as *his people being ashamed stole away from him*, and *Joab* his servant was forced roundly to tell him of it, saying, *thou hast shamed this day the faces of all thy servants*, &c. (2 Sam 19:3,5).

Mistresses oft lose their authority by conspiring with their servants to go abroad, take away goods, gossip, and do such other like things privily without their husband's consent: they make themselves thereby slaves to their servants, not daring to do any thing which may offend their servants, lest they should discover to their masters such lewd pranks as their mistresses did.

2. When masters are too remiss and sheepish: entreating and praying their servants to do such things as they ought to command and require at their hands: and if it be not done, all their remedy is patience, or else to do it themselves. Howsoever this might be counted meekness, and gentleness towards equals and strangers, over whom we have no authority, yet towards servants it is too base remissness: yes it is a relinquishing of that power which God hath given, and whereof God will take an account.

3. When masters suffer their servants to be their companions, playing, drinking, revelling with them, and saying [as it is in the proverb] *hail fellows met*. Thus servants oft take liberty to presume above their master: for men are naturally prone to ambition; and, *if an inch be given, they will take an ell*. They who in this kind so far debase themselves, as to give their servants power over their own body, do make both themselves, and their true lawful bedfellow to be despised: *themselves*, in that such servants as are so made one flesh, will think to keep in awe such a master or mistress, as they have known, through fear of revealing that sin: their *bedfellow*, in that such servants will think to be maintained, and bolstered up by the master or mistress, whom they have so known. On this ground was *Sarah* despised in the eyes of *Hagar* her maid (Gen

16:3,4).

4. When masters are over-ruled by their servants to do any unjust or unlawful thing: as *Joash*, who by his servants was drawn to idolatry (2 Chron 14:17): and *Zedekiah*, who gave the prophet *Jeremiah* into his servant's hands, using this base and abject speech, *The King is not he that can do any thing against you* (Jer 38:5). Thus will servants soon prove masters: and if they once come to this high pitch to rule, rather than to be ruled, they will quickly prove intolerable. For this is one of the four things noted by the wise-man, which *the earth cannot bear*, namely, *a servant when he reigneth* (Prov 30:22): and this is one of those evils which proceed from rulers, that *servants ride upon horses*, that is, are advanced above their place and degree (Eccl 10:5,7): whence it followeth, that *governours walk as servants upon the earth*, they are dejected below their place and degree. It falleth out in this case betwixt servants and masters, as betwixt scales, or balances; if the weights that used to lie in one balance to keep it down be taken away, it will suddenly fly up, and so the other balance will be kept down.

6. Of masters' too great rigour.

The contrary in the excess is too great rigour and austerity manifested in look, speech, and actions.

1. In *look*, when a master cannot cast a good eye on his servant. *Jacob* was much discountenanced by the countenance of his master (Gen 3:1,2,5). Many masters by their continual frowning brows, and fiery eyes, do much terrify their servants.

2. In *speech*, when masters cannot give a good word to their servants, but if they be moved never so little, cast upon them all the reproachful names that they can call to mind: little thinking of this fearful doom, *Whosoever shall say, thou fool, shall be in danger of hell fire* (Matt 5:22).

Thus did *Saul* manifest a malicious and mischievous mind against *Jonathan* and *David* by the foul language he gave. Some have such a froward and perverse tongue, as they can never speak directly to their servants: but if they command or forbid a thing, they will do it after such a manner as their servant can scarce tell what they mane: and this not only when their servant hath offended them, but in their best mood. So shrewish are others, as their tongues seldom lie still: but they are ever chiding upon every small occasion: whereby it cometh to pass that their servants are no more moved with it, than the doves, and stares that continually abide in belfries, are moved with the ringing of bells. Such bitterness also is mixed with the chidings of many, as they belch out of their black mouths, most direful imprecations. What can be said of such tongues, but that they are *set on fire of hell*? (James 3:6) As other aberrations wherein masters are reprov'd, are to be applied to mistresses, so this especially. For mistresses do commonly most offend in shrewishness of speech.

3. In *actions*, when masters are too frequent, and too furious strikers: striking their servants on every occasion, not caring how they strike. In these and other like evidences of too much austerity and plain arrogancy masters forget that they are men. Though for outward order a master be more excellent than a servant, yet as a man he ought to judge himself equal. This extreme can be no good means to maintain authority: but it is a plain abuse thereof. Masters ought so to carry themselves as their servants may rather reverence, than dread them.

7. Of a master's commanding power restrained to things lawful.

That a master may the better know how to maintain his authority, I will distinctly declare the *extent* of his power, and that in these four particulars, 1. In *commanding*, 2. In *correcting*, 3. In *ordering the marriage of their servants*, 4. In *disposing their person*.

Within the lists of these two virtues *justice* and *equity* [whereunto all the duties which masters owe their servants shall afterward be referred (see Sections 20 and 21)] must the commanding power of masters be bounded.

1. *Justice* requireth two things,

1. A *restraint* of masters' commandments.

2. An *execution* thereof.

The restraint is unto God's law, that a master command nothing against it, but what is agreeable to it. *Abishai* would fain have had *David's* warrant to have killed *Saul* (1 Sam 26:9): but *David* was so far from commanding him to do it, as he kept

him from it.

Masters are but subordinate ministers under God: they must therefore command nothing against his law. As a judge, high sheriff, and all other officers under the King, must make the King's law the ground of all those things which they require of the King's subjects: so masters must make God's law the ground of all those things which they require of their servants, who are also the servants of Christ. Besides, to what purpose is it to command that which a servant may and must refuse to do? But in no unlawful thing may he obey (see Treatise 7, Section 38).

8. Of masters presuming above their authority.

Contrary is the arrogancy and presumption of many masters, who make their own will the rule of their servants' obedience. This must needs be a leaden rule, which may be bowed this way, that way, and every way, because of the flexible and variable humour of man. Hence is it that many most vile and horrible things are commanded, because they are agreeable to the commander's humour. *Absalom* bid his servants commit a most detestable murder upon his own brother, and note how he presseth it, *Have not I commanded you?* (2 Sam 13:28)

More presumptuous is he that taketh upon him to be the great commander of all Christians, the Pope of Rome, and other masters and governours of Jesuits, friars, monks, and other like orders, who command such as are under their authority to commit treasons, raise rebellions, kill Kings, and do other like execrable villanies.

And to justify the Pope from whom all inferiour governours receive their power, and by whose will they must be ruled, these blasphemous positions do papists hold of his power, *He can do all things of right as God. He is as God having on earth fulness of power. If he shall draw with him innumerable souls of men into hell, yet none may say to him, what dost thou?* Doth not the Apostle's description of *that man of sin, the son of perdition* (2 Thess 2:4), agree to him of whom those things are spoken? Is he not in papist's account, *as God, shewing himself that he is God?* Which is further confirmed by that power which they give him of making laws to bind the conscience, and coining new articles of faith.

Not only popish, but profane masters also too much exceed in this presumptuous use of their power above their power: as they who enjoin their servants to kill, to steal, to swear, to forswear, to lie, to give false measures, and weights, to go to Mass, to profane the Sabbath, with other like sins. In all these, and all other things like to these, being against God's law, masters have no power to command: they go above their commission: and shall accordingly answer for it.

9. Of masters commanding servants to do their duty.

2. The execution of a master's commanding power consisteth in those things which God hath enjoined as bounden duties. These a master by virtue of his authority must command his servants to do: as to worship God, to sanctify his Sabbath, to be diligent and conscionable in his calling, with other like duties, which God compriseth under these words, *the way of the Lord, righteousness and judgment*: and saith that he knew that *Abram* would *command his household to do them* (Gen 18:19).

The charge given to masters in the fourth commandment concerning servants, [*thou nor thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant* (Exo 20:10)] proveth as much. *Josiah* is commended for *causing his people to stand to the covenant of God* (2 Chron 34:32). On this ground if a master have servants that are papists, separatists, or profane persons, he ought to command them, and cause them to go to the holy ordinances of God.

It is one of the principal ends why God hath given power and authority to some over others, that by their authority they may cause them which are under them to observe the commandments of God: even as inferiour officers have authority give them, to see the King's laws kept.

10. Of the sin of masters in suffering servants to neglect their duty.

It is contrary to that commanding power which God hath given to masters, to suffer their servants to omit, and neglect those bounden duties which God hath commanded them: as if a servant be so popish or profane as to refuse to go to the Word, or sacrament, or to perform any duty whereunto he is bound, to let him alone. Though they themselves do those duties, and though they do not hinder and keep their servants from doing them, yet if they cause not their servants also to do them, they make themselves accessory to their servant's sin.

Object. Every man's conscience is free, and cannot be forced; therefore masters may not compel servants to such things as are against their conscience.

Ans. Though the conscience be free to a man, and out of another's power: yet their outward actions are not free: and though faith, piety, righteousness, nor any grace can be forced into men, yet they may be forced to use the means which God hath sanctified for the breeding and increasing of them. Though they cannot be forced to have a religious and righteous heart, yet they may be forced to do religious and righteous duties: or if a master cannot force these, yet he may and ought to do his uttermost endeavour: by which means though he cannot free his servant from death, yet he shall free his own soul from the guilt of his death.

11. Of a master's wisdom in ordering things indifferent.

Equity hath respect to those things which are in a master's power to command or not command: such are all civil actions as concern himself, concerning the particulars whereof God hath given no direct charge for an absolute performance of them: as to go of such an errand, to do such a message, to dispatch such a business. Concerning these things I may say of a master's power, as the Apostle doth of a parent's power in another case; If he seeth it meet to be done, and commandeth his servant to do it, *he doth well, he sinneth not* (1 Cor 7:36,37). If he seeth it not meet to be done, and commandeth it not, *he doth also well, he sinneth not*. Of this kind of thing speaketh the centurion, where he saith, I say to one, *go*, to another, *come*, to a third, *do this* (Matt 8:9).

The mark which masters must aim at in commanding or forbidding these, must be expediency: for *all things that are lawful, are not expedient* (1 Cor 10:23). Expediency dependeth much upon circumstances, and consequences which may follow upon the doing of any thing: in observing whereof the wisdom of him who hath power to have a thing done, or not done, especially appeareth. When *David* suffered not *Hushai* his good friend, and wise counselor, to go with him when he fled from *Absalom*, but bid him return to the city and there abide (2 Sam 15:33,34), he had an eye to the good consequence that might follow thereupon. And when *Joab* commanded *Cushi* rather than *Ahimaaz* to carry the news of *Absalom's* death (2 Sam 18:20,21), he had an eye to the meetness of the persons, and to the kind of message.

To apply this to our purpose, *equity* requireth that masters [in commanding things indifferent, which they have power to command or not to command] have an eye to their servant's ability, sex, age, disposition, conscience, and other like circumstances, that the thing which they command be somewhat agreeable to them, not above their ability, not unbeseeming their sex, not unfitting their age, not thwarting their disposition, not against their conscience.

12. Of masters' offence against expediency.

It is contrary to equity for a master to regard only himself, and his own mind, even in things that are lawful. *Paul* was not of this mind, when he said, *He sought not his own profit* (1 Cor 10:33): no nor his own will. Expediency and in expediency were great motives unto him, to forbear things which were otherwise lawful: yet little is this regarded by many: for

1. Many command things to the very uttermost of their servants' strength, if not above it, [as *Pharaoh* (Exo 5:7)] or else things dangerous, which may bring much mischief upon them. *David* was touched in heart for moving only by a wish his servants to fetch him water with the danger of their lives (2 Sam 23:17).
2. Others against comeliness put men to do maid's works, and maids to do men's work.
3. Others upon mere partiality keep under old and good servants, and prefer much younger before them.
4. Others will forcibly make servants do things against their natural disposition, as to handle, yea and eat such things as they cannot endure to touch or see.
5. Others in doubtful matters will urge and press them against their conscience.

Howsoever in these and other such like things not unlawful, servants ought to do what they can to satisfy their master's command, if he be peremptory in urging them: yet ought not a master to be too peremptory in pressing his authority and power.

13. Of the power of masters to correct their servants.

The second point wherein a master's power consisteth is *correction*: which may be given by looks, words, or deeds.

By a man's look his anger and wrath against another is manifested. In Hebrew the same word signifieth a face, and wrath: because wrath soonest sheweth itself in a man's face. It is noted of *Cain*, that being *very wrath his countenance fell down* (Gen 4:5). Now the manifestation of a master's wrath against his servant is a correction.

But words whether of *rebuke*, or *threatening*, do much more declare the same. This phrase which *Solomon* useth [*a servant will not be corrected with words* (Prov 29:19)] sheweth that there is a correction by words: and though it be negatively pronounced, yet doth it not imply that correction by words is not to be used to a servant, but rather, if thereby he be not moved, that blows must be added thereto: which is a correction by deeds, whereof Christ maketh mention in the parable of those servants that according to the greatness of their fault are to be *beaten with many stripes* (Luke 12:47). It is therefore in a master's power to correct his servant with stripes, or blows. Which being so, I will shew,

1. How far his power herein extendeth.
2. How it is to be ordered.

14. Of the restraint of a master's power: that it reacheth not to their servant's life.

Concerning the extent of a master's power in correcting his servant, this question is to be resolved, *Whether a master have power for any fault to take away his servant's life.*

Ans. His power reacheth not so far, as is evident by these reasons.

1. There is no precept, nor approved example, nor any other warrant out of God's word for it. The Jews had great power over such servants as were strangers: *Of them they might buy bond-men and bond-maids: they might have them for a possession: and take them for an inheritance for their children after them, to be bond-men for ever* (Lev 25:44-46): they might be put to the most toiling, droiling, base, and abject works that they had, as *drawing water, hewing wood* (Josh 9:27), and the like; but yet their masters had not power over their lives.
2. A master might not dismember his servant: if unawares he did smite out an eye or tooth of his servant, he must make a recompence (Exo 21:26): which was to let him go free. Much less therefore might he take away his servant's life.
3. If a servant died under his master's hand when he corrected him, though he intended not willfully to murder him, that master was to be punished (Exo 21:20). It was not therefore lawful for a master wittingly to kill a servant.
4. The power of life is proper to the public Magistrate, who doth all things in open public places, that so there may be many witnesses of his just proceeding. If masters had this power, many might privily be put to death, and no man know for what cause, as it is in popish inquisitions.
5. The approved laws of men make it willful murder for a master to slay his servant wittingly, though the servant's fault be never so heinous. Neither the authority of the master, nor desert of the servant, shall exempt the master that slayeth his servant from the guilt and punishment of felony.

Object. In ancient times masters had this power.

Ans. They never of right had it, though some might exercise it. Among God's people it was never exercised in any age of the world. That liberty which was taken, was among the heathen: and yet among them as polities came to be more and more civilly governed, that usurped liberty by the laws of Magistrates was much restrained: and when Emperors and Kings became Christians, it was utterly taken away.

Object. If a man take an enemy by war, he hath power to kill him.

Ans. If in the time of the war he slay him not, but then spare him, and take him as a captive, and make him his servant, though but a bondslave, he hath not power of his life.

15. Of masters' excess in correcting servants.

Contrary to their just and due power do they, who in their rage stab their servants, or otherwise make them away: yea they also who so unmercifully and unmeasurably beat them with rod, cudgel, or any other thing, as death follow thereupon: for many there be who having once begun to strike, know not when to cease, but lay on as if they were striking stocks and blocks, and not their own flesh. God foresaw that masters were prone to such cruelty, and therefore set a stint number of stripes, which none that beat another might exceed (Deut 25:3).

Among these may be reckoned such desperate masters as in their mood will strike their servant with any thing that cometh next to hand, be it heavy, cragged, hard, or sharp, they care not [*As a mad man who casteth fire-brands, arrows, and death* (Prov 26:18)]. These things may endanger a servant's life, if not, they may break his head, or otherwise wound, bruise, and lame him.

It is beyond a master's power by any correction to impair life, health, or strength of his servant, or any way in his body to disable him from doing that which otherwise he might have been able to do.

If masters, no not for punishment of any sin, may not take away or endanger the life of his servant, what may we think of such masters, as without any fault of their servants, cause them to be made away by putting them upon some desperate attempt, either to maintain their own quarrel, or for some other unjust end? *David* dealt thus with *Uriah* (2 Sam 11:15): but afterwards he sorely repented this part of injustice (Psa 51:14). At another time when three of his servants had fetched him water, which he longed for (1 Sam 23:15), with jeopardy of their lives, though in safety they returned, yet his heart smote him for his longing, and he would not drink of that water because they had ventured their lives to fetch it.

But what may we say of such masters, as cause their servants for their sakes to commit felony, murder, treason, rebellion, and such other things, as cause the public Magistrate to unsheath his sword against them, and cut them off? We noted this before to be a grievous fault in regard of the unlawfulness of the thing (see Section 8): here further we may note it to be much more heinous in regard of the mischief that followeth thereupon, which is the loss of their servant's life: so as thus they make themselves accessory to a detestable sin, and guilty of the blood of their servant.

16. Of masters ordering that correction they give to their servants.

The direction prescribed to parents (see Treatise 6, Section 47) for well ordering that correction which they give to their children, may in many points be here fitly applied. Read it.

2. That masters may well order that correction which they give to their servants, difference must be put betwixt the age, sex, disposition, and faults of those whom they correct.

1. Masters ought not to be so forward to strike such as are grown in years, as the younger sort. Years bring understanding, and a rebuke will make one of understanding more sorry for a fault, and more careful to amend it, than blows: smart more works upon the younger sort. But if notwithstanding their years they be stout, and will not regard words, their stoutness must be beaten down with blows. *Smite a scorner* (Prov 19:25), saith the wise-man: and again, *judgments are prepared for scorners, and stripes for the back of fools* (Prov 19:29).

Seeing servants in years are in this case to be corrected, it is further requisite to put a difference betwixt the kind or measure of correction which is given to them, and to the younger sort: if they be corrected as children, they may either make a toy of it, or the more disdain at it. *Blueness, wound, and stripes piercing into the inward parts of the belly, are a purging medicine against evil* (Prov 20:30), to stout servants of ripe years.

2. If there be a master and mistress joint governours over an house, it is fittest for the master to correct men-servants, the mistress maids. *It is a great reproach for a man to beat a maid-servant*: and a man-servant will much disdain to be smitten by a woman. *Abraham* put his maid over to *Sarah* in such a case (Gen 16:6). Yet if a maid should wax stout, and mannish, and turn against her mistress, she being weak, sickly, with child, or otherwise unable to master her maid, the master may and must beat down her stoutness and rebellion: so much did the law of God permit (Exo 21:20).

If servants be of an ingenious disposition, willing and forward to do that which belongeth unto them, sorry when they have committed a fault, and careful to amend their faults, many things may be passed over in them, which must be corrected in others. To this may be applied the counsel of the wise-man, *Take no heed to all the words that are spoken* (Eccl 7:21).

4. Correction must be measured according to the greatness of the fault punished, and the circumstances whereby the fault may justly be aggravated. *The servant that knew his master's will and did it not, shall be beaten with many stripes: but he that knew not and did commit things worthy of stripes, shall be beaten with few stripes* (Luke 12:47,48)

Many aberrations are daily committed contrary to every branch of this direction, in that masters and mistresses in exercising this part of their power are carried away with passion, and do that which they do in this kind *after their own pleasure*. Thus they turn a duty into sin, and by undue correcting of their servants provoke God to correct them in his wrath, either here or in the world to come.

17. Of masters' power over their servants in and about their marriage.

The third point to be noted concerning a master's power over his servant, is about his servant's marriage. Sundry questions are moved about this point, which I will briefly resolve.

1. *Quest.* Have masters power to order and dispose their servant's marriage as they please?

Answ. No, not without the free consent of the servants themselves: for marriages must be made with the free consent of the parties that are married.

Object. The law implieth that a master hath power to give his servant a wife, for it sheweth whose those children shall be that are born to that servant, to whom a master hath given a wife (Exo 21:4).

Answ. 1. That law is to be understood of such servants as being strangers were bond-slaves, over whom masters had a more absolute power than over others.

2. The master's power of giving did not simply force the servant to marry the party so given: but restrained the servant from marrying any other than whom the master should give.

2. *Quest.* Is not a master's power in the matter of marriage as great over a servant, as a parent's over a child?

Answ. No (see Treatise 5, Section 20).

3. *Quest.* May a master deny his servant liberty to marry?

Answ. Yea, for the time that the servant hath covenanted to be a servant with his master. For that time a servant is part of his master's goods, and possessions. As bond servants were a master's possession for ever: so covenanted servants are his possession for the time of their covenant. When God gave the devil leave to seize on all that *Job* had, by virtue of that permission he seized on all kinds of *Job's* servants bond and free, as well as on his goods (Job 1:15,16): which he could not have done, if *Job's* servants had not been as his goods.

Yet notwithstanding if servants shall make it known to their master, that necessity requireth they should marry, such respect ought to be had to the chastity even of servants, as in this case I may use the phrase which the Apostle useth in reference to children, *Let them be married* (1 Cor 7:36).

4. *Quest.* What if servants marry without consent of masters, is that marriage nullified thereby?

Answ. No. The marriage being otherwise rightly performed, remaineth a firm marriage: though the servants in so doing have sinned: for which their master may justly punish them.

5. *Quest.* May a master keep his servants so married without his consent from their bed-fellows?

Ans. He may exact the whole time of his covenant for service: but that power which by the bond of marriage husbands and wives have over one another's bodies (1 Cor 7:3,4), suffereth them not to be altogether separated one from another. Besides, our law freeth a maid-servant when she is married, from her master's covenant.

18. *Of masters' rigour in forcing marriages on servants: or in separating man and wife.*

Contrary to a master's power do they, who force their servants to marry whom they like not: as when a master hath deflowered his maid, to cover his shame he will make one of his servants marry her.

They also do contrary to their power who seek to separate their servants that are married from their bed-fellow: some will keep the man at his house day and night from his wife, and so the wife from her husband: others will send one of them into remote parts of the land, where the other shall not know: yea others will be sure to keep them one from another, for they will send one of them beyond sea for many years together, if not for ever. These practices are against the law of marriage, and too rigorous and unjust.

19. *Of masters' power to dispose their servants' persons.*

The fourth point to be noted of a master's power over his servants respecteth their persons, which so properly belong to a master for the time of their service, as he may not only keep them himself for his own service, but also pass them over, and give, or sell them to another (Lev 25:39,44). By God's law not only strangers, but Jews also might be sold for servants.

The customs and statutes of our land do also permit masters to make over their servants from one to one: and on their death-beds to bequeath them to whom they will, even as their goods and possessions.

That this power be not abused, in the executing thereof, masters must principally respect the good of their servants: and for that end put them over to fit masters, such masters as may do them good and not evil, all the time of their abode with them, and service under them.

Contrary hereunto do they, who aim merely at their own advantage, not caring to whom they put over their servants, so they may make gain thereby. Some will sell them, namely, when they have them beyond sea, to Turks and infidels; some to papists, and other idolaters; some to profane persons; some to cruel inhumane beasts; some to men of unlawful trades; some to men of no trades. Such masters as make their servants over to such as these are, or like to these, shall answer for all the wrong is done to them.

20. *Of masters well managing their authority.*

This Apostle in another place giveth this charge to masters, *Give unto your servants that which is just and equal* (Col 4:1).

By doing these two things masters shall well manage their authority.

Justice respecteth the place, and service of servants.

Equity respecteth their mind, and manner of doing service.

All servants, in that they are servants, and do their master's work, must have that which of right belongeth to servants. This is *justice*.

Such servants as bear an especial love and liking to their masters, doing service not by constraint, or with eye-service, as men-pleasers, but in singleness of heart with good will, and all good faithfulness, seeking to the uttermost of their power, their master's good, must be accordingly respected and dealt withal. This is *equity*. As the Apostle compriseth *justice* under this phrase [*do the same things*] for service give due recompence: so more especially he compriseth *equity* under it: for servants' good will and more than usual respect of their masters, let masters return good will, and more than ordinary respect to servants. *S. Peter* noteth these two virtues under two other words, *good, gentle* (1 Peter 2:18): A master's *goodness* hath relation to *justice*: his *gentleness* to *equity*.

21. *Of masters endeavouring the salvation of their servants.*

That *justice* which is required of masters respecteth the *soul, body, and estate* of their servants.

In respect of their soul's good, masters must seek the spiritual edification of their servants. When *Zacheus* first believed, Christ said, *Salvation is come to this house* (Luke 19:9) why to *this house*, rather than to *this person*, but because he knew that *Zacheus* would do the duty of a good master, and seek the salvation of his household? Herein must masters bear an impartial respect to all in their house: as the holy fathers, who though about temporal goods they put difference betwixt the place of children, and condition of servants; yet in serving God, wherein eternal happiness is looked for, they did with an equal respect provide for all the members of their house. The proofs alleged for servants' obedience to masters' care in this point, do shew that this duty appertaineth to masters (see Treatise 7, Section 15).

The respect which masters owe to God, themselves, their servants, the Church, and Commonwealth where they live, requireth as much.

1. God hath commanded as much (Deut 6:7) as this charge implieth, *Thou shalt talk of my laws when thou sittest in thine house*: and God hath manifested his approbation thereof, by commending *Abraham* for commanding his children and *household* to keep the way of the Lord (Gen 18:19).
2. Masters themselves reap great benefit by a faithful discharge of this duty: and that both by discharging a good conscience to God, [who requireth this at their hands, in that he hath made them prophets and priests in their house, as well as kings; and will require an account of them for all that are under their government] and also by bringing their servants to do more faithful service to them. For there is no such means to stir up servants to do all good duty, as the fear of God planted in their hearts. That servant that shall find true grace either first wrought, or further increased in him by his master's means, will think himself so beholding to such a master, as he shall never be able to make any sufficient recompence, and therefore will endeavour to do what good service he can in way of thankfulness: he will not only be faithful and diligent in his business, but he will call upon God to prosper his service for his master's good, and to recompence that kindness which his master hath done to him.
3. No earthly thing that a master can do for his servant [be it portion of money, preferment to any place of profit or credit, or skill in a good trade and calling] can be comparable to the edifying of a servant in grace.
4. Servants well instructed in piety are likeliest to prove most profitable not only to the family, but also to the Church and Commonwealth where they live.

That masters may the better edify their servants,

1. They must daily instruct them in the principles of religion, and all duties of piety: admirable is the profit which will arise from a daily and constant use of religious exercises: though but a little time be spent at once, yet will much knowledge be gained by a frequent use of them. This duty is so much the more necessary, because public Ministers cannot take such particular notice of every servant in their parishes, as masters may in their families.
2. Masters must cause their servants to go to the public ministry of the word, and worship of God, to be further built up thereby, and confirmed in their faith. Masters under the law were commanded to let their servants eat of the Passover, which was a solemn sacrament (Deut 16:16). the law which enjoineth all males to appear on the solemn feast days before the Lord, implieth that servants also should go. This duty must especially be performed on the Lord's day: for the charge given to masters in the fourth commandment for sanctifying that day, is extended to servants in these words, *Thou, nor thy man-servant, nor thy maid-servant*.
3. Masters, beside instructing servants at home, and causing them to go to Church, must take an account of their profiting, both by the public, and also by the private means of edification. Otherwise they shall not know how to order their manner of instructing them: when to give them milk, and when strong meat.
4. To make the means more effectual and profitable, they must to instruction add prayer. Means, without God's blessing upon the means, are nothing. As they observe any grace wrought in their servants, they must be thankful unto God for the same, and pray for the increase of it.

22. Of masters neglecting to edify their servants.

Contrary is the mind and practice of most masters: they think if they allow their servants sufficient diet, lodging, and clothing, or wages according to their covenant, they have done all that they need to do: and answerably they do no more: wherein they shew themselves no better than the heathen. For do not the heathen so?

Object. At first taking of a servant no more was covenanted.

Answ. There are two covenants whereunto a master standeth bound: one with God; the other with his servant. Though his covenant with his servant requireth no more than some temporal commodities, yet God's covenant requireth spiritual edification. Many masters are so greedy of their servant's work, as they are loath to afford any time, at morning or evening, for religious exercises: they think by their servant's labour to thrive, and think not of God's blessing which maketh rich. Some go so far therein, as they keep their servants from the public worship of God, even on the Lord's day. Thus it cometh to pass, that servants, who came ignorant and profane to a master, after long abode with him, so go away as they came. Many that themselves make some conscience of fearing God, much fail herein: they regard not to teach their servants the fear of God, whereby they deprive themselves of much blessing, and pull God's curse upon their persons and houses.

23. Of allowing servants sufficient food.

In regard that servants have not bodies of brass, or steel, but of the flesh and blood as all others, masters that have the benefit of their strength and ability of their bodies, must be careful of nourishing, and cherishing them: and that both in *health*, and *sickness*.

For preserving servants' health, respect must be had to their *food, clothing, labour, rest*.

A due provision of food for servants is commended in *Solomon's* good house-wife, who *giveth meat to her household* (Prov 31:15). And in the direction which he giveth to householders, in these words, *Let the milk of thy goats be sufficient for thy food, and for the food of thy family* (Prov 27:27).

The food which masters provide for their servants must be for *quality*, good and wholesome; for *quantity*, sufficient to preserve health and increase strength; for *time*, given in due season. It is noted that *the hired servants* of the father of the prodigal child had *bread* [by *bread* according to the Scripture phrase is meant all kind of needful wholesome food: in which sense it must needs be there taken, because it is opposed to *husks* which are not very wholesome, fitter for swine than men] yea they had *bread enough* (Luke 15:17). It is further noted of that good steward who was, as a master, *ruler over the household*, that he gave the household *their portion of meat in due season* (Luke 12:42).

Quest. May not servants be stinted of their food?

Answ. In regard of *superfluity* they may and ought to be stinted, but not in regard of *sufficiency*. It is not meet that all servants should have as much as they can devour: for then many of them would do but little work: but most meet it is that every one should have as much as is needful for strength, that so he may be the better able to do and endure his work: the Greek word translated in the place before quoted *portion*, implieth as much (Luke 12:42).

There is a double bond to tie masters to perform this duty: one in regard of themselves: the other in regard of their servants.

Masters themselves shall have the profit and benefit of the health and strength of their servants: for their own sakes therefore it is requisite to afford them sufficient food. Men that desire to have their work well done by their beasts, or in their journey to be well carried to the end thereof, will be careful that their beasts shall be well fed.

But beside this, considering the health and strength of servants is spent in their master's business, justice requireth that their health and strength should be repaired and preserved by them.

24. Of defect and excess in allowing servants food.

There are two extremes contrary to this duty. One of those that are too niggardly, and [as we speak] miserable in the allowance of food to their servants: and that sometimes in the quantity, when servants' bellies are too much pinched: even so as

their bodies are weakened for want of food. The prodigal child was thus served (Luke 15:16): these are both unjust and injurious masters: unjust to their servants: injurious to their servants, and themselves too. Sometimes again such miserable masters offend in the quality of that food which they give to their servants, as when it is kept too long, and grown musty, mouldy, or otherwise unsavoury: or when the worst kind of food, for cheapness sake, is bought, even such as is scarce fit for man's meat: the more abundance that there is of such stuff, the more loathsome it is.

Lastly, though I think it not meet to bind masters unto set hours for their servants' meals (Luke 17:7) [Christ affordeth a greater liberty unto masters, in the parable of a master's usage of his servant after he came from his work] yet there may be a fault, as there is, in many masters, in keeping their servants too long from meat, not suffering them to interrupt their work for meat sake, but to tarry for their supper till ten a clock at night, when they give over work: surely this cannot be good for the body's health and strength.

Another extreme do such masters fall into, as *bring up their servants too delicately* (Prov 29:21). *Solomon* hath expressly taxed such, and noteth that this mischief is like to follow thereupon, *he shall have him become his son at the length*: such a servant will forget his place, scorn to be as a servant, but aspire to be as his master's child, which is next to a master's mate.

25. Of masters' care about their servants' apparel.

A wife's care for servants' clothing is also commended in the example of *Solomon's* good housewife, *She is not afraid of the snow for her household*, that is, for the coldest season in winter, *for all her household are clothed with double garments* (Prov 31:21): that is, with such clothing as is fit for cold weather.

The Hebrew word is oft used for scarlet. But according to the proper notation of it, it signifieth things doubled: which I take to be most pertinent to this place, and therefore I have so translated it. The King's translators have noted as much in the margin.

Fit and decent apparel is both a means of preserving health, and also a matter of good report, tending to the credit of a master. Yet contrary is the humour of many: they care not how tagged and ragged their servants' apparel is: insomuch as many servants have neither comely nor warm apparel.

This point concerneth those masters especially that find their servants [as we speak] and provide all things for them: as in old time masters did for most servants, and as now they do for prentises whether male or female. If servants by covenant be at their own finding for apparel, masters are not so strictly bound therein: yet they must have a care that their servants fall neither into the one extreme of too base, sloven-like, or sluttish apparel, nor into the other of too garish, or too costly apparel. Masters having authority over their servants, must keep them in order and good compass, and have respect to decency in this as in other things. For apparel is one of those outward signs whereby the wisdom of masters and mistresses in well governing their servants is manifested to the world. If therefore servants be attired unseemly for their place and ability, all that see them will think their masters and mistresses are of such a mind as the servants are, or at least too remiss and careless of their government.

26. Of moderating servants' labour.

Though labour and pains be proper to a servant's place, yet he may be so put unto it, as the health and strength of his body may be impaired thereby. For the well ordering of this therefore a duty lieth upon masters: and that in two things especially.

1. That they well moderate the labour whereunto they put their servants, so as they may be able for the time to undergo it, and to endure so long as their time of labour is appointed. It was a good reason which *Saul* rendered to keep *David* from entering combat with *Goliath*, because [as he thought] *David was not able to fight against the Philistine, David being a youth, and Goliath a man of war* (1 Sam 17:33).

And indeed if *David's* faith had not exceeded the strength of his body, it had been unmeet to have put *David* to that task.

They which are put to things above their ability, are like to fail, and sink under the burden of them.

It is contrary hereunto to put servants to such hard tasks as impair their strength, endanger their limbs, and venture their lives. *Saul* shall rise up in judgment against such: for he supposing that it was too hard a task for *David* to undertake combat

with *Goliath*, was loath to put him to it (1 Sam 17:33). *David* exceedingly failed herein, when he gave direction that *Uriah* should be set in the *forefront of the hottest battle*, and yet the General with his strength to retire from him (2 Sam 11:15). Many servants being put to services above their strength, either lose their lives thereby, or [as we speak] are never their own men again.

It is also a fault in this kind, to put servants to such toiling works as are fitter for beasts than men: or to oppress them with too much work, as the Egyptians oppressed the Israelites (Exo 1:13,14). Let God's hearing the cry of those servants so oppressed, and revenging their oppressors for it (Exo 3:7), make all masters take heed of the like cruelty.

27. Of affording servants fit means for their work.

2. The other thing required of masters for well ordering their servant's work is, that they afford their servants things needful, and behoveful for that work whereunto they are put; which mind was commendable in *Saul*, who assayed if his armour might be fit for *David* when he was to go against *Goliath* (1 Sam 17:38). To reckon up all the particulars were an infinite task: every several trade and work hath proper means of help appertaining to it: this general direction may be sufficient to move masters to apply it to the particular works and services whereunto they put their servants. Fit means are such an help, as that which with them may easily be done, without them can hardly, if possibly at all be done.

It is contrary hereunto to deal with servants as the Egyptians did with the Israelites, exacting work at their hands, and not affording them means to do it (Exo 5:7): whereby many times they exact impossibilities. Some will have much work done in the night time, and not afford candle light: so in other particulars.

28. Of affording seasonable rest to servants.

Intermission, ease, and rest from labour at seasonable times, is as needful and requisite, as food and apparel. The reason which God rendereth of the fourth commandment sheweth that masters ought to afford rest to their servants: it is this, *that thy servant may rest* (Deut 5:14).

Without intermission and rest the body cannot endure labour: it will wax weak, faint, and utterly unable to continue: but, as labour decayeth strength, so rest repaireth it.

There are two especial times of rest, which servants may not be denied.

1. The rest of the night.
2. The rest of the Lord's day.

The first is ordinary for all living creatures: for it was one principal reason why God caused the light of the sun to be withdrawn from the face of the earth, that the inhabitants thereof might rest from their labour. *Until the evening* man goeth forth unto his labour and work (Psa 104:23). Time of darkness is more fit for rest than work. Let not this be so taken as if no work were to be done, after the light of the day is taken away: [then would but little work be done in the depth of winter, when the days are short: and then would not God have afforded artificial lights] but to shew that difference must be made betwixt the day and night: and that the night is afforded for that time wherein men are most to rest.

The other time of rest [being the Sabbath day] is by divine institution (Gen 2:3). It was sanctified unto man in the time of *Adam's* innocency, when he stood as a public head and stock of all mankind. The very name *Sabbath*, [which in Hebrew signifieth *rest*] and the express prohibition of doing any work on that day, do shew that it is a day of rest: and that one end thereof was for servants to rest therein, is evident by the reason thereof, *that thy servant may rest*. So as there is a double bond to tie masters to afford rest to their servants on the Lord's day:

1. The bond of piety to God.
2. The bond of charity to servants: for in that God did think it meet for servants to rest one day in seven, we ought to think that it is needful and behoveful for them.

29. Of denying seasonable rest to servants.

Contrary to both the forenamed times of rest do many masters offend: as first, they who make their servants wait too long at night, and again, rise too soon in the morning, not affording so much time of rest and sleep as is needful for refreshing their bodies, and repairing their strength: whereby it cometh to pass that [beside the wrong done to their poor servants] their work cannot be done so well.

Object. It is said of the forenamed good housewife, that *her candle is not put out by night* (Prov 31:18).

Answ. That is a *tropical* speech: and somewhat *hyperbolical*. The word *night* is put for a part thereof. The phrase only implieth vigilancy, shewing that she is not, as many, in the evening betimes in bed, and in the morning late up; but late down and early up. This phrase [*she riseth while it is yet night* (Prov 31:15)] used before, sheweth that that which I have noted, is the true sense. If *not putting out her candle by night* should imply a sitting up all night long, how could it be said that *she riseth up*?

Quest. What time may be thought sufficient to afford sleep unto servants?

Answ. As the same quantity of food is not over-strictly to be proportioned to all alike, so nor the same continuance of sleep. Yet by experience it hath been observed that for sound and healthy bodies, five hours is the least time that may be allowed, and seven hours is time sufficient for any.

30. Of masters' offence in keeping servants from the rest of the Lord's day.

2. Against the rest of the Lord's day, do too too many masters offend: as

1. By keeping servants at their ordinary work on that day.

2. By sending them up and down on that day on many errands, as to gather up debts, or to do such other services as they are loath to afford time for on other days.

3. By making that the greatest day of pains and labour, namely to such as are in the kitchen, or have any other business about feasts: for the Lord's day is by many ordinarily made a day of feasting.

4. By keeping them up too late on Saturday nights: even till one of the clock. Many that make some conscience of the Lord's day use to offend therein: for that their servants might not work on that day, they keep them up till the very moment that they think the Sabbath beginneth: but herein they commit a double fault: one in not allowing their servants sufficient time of rest: another in making them unfit through want of sleep to do the holy services of the Lord's day.

31. Of allowing time of recreation to servants.

Concerning times of recreation, I may say as the Apostle doth in another case, *I have no commandment of the Lord* (1 Cor 7:25), namely express commandment to press upon the conscience of masters any set time for recreation: yet questionless it is very meet that servants should have some times to refresh themselves this way: for recreation rightly used is a great means to put life, and add spirit, to youth especially. With work and business not only men's bodies, but their minds also are occupied and employed: herein the labour and travel of men different from the labour of beasts: for refreshing therefore both of body and mind is good and moderate recreation needful. But I refer this point to the wise consideration of masters themselves, who may better by their own observation discern what in this kind is fittest, than we prescribe.

32. Of masters' care over their servants in sickness, and after death.

Masters' provident care for the good of their servants is not to be restrained to the time of their health, but to the time of their sickness also, if it please God to visit them while they are in service. Wherefore all things needful are in this case to be provided for them by their master. First spiritual comfort for their soul, that so they may the better bear their infirmity: then such things as may for the present give them ease and refreshing, and also, if it please God to add his blessing, work a recovery. The care of the centurion for his sick servant is in Scripture commended (Matt 8:6): he did as much for his servant as he could have done for his son: the King of *Aram's* care also was in this kind commendable: he did not forbear to write to his enemy, and to make himself beholding to him, in the behalf of his servant that was leprous (2 Kings 5:6).

If the servant have been formerly a faithful, diligent, and profitable servant, recompence requireth as much. For it is a most unkind, and inhumane part to deny that servant succour in sickness, who in health hath been profitable to his master.

But if a master be careful of his sick servant, affording unto him the best means he can for his ease, and recovery, and that servant, through God's blessing upon the means, recover, he will, if he have any spark of goodness in him, hold himself so obliged to his master, as he shall never be able to make sufficient recompence: and thereupon be moved to use all the diligence he can for his master's good: so that a master may reap benefit to himself by this kind of kindness.

But though the servant that is sick have in former time been unprofitable, and there be little hope of future benefit by him, yet for charity sake, and in subjection to God's disposing providence, whereby that servant is fallen sick in his master's house, must he in that case be well looked unto. If the Samaritan did well in taking care of a mere stranger out of his house, because he saw him succourless (Luke 10:33,34), surely that master which neglecteth his servant that is sick in his house, doth very ill.

1. *Quest.* What if he be not a covenanted servant for a set time, but a journeyman at will, or one that worketh by the day or week?

Ans. Though a master be not so much bound to such an one, yet if he fall sick in his house, he may not in that case thrust him out of doors, unless he know where he may be well provided for.

2. *Quest.* What if a master be poor, and not able to provide that which is requisite for a sick person?

Ans. If the sick person have friends and kindred that are better able, they must provide for him: if not, the Church must help: but it is the master's duty, to make the sick man's case known to his friends, or to the Church.

If, after all good means are used for recovery, the servant die, his master must see the last duty in some seemly manner, performed for him, which is Christian burial. Herein lieth a main difference betwixt the usage of men's bodies which after death shall be raised again, and beasts that utterly perish. *Jacob's* care of burying his mother's nurse is expressly mentioned, in way of commendation (Gen 35:8).

33. Of neglect of servants in sickness: and when they are dead.

Many masters much offend in the contrary to the forenamed duties. For

1. Some, when they observe their servants begin to be sick, will put them out of their houses, and leave them to shift for themselves, as that cruel Amalekite who left his sick servant abroad in the fields (1 Sam 30:13). But note the vengeance of God which followed thereupon: the leaving of that sick servant in that case was the occasion of the destruction of that master and all his company. By that means they were discovered to their enemies.

2. Others, when they cannot remove their sick servants out of their house, will suffer them there to lie succourless, and to perish for want of things needful. Many rich men that are able to provide well enough for them, will send them to some out, back room, and take no more care for them. In this kind many of them shew more kindness to a dog, or other beast that is not well, than to a servant. An inhumane part.

3. Others, that seem not so inhumane, deal too hardly with their servants in such a case: they will afford them things needful, but all at the poor servant's cost: and if those servants have not present money, they will cut it off their wages if they recover health to do them service. Is this to *undo the heavy burdens?* (Isa 58:6) Or is it not to lay burden upon burden?

4. Others, that are at some charges for their servant's sickness, do so mutter at their servants, and fling out such discontented speeches [namely, that they took them for their work, and not to keep them in their bed: to get some thing by them, not to be at such cost with them: or that they make themselves more sick than needs: they may rise, if they will, with many other like discontented speeches] that the poor sick servants are more grieved and troubled with their master's discontent, than with their sickness: and oft moved to strive above their strength to rise, even when death is seizing upon them, and so hasten the approach of death.

5. Many that may be careful enough of the bodily estate of their servants in sickness, have no respect at all to the spiritual comfort of their souls, they neither give them a word of comfort themselves, nor send for Minister or any other to do it (see Section 21 and 22): but let them in this respect lie, and die as beasts. Of all points of unmercifulness this is the greatest: and most unbeseeming Christians.

6. Others, if their servants die, will scarce afford them a winding sheet, but say, let any one that will, bury them for their clothes.

Notice is to be taken of these inhumane carriages, that the detestation of them may make other masters more tender hearted towards their servants.

34. Of masters providing for the future estate of servants.

Next to the *soul*, and *body* of servants, masters must have some care of their estate: and that not only to keep them while they are in their service, but also to endeavour and provide that they may live of themselves, and do good to others. *When shall I provide for mine own house?* saith *Jacob* to his master (Gen 30:30). Which expostulation sheweth that this is a master's duty.

Contrary is the mind of most masters: for in entertaining servants they think of nothing but serving their own turn. Whence it cometh to pass that when masters die many servants are put to very hard shifts. Some forced to beg, others moved to filch and steal. Thus caterpillars are nourished to annoy the Commonwealth.

That I may not be thought to lay the care of parents on masters, and to equal servants with children, I will note out four particulars which will shew what manner of care and providence it is that is here required of masters in regard of their servants' estate.

One is, that masters accustom their servants to pains.

Another is, that they exercise them in some useful calling.

A third is, that they give them sufficient wages.

A fourth is, that after sufficient service they suffer them to provide for themselves.

35. Of well employing servants.

That charge which the master gave to his servants when he was going abroad [*occupy till I come* (Luke 19:13)] sheweth that masters must keep their servants exercised and employed about some business or other: which is also implied under this part of a good mistress's commendation, *she giveth a portion to her maidens* (Prov 31:15), meaning a portion of work. As there is never an idle member in a natural body, but every one is employed, so should it be in a family.

1. Thus servants being, while they are in subjection, inured to pains, they will be more industrious when they are of themselves: yea they will both more willingly undergo, and more easily go through matters which require pains and diligence. *Use maketh perfect.*

2. Thus will masters themselves, and others afterward receive the more profit, and greater benefit by them.

3. Thus will many temptations be avoided, and evils prevented: continual employment to the corrupt nature of man is as a running stream which carrieth away all the mud and filth in a brook, so as none settleth there.

It is contrary hereunto to harbour idle-packs in a man's house: to give meat, and drink, and lodging to such as do no work at all. The Apostle expressly commanded, *That if any man would not work, neither should he eat* (2 Thess 3:10).

These are not only a prey to the devil, but also instruments of the devil, by which he worketh much mischief: for these are they that are most ready to discover the secrets of an house, to be tattling of every thing that is done, to sort themselves with all companies, and not content to do no good themselves, disturb, interrupt, and draw away such as are busy at their work.

36. Of exercising servants to a calling.

Though it be a good thing to keep a servant always occupied and employed, yet for the benefit of the servant it is further requisite, that his employment be about some settled matter, whereabout he may also exercise himself when he is out of service. This especially concerneth such as have taken prentices. They must teach them their trade.

1. For that end are prentices bound to masters.
2. The covenants on the master's part require as much.
3. The good which thence is like to come to the master himself, his prentice, and others, will recompence the pains.

Other servants also must be tied to a work which may be a means of maintenance: as in a great house, to offices about that house: in the country, to husbandry: in offices about the law, to some employment therein; and so in other callings.

It is contrary hereunto for masters to envy their prentices the mystery of their trade: to employ them from time to time about messages, and errands, and such things as tend only to the master's present need, but cannot be profitable for the servants in time to come. These are like old, grown, broad trees, which keep all the sunshine from the shrubs that grow under them, and so keep them down from growing.

Object. Prentices will be as ivy to the trees about which they cling, soon over-topping them, and soaking all the life out of them: they will hinder their master's trading, and get away all his custom, if they be too expert in his trade.

Ans. 1. This is but a mere surmise. It implieth that such masters as fear that which is pretended, deal not so currently, and faithfully with their customers as they should; or else how could they surmise that wise chapmen would leave one of whom they have had long and good experience, to go to a new beginner?

2. Daily experience sheweth that God by his providence so ordereth men's affairs, that masters who from time to time train up and send forth many prentices well exercised and skillful in their trade, do hold on, yea and increase in their own dealings and gain which they get thereby; and yet withal their prentices also come well forward. Why should any masters so distrust God's providence, as to be afraid to make their prentices skillful in their trade?

3. When masters by death or otherwise give over trading, how shall trades be continued, if masters be so envious, and distrustful? What if their masters had so dealt with them? And what if all masters should so deal? For what one doth in such a case, he must presuppose that all may do.

In this kind also do such mistresses offend as keep their maids many years together to drudgery work, and never teach them, nor afford them means or leisure to learn points of housewifery, things whereby they may get better maintenance for themselves.

Such masters and mistresses use their servants as beasts, only for their own turn, without any respect to the servant's good: whereby they pervert the main end of that relation betwixt master and servant, which is a mutual and reciprocal good to pass from the one to the other.

37. Of appointing to every servant his particular function.

For the better exercising of servants unto some calling, let these directions be noted.

1. That masters appoint to their servants their proper and peculiar work, that they may know what to do, and wherein to exercise themselves. And if there be many servants in one house, to set unto every one their distinct function. The phrase before noted of the good mistress [*she giveth a portion to her maidens* (Prov 31:15)] proveth thus much. This was one thing which the Queen of *Sheba* observed and admired in *Solomon's* house, *the standing of his servants* (1 Kings 10:5); namely, every one in his own place, at his own task. To this purpose it is noted, that the great master gave to each of his servants their distinct talents (Matt 25:15). It is thus in the body natural: every member is not only employed, but also employed in his own function: the eye in seeing, the ear in hearing, the foot in standing or going, and so the rest. It is thus also in

Christ's mystical body: one hath the spirit of *wisdom*, and another of *knowledge*, another of *faith*, and so in other gifts. Thus also ought it to be in a family where are many servants.

This is an especial means to make every one the more diligent and faithful. For when every one hath his particular work, they know, that they in particular are to give an account thereof: so as if it be not done, or ill done, they shall bear all the blame: if done, and well done, they shall have all the praise.

2. Thus shall every one be made skillful and expert in some thing, by continual attending upon it, and exercising themselves therein.

38. Of disorder in families through masters' negligence.

The great disorder which is in many families is contrary hereunto: for there are many masters that having sundry servants do look that all things should be well done, and yet appoint no particular place or work to any one; but think and say, that every one should be forward to do every thing; and when they find nothing's done to their mind, they fret and fume, and complain that they keep so many servants, and yet nothing well done. Such servants are not free from all blame: but surely the masters have greatest cause to complain of themselves, and of their own disorder in governing. For their negligence in appointing no set work to their servants, is the cause that all is neglected. For where many things to be done are left to many servants, one will put off this, and another that, and say it belongeth not to them. Thus is it verified, that *what is spoken to all is spoken to none*: and that general charges, are no charges.

39. Of masters overseeing the ways of their servants.

The second direction is, that masters use *inspection* over their servants, and have an eye upon their servants, to see how they spend their time, and dispatch the business committed to them. The good mistress *looketh well to the ways of her household* (Prov 31:27). This is noted of *Boaz*, that he went to his field to see what his reapers did (Ruth 2:4).

The eye of a master is a great motive to make a servant diligent and faithful: for thus he knoweth that both his diligence, and also his negligence shall be seen, and accordingly dealt withal. Hence arose that proverb, *The eye of the master maketh the horse fat* (Matt 24:48). The conceit which the evil servant had that his master delayed his coming, and so could not see what he did, made him so unfaithful as he was.

If a master's place will bear it, it is behoveful that he be present with his servants, and as a good precedent go before them. It is recorded of the good mistress, that *she riseth and giveth a portion to her maids*: she is with them herself; *she worketh willingly with her hands* (Prov 31:13,15). This note of difference is put betwixt a provident thriving master, and a dissolute careless master: *This man* saith to his servants, *go ye*: but *that man* saith, *go we*; or thus, *go sirs*, and *ga'w sirs*.

It is contrary hereunto to let all go [as we speak] *at six and sevens*; and never to see what servants do. How can such expect that their servants should be diligent in doing that which tendeth to their master's good, when they themselves are negligent in overseeing that which tendeth to their own good? Such masters as give themselves to gaming, and following their pastimes all day long, do much offend herein. So also such mistresses as spend all the morning in lying abed and dressing themselves [a custom clean contrary to that which is noted of the good mistress (Prov 31:15)] and at noon when they come out of their chamber, chide and brawl, because things are not more forward.

40. Of provoking servants to their duty both by fair and foul means.

The third direction is, that masters use what means they can to provoke and stir up their servants to be diligent and faithful: as in the first place, exhortation, admonition, persuasion, promises of reward, with other like fair means. Such were the means which *Saul* used to make his servants faithful unto him, when he said, *Will the son of Jesse give every one of you fields, and vineyards*, &c. (1 Sam 22:7), had the thing which he expected from them been good, this manner of dealing with them had been commendable. But if fair means prevail not, then they may and ought to rebuke, threaten, and correct their servants (see Section 13).

And if servants be impudent in sinning, and neither fair nor foul means will reclaim them, they must then be thrust out of doors. Note what the master in the parable said to his servant, *Thou mayest be no longer steward* (Luke 16:2): to which purpose *David* also said, *He that worketh deceit shall not dwell within mine house: he that telleth lies shall not tarry in my sight*

(Psa 101:7).

When *Ishmael* grew a scoffer at God's word, *Abraham* thrust him and his mother out of doors, and that by God's appointment (Gen 21:9). The parable of cutting down the fruitless fig tree may fitly be applied to this point: and the reason also there rendered [*why cumbereth it the ground?* (Luke 13:7)]. Why should incorrigible servants take up the room of good servants? yea why should they remain to infect and pervert other servants?

Object. This is so far from helping servants in their estate, as it may prove their utter undoing.

Answ. 1. They have then none justly to blame but themselves. Justice [in case of necessity] must have her course, though through the iniquity of man some mischief follow thereupon.

2. The execution of this on some, may make others better look to themselves.

3. It may make them that are thrust out to be the more dutiful under another master, or more diligent in another course of life.

Contrary is their course who observe no course, or order in drawing on their servants to do their duty, but begin with that which should be last: nay only use that remedy which should not be used, unless no remedy will serve the turn, which is to turn their servants out of doors for every small occasion. No instruction, persuasion, admonition, rebuke, threatening is used by many when their servants have offended, but this thunderbolt cast at them, *be gone, get you out of doors*. If this were taken notice of as a fault, longer might servants tarry in an house than ordinarily they do: and more good might master and servant reap one from another: yea and the secrets of an house be better kept; for the oft chopping and changing of servants is it that maketh all things done privately in houses to be blazed up and down.

41. Of paying servants their wages.

A third thing required of masters in respect of the estate of their servants, is to give them their just wages: even this is included under that general precept, *render to all their dues* (Rom 13:7): and more particularly expressed in the example of that master who hired labourers into his vineyard and at the end of their work gave them every one their wages (Matt 20:8): yea there is an express law to this purpose (Deut 24:15).

Object. These places concern labourers hired by the day.

Answ. Servants are in the same rank: and the ground for both is the same: for both work for wages. Yea the argument will more strongly follow from the less to the greater thus, if a labourer and servant for a day must have his wages justly paid, much rather a servant, and labourer for a year and years.

1. A master's covenant requireth as much: if there were no other bond, yet that bond whereby he voluntarily bindeth himself, tieth him in conscience thereto. Among the fruits of the Spirit *S. Paul* reckoneth, *faith*, meaning thereby fidelity in keeping promise and covenant (Gal 5:22).

2. Common equity and justice requireth as much: for wages is as due for labour, as money for wares. Christ taketh it for an undeniable principle, that *the labourer is worthy of his hire* (Luke 10:7): so also doth the Apostle (1 Tim 5:18).

This duty is to be performed to such as are hired for wages: of them that are found all things by their master, I spake before (see Section 23 and 25).

In giving servants their wages these three things are to be observed.

1. That there be a sufficient competency of wages allowed: even so much at least as may serve to provide such necessaries as are fit for a servant: for there is great reason, that he that worketh should live of his work.

2. That it be given in due season. God would not have the labourers' hire be unpaid one night after it was due (Lev 19:13; Deut 24:15). The time covenanted by a servant for his wages, is the seasonable time: then he expecteth it: to that time he putteth his occasions of using it: at that time therefore it ought to be given him.

3. That it be paid to the full, according to the covenant: the master's promise, and the servant's need require as much.

42. Of masters' injustice about their servants' wages.

Injustice contrary to the forenamed duty of due paying their servants' wages is many ways committed.

1. When masters do altogether detain their servants' wages: this is a crying sin, which entereth into the ears of God (Deut 24:15; James 5:4).

2. When they make their servants ask for their wages again and again, even till they be ashamed: yea to stay and wait for it till they be forced to sigh unto God: or else to filch and steal to supply their necessities: though these masters have not a purpose utterly to defraud their servants of their due, yet the putting them off, and delaying to pay it, putteth servants, that for the most part have but *from hand to mouth*, unto great straits: which the Lord well knew: and therefore expressly forbade the detaining of a servant's hire *one night* (Lev 19:13; Deut 24:15). This therefore is a point not only of unkindness, but also of injustice.

3. When masters alter and change the covenanted wages, and seek to diminish it, as hard-hearted *Laban* did (Gen 31:41): they shew thereby that they repine at their servant's welfare, and seek only themselves.

43. Of suffering servants to provide for themselves.

A fourth thing required of masters in regard of their servant's estate is, that after sufficient service done they suffer their servants to provide for themselves. This *Jacob* required of *Laban* as a most equal and reasonable matter, saying, *when shall I provide for mine own house also?* (Gen 30:30) as was before noted in the general (see Section 34). This hath respect especially unto such servants as have been a long time with masters as apprentices, and spent their time, labour, and pains only and wholly for their master's good. God's Law took express order for such, that after certain years' service they should go free (Exo 21:2; Deut 15:12). So do also the laws of our land, especially the orders of London.

Herein lieth a main difference betwixt servants [who are under subjection, and held to work for their own good] and beasts [which are only for man's service, and good].

They therefore who are of a contrary mind, keeping servants as long as possibly they can, even all their life long unto hard labour, and under servitude, deserve to be served with beasts rather than men and women. This kind of master's rigour to their servants is in particular noted to be one of the causes of that great indignation of God against the Jews, whereby he was provoked to give them over, as captives to their enemies (Jer 34:16,17).

44. Of kindness to be shewed to good servants.

As masters must give that which is *just* to all servants, so that which is *equal* to them that deserve it (see Section 20); that is, they must be of an answerable mind and disposition to good, honest, loving, kind, faithful servants, who stand not so much upon that which is exacted, as upon that which they are able to do for their masters, and in that respect, as they see occasion do oft times much more than is exacted, or expected. Goodness requireth goodness; good will, good will; and this is to *do the same things*. This kind of *equity* consisteth in these and such like particulars.

1. Masters must well esteem of such good servants: and have them in high account. *Abram* accounted his old good faithful servant as his child, and till he had a child thought of making him his heir (Gen 15:2,3). Great was that esteem which *Potiphar* had of *Joseph*, when of a bondsman he made him *overseer over his house* (Gen 39:4). Why is the title *Father* given to masters (1 Kings 5:13), and the title *Sons* to servants (Josh 7:19; 1 Sam 24:16) but to shew that servants should bear a child-like affection to their masters, and that masters should bear a father-like affection to such servants?

2. Masters must take notice of the goodness, and kindness of such servants: and manifest as much, both by giving them due praise, and a good reward: both which are noted in the pattern of that great master who said, *well done thou good and faithful servant, thou hast been faithful over a few things, I will make thee ruler over many things* (Matt 25:21). Thus will those good servants be the more encouraged to hold on, and others will be moved to imitate them. this encouragement doth the Apostle give to all under authority, *do that which is good, and thou shalt have praise of the same* (Rom 13:3). Which phrase

implieth that governours ought to praise those that do well.

3. If such servants be accused of any heinous crime, masters must not rashly give credit thereto, but rather thoroughly sift, and examine the matter. Herein *Potiphar* exceedingly failed, and by that means lost such a servant as he could never get again (Gen 39:19). If a good servant do by occasion slip, and commit a fault, his master ought in wisdom either to take no notice of it: or with some mild admonition pass it over: and not deal with him as with a lewd, graceless servant.

4. When such servants [their covenanted time being expired] depart, their masters must not let them *go away empty* (Deut 15:13): but help them in their *marriage* (Exo 2:21) [as *Moses* his master did] or in their setting up, as the great master, who made his wise and faithful servant *ruler over all his goods* (Matt 24:47).

45. Of unkind dealing with good servants.

Unworthy they are of good and kind servants who are of a contrary mind: as many masters are. For

1. Some make no difference betwixt servants: but esteem of bad and good all alike: they think that the best servants do but their duty, therefore no extraordinary respect is to be borne towards them. But it is a point of wisdom sometimes to account a duty as a kindness: especially when good will of heart is joined with outward performance of duty.

2. Others think it policy to take no notice of any servant's extraordinary faithfulness and diligence to praise and reward the same, lest it puff them up too much. But there is much more fear of servants' fainting, and waxing weary of doing good if they have no encouragement, than of growing insolent by encouragement.

3. Others will be more ready to check and rebuke such for every slip, and for failing in any thing, than others: because others less regard their rebuke: whereby they shew want of wisdom in well managing their authority.

4. Others when their servants are about to go away, or to marry, or to set up, will seek some occasion or other to fall out with them, of purpose to send them away empty. Many will carry a fair face toward profitable servants till the time of recompence cometh, and then begin to frown, as *Laban* did (Gen 31:2). Yea so far are some masters from seeking the prosperity of faithful, wise, diligent, skillful servants, as they will hinder them in what they can, and keep them down: fearing lest as their servants rise, they themselves should decay and fall. These are both unkind, and ungrateful masters. Would masters be so dealt with by their superiours? Thou oughtest so to live with thy inferiour, as thou wouldst have thy superiour live with thee.

Hitherto of masters' duties. The reasons to move them to perform their duties follow.

46. Of the subjection under which masters are.

Ephesians 6:9. *Knowing that your master also is in heaven: neither is there respect of persons with him.*

There is in general but one reason alleged by the Apostle, to provoke masters to do their duties, but it is so laid down as it compriseth other forcible reasons under it.

The principal reason is taken from the subjection wherein masters are.

The other reasons are taken from the description of that authority under which masters are: for it is such an authority, as,

1. In relation to it there is no difference betwixt master and servant.

2. It is far surpassing all dignities on earth.

3. It is moved with no outward respect of any thing.

The first reason which declareth the subjection of masters, in that they have a master over them, putteth them in mind of that account which they are to make, and reckoning which they are to give of the well using of their authority, and of their carriage towards such as are under them. For they are but as stewards over fellow servants: every one of them therefore shall

hear this charge, *give an account of thy stewardship* (Luke 16:2).

In this respect this reason is both as a *spur*, and as a *curb* unto masters.

As a *spur*, to prick them on forward conscionably to perform all those duties which are required of them: for they have a master that will take notice thereof, and reward them for it. As they approve, and recompence the good service which their servants do: so much more will their master approve and recompence them if they do well. Do masters therefore look that their servants should perform their duty? let them then perform theirs: for there is the same reason of both. Let this be applied to all the particular duties before mentioned.

It is also as a *curb*, to restrain masters from doing any thing to their servants but what they can be able to justify unto their own master. With this curb did God hold in the Israelites, saying, *Thou shalt not rule over thy servant with rigour, but shalt fear thy God* (Lev 25:43). *Joseph* was held in with it, when he said, *This do and live, for I fear God* (Gen 42:18). And *Nehe-miah*, when he said, *The former governours were chargeable to the people, but so did not I because of the fear of God* (Neh 5:15). And *Job*, when he said, *If I did despise the cause of my servant, when God visiteth, what shall I answer him?* (Job 31:13,14) Think of this O masters, when you are about to exact any thing of your servants that is not lawful or meet, when you are incensed and in passion stirred up to strike your servants unjustly or cruelly, when you detain from them any thing that is their due, when you lay more on them than they are able to bear, when any way you wrong or oppress them: think and say with yourselves, *can this be justified? how shall we be able to hold up our head to our master when he calleth us to account?* What stronger motive to do all duty? what stronger restraint from all injustice and rigour? The conceit which many have that they are free, under none, to give no account, maketh them both negligent of their own duty, and insolent over others; as *Pharaoh*, who said, *Who is the Lord that I should obey him?* (Exo 5:2) and *Sennacherib*, who said, *Shall your God deliver you out of mine hands?* (2 Chron 32:15) and *Nebuchadnezzar*, who said, *Who is that God that shall deliver you out of mine hands?* (Dan 3:15) Note the issue of this insolency. *Pharaoh* after many extraordinary plagues laid on him and his people, was drowned in the red sea with all his host (Exo 14:28). *Sennacherib* after his host was destroyed, was slain by his own sons (Isa 37:36,38). *Nebuchadnezzar* became a very brute (Dan 4:30). But to let these abominable blasphemers pass, there be many masters who, though they utter not with their mouths such execrable blasphemies, yet by their carriage towards their servants shew themselves to be little better minded, in that they make their own will a rule to their servants, and will have them do such things as are unmeet and unlawful, using their servants as slaves, or rather as beasts. Let all such masters know that they have a master.

47. Of the equality betwixt masters and servants in relation to God.

The second reason in this particle *also* [*your master also*] declareth an equality betwixt masters and servants in relation to God. As God is the master of servants, so he is the master of masters *also*. As servants are the Lord's *freemen*, so masters are the Lord's *servants* (1 Cor 7:22). In this respect they who are made rulers, and they who are under them, are called *fellow servants* (Matt 24:49). For howsoever in outward dignity there is great difference betwixt master and servant, yet as the servants of God they are of a like condition, and in many things may be accounted equal: especially if both be of the same faith, and so brethren in Christ. This is another *spur* and *curb* too.

A *spur* that God will the more kindly accept that goodness which masters do to their servants, because it is done to God's servants.

A *curb*, in that servants shall be heard before God as well as masters, for he is the master of both.

Many think that all the kindness which is shewed to servants is lost, because they are so mean as they are able to make no recompence. But their master is able.

Others think, their servants can never take any revenge of them, and thereupon use them as they list. But the master of servants, who is also the master of masters, can take vengeance, even such as shall make masters sorely repent all the wrong they have done.

If masters did duly weigh this point, that, howsoever in regard of outward government there be some difference betwixt them and their servants, yet before God they are as fellow servants, would they be over-rigorous and cruel? would they not be kind and gentle?

48. Of God's being in heaven, how it is a motive to provoke masters well to respect their servants.

The third reason [taken from the place of God, *in heaven*] declareth the surpassing excellency of that great master, who is the common master of masters and servants: and it addeth an edge to the former motives.

1. It sheweth that though the wrong which masters do to their servants be within the walls of their house, so as no mortal eye can see it, yet God who is in heaven seeth it: and though servants cannot be admitted into the courts of men to make their complaint, yet heaven is open to them; to that great master that is in heaven they may have access when they will. That which made the evil steward deal hardly with his fellows, was the conceit which he had of his master's absence (Matt 24:48). But no such conceit can they have of this great master, who know that he is in heaven, and that as heaven is over every place, so *the eyes of the Lord are in every place, and behold the evil and good* (Prov 15:3): he seeth all the good, and all the evil that masters do to their servants.

2. It sheweth that the kindness which the Lord will repay, and the vengeance which he will inflict, is infinitely greater than the good or evil that masters can do to their servants, even as heaven is higher than earth, and as he that is in heaven is greater than they that are on earth. Doest thou therefore, who art a master on earth, rejoice, or grieve the soul of thy servant? God in heaven can much more make glad or sad thy soul. Dost thou therefore desire the favour, or fear the frowns of thy master in heaven? shew favour to thy servant on earth, and forbear threatening. Remember the infinite disparity betwixt thy mastership and God's, and this will the more move thee to deal with thy servant, as thou wouldest have God deal with thee.

3. It sheweth that there is much more reason we should take notice of our servants, of their pains, of their diligence, and of their faithfulness, than that God should take notice of ours: and less reason that we should scorn, or neglect our servants, than God scorn or neglect us. For there is far greater difference betwixt God and us, than betwixt us and our servants. We and our servants are all of the earth, of the same mould, nature, and disposition, subject to the same passion, and to the same dissolution. [The heathen observed as much.] But God is in heaven, eternal, unchangeable, every way surpassing glorious. How can we then look to be respected of this master, if we respect not our servants? O masters, in all your dealings with your servants, remember *your master is in heaven*.

49. Of God's impartial respect of all.

The fourth reason [in these words, *neither is there respect of persons with him*] declareth God's just and equal manner of proceeding with all men, of what rank and degree soever. God will do the same things to all sorts of masters that they do to their servants. To the consideration of this impartial justice of God doth the Apostle call masters, both because of that outward power which they have over their servants, and also because for the most part masters are backed with the power and authority of Magistrates on earth, who in matters of difference betwixt master and servant are ordinarily partial, respecting masters more than servants.

But let masters here learn to cast off all such fond conceits, and foolish hopes. Though they be higher in place, have more wealth, and better friends than their servants, and though men who have carnal eyes may thereby be much moved to respect them, yet will not God go an hair's breadth from justice for the whole world. If the greatest man that ever was in the world should have a servant that were the meanest that ever was, and a case betwixt that master and that servant should come before God, God would not any whit at all lean to that master more than to the servant. If the greatest that be abuse the meanest, they shall not escape. Wherefore, O masters, give no just cause of complaint to any servant.

The Apostle's manner of setting down these points, noted in this word [*knowing*] implieth that ignorance of God, of that authority which he hath over masters, of that equality which in relation to God is betwixt masters and servants, and of God's heavenly excellency, and impartial respect towards all, maketh masters to abuse their power, by neglecting all duty, and insulting and tyrannizing over their servants: wherefore you that have heretofore been ignorant of these points, now take knowledge of them; and you that know them, oft call them to mind: and do that which becometh good masters, *Knowing that your master also is in heaven, neither is there respect of persons with him*.

